MAN GUIDELINES TO FITTING BODIES

Series TGS/TGX
Edition 2018 V2.0

MAN

P U B L I S H E R

MAN Truck & Bus AG

(hereinafter referred to as MAN)

Engineering Vehicle Truck
Application Engineering
Dachauer Str. 667
D-80995 München

E-Mail: info.manted@man.eu

Fax: + 49 (0) 89 1580 4264

www.manted.de

**This English version is a translation.
In case of doubt or conflict the valid German language original will govern.**

We reserve the right to make technical modifications in the course of further development.

Content

If not otherwise specified: all dimensions are in mm, all weights and loads are in kg.

NOTICE

These Guidelines to fitting bodies aimed at professional bodybuilder.

Therefore, in this guideline, background knowledge is assumed.

It should be noted that some work may only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel in order to avoid the risk of injury and to achieve the necessary quality for construction work.

Notational conventions

In this guideline the following notational conventions are used:

Information
This notice points out further information to you.

Important notice
This notice draws your attention to possible damage to the vehicle.

Environmental notice
An environmental notice provides you with tips for environmental protection.

Warning notice
A hazard warning notice points out possible risks of accident or injury to you and others.

NOTICE

I. Applicability and legal agreements

1.0 General

The statements in these MAN guidelines to fitting bodies are binding. Exceptions may only be approved by MAN following a written request and provided such exceptions are technically feasible (for address see “Publisher”).

2.0 Legal agreements

2.1 Requirements

In addition to these guidelines to fitting bodies the executing company must observe all of the following that apply to the operation and bodywork of the vehicle:

- Legislation, rules and regulations
- Accident-prevention regulations
- Operating instructions

observed.

Standards are technical standards and thus contain minimum requirements. Failure to observe such minimum requirements is a negligent act. Standards are binding if they are part of rules and regulations.

Information received from MAN in answer to telephone enquiries is non-binding unless confirmed in writing. Enquiries must be directed to the MAN department responsible.

Information is based on conditions of use such as are typical in Europe. Dimensions, weights and other basic values deviating therefrom must consequently be taken into account for the engineering design and attachment of bodywork and the design of the auxiliary frame. The executing company must ensure that the entire vehicle is able to sustain the conditions of use to be expected.

Various manufacturers have worked out specifications for certain units, e.g. loading cranes, liftgates, cable winches and so on. These are also to be observed if they contain requirements extra to the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies.

Mentions of:

- Legal regulations
- Accident-prevention regulations
- Regulations issued by professional associations
- Standard operating procedures
- Other guidelines and sources

are by no means complete and are only for purposes of information. They are no replacement for due diligence on the part of the particular company.

2.2 Responsibility

Responsibility for professional

- Engineering Design
- Production
- fitting of bodywork,
- modifications to chassis

is always, and in full, that of the company producing or assembling the bodywork or carrying out the modification (manufacturer's liability). This also applies when MAN has expressly granted approval of the bodywork or modification. Written approval of bodywork or modifications by MAN does not release the bodywork manufacturer from their responsibility for the product.

Should the executing company detect an error in the planning stage or in the intentions of the

- customers
- user
- its own personnel
- vehicle manufacturer

they will draw the attention of the particular party to it.

The company is responsible for ensuring that the

- Operational safety
- Road safety
- serviceability,
- Driving characteristics

of the vehicle are not negatively affected in any way.

In terms of road safety the company must construe and base:

- Engineering Design
- production of bodywork,
- fitting of bodywork,
- modifications to chassis
- instructions,
- Operating instructions

by the latest state of the art and recognized rules of the discipline. More difficult operating conditions are in addition to be taken into consideration.

2.3 Registration of the vehicle

National laws and technical regulations with respect to the registration of modified vehicles are to be complied with. Modification work carried out in on the chassis must be submitted to a Technical Service for assessment. The executing company remains responsible even subsequent to the registration of the vehicle in the event of the competent authorities having issued the vehicle registration in ignorance of the operational safety of the product.

EU multi-stage type-approval procedure as per Annex XVII 2007/46/EC

Process
Within the framework of the multi-stage process pursuant to Annex XVII of Directive 2007/46/EC, each manufacturer shall bear independent responsibility for approval and conformity of production of all systems, components or independent technical units that it manufactures or adds in an earlier stage of manufacturing.

The body manufacturer is the manufacturer of the second or additional production stage pursuant to 2007/46/EC.

Responsibilities
As a basic principle, the body builder is responsible for:

- modifications it carried out on the base vehicle.
- objects granted approval at an earlier stage if, due to modifications to the base vehicle, the approvals granted are no longer applicable to this vehicle.
- ensuring that the modification carried out complies with the respective national/international statutory regulations, in particular those of the destination country.
- submitting the modifications it carried out to a technical service for assessment.
- documenting compliance with statutory regulations in appropriate form (test report and/or permit or documents meeting the legal requirements of the destination country).

As a basic principle, MAN as manufacturer of the base vehicle is responsible for:

- providing the body builder with the homologation documentation (EU/EEC approvals) available for the scope of delivery of the base vehicles in electronic form on request.

Identification of the vehicles
The respective vehicle shall receive a vehicle identification number ("VIN"), which identifies MAN as manufacturer of the incomplete base vehicle.

As a basic principle, the requirements laid down in Annex XVII to 2007/46/EU and the published associated procedural instructions apply.

Conformity of production (COP)
As a basic principle, the requirements laid down in individual EU Directives and Annex X to 2007/46/EU as well as the requirements laid down in Annex 2 to the EEC Agreement of 1958 apply.

Provision of documentation for registration/following stage
In accordance with Annex XVII to 2007/46/EU, MAN as manufacturer of the base vehicle provides the body builder or builders the available EU/EEC system approvals and the Certificate of Conformity (CoC)[1)] for the base vehicle in electronic form.

[1)] Only in cases where the vehicle is EU-compliant and a Certificate of Conformity (CoC) has been printed by the plant.

Case I: Registration in Germany

In the case of MAN acting as general contractor ("single-invoice transaction") the body builder/s as later-stage manufacturer/s undertake/s to provide the following documentation in electronic form:

a) The individual supplier conditions provide for an acceptance/approval and registration process by the vehicle manufacturer (MAN).

1. In the case of an existing and valid whole vehicle type-approval in accordance with 2007/46/EC for the manufacturing stages, a CoC. On request, existing EC/EEC system approvals or technical reports must be submitted.

2. Alternatively to 1, the test reports and approval documentation required for national individual approval procedures in accordance with Section 13 of the EC vehicle approval Directive.

The latest time for submitting the above stated documentation in printable form is the day the completed vehicle is returned to the contractually agreed place of delivery.

The documentation shall be sent to the following e-mail address documents@de.man-mn.com.

In cases where MAN receives a CoC from the bodybuilder, then original certificates may only be generated by MAN on behalf of the bodybuilder.

b) The acceptance/approval and registration process is to be carried out by the contract partner or by the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle.

1. None.The registration process is the responsibility of the contract partner or the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle.

In all other cases the acceptance/approval and registration process is to be carried out by the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle or by the corresponding contract partner.

Case II: Registration outside Germany but inside the area of application of Directive 2007/46/EC

If MAN serves as general contractor then the bodybuilder is under an obligation, as the final stage manufacturer, to provide in electronic form, all the necessary approval/registration documentation for all modifications made during the subsequent manufacturing stages of the respective responsible sales organisation or importer which exceed the scope of the basic vehicle.

Irrespective of any general contractor status of the importers, the acceptance/approval and registration process is to be carried out by the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle or by the corresponding contract partner.

The importer in the respective country or the corresponding contract partner has the authority and responsibility for the registration process.

MAN does not supply any national data for registration purposes exceeding that for incomplete vehicles set forth in Annex IX to Directive 2007/46/EG in its current form and as amended from time to time. This also applies in particular to national model codes and encrypted basic technical data.

MAN as a manufacturer reserves the right – following corresponding feasibility studies and economic implementation – and after reaching corresponding specifically applicable agreements with national sales organisations and importers, to provide data for national registration which exceeds the scope of that set forth above (e.g. vehicle's manufacturing plates etc.). Enquiries in this regard shall be sent to the following e-mail address documents@de.man-mn.com.

Non-disclosure agreement
The bodybuilder may not forward the approval documentation provided by MAN to any third parties without obtaining prior, express permission from MAN.

The forwarding of documentation that is directly associated with the registration of the vehicle in question to persons of the institutions listed below is excepted:

- MAN Sales partners
- Technical vehicle inspection centers or testing organisations
- Approval authorities
- Registration authorities or licensing centers acting for the government

Note on type approval / homologation for TiB, CiB, BiB, CKD, SKD and PKD vehicles

Where:

- **TiB** stands for "**t**ruck **i**n the **b**ox"
- **CiB** stands for "**c**hassis **i**n the **b**ox"
- **BiB** stands for "**b**us **i**n the **b**ox"
- **CKD** stands for "**c**ompletely **k**nocked **d**own"
- **SKD** stands for "**s**emi **k**nocked **d**own"
- **PKD** stands for "**p**artly **k**nocked **d**own"

For these versions MAN is not considered to be the manufacturer within the meaning of Directive 2007/46/EC – therefore, the responsibility for the homologation and registration process lies with the manufacturer of these vehicles.

In principle, the substance of the contracts respectively concluded with MAN shall apply.

In principle, MAN does not provide registration-related data for completed vehicles. Exceptions include homologation documentation for components subject to approval such as the engine, which MAN provides in electronic form.

However, this does not exclude MAN as a manufacturer reserving the right – following corresponding feasibility studies and economic implementation – and after reaching corresponding specifically applicable agreements with national sales organisations and importers, to provide data for national registration which exceeds the scope of that set forth above (e.g. vehicle's manufacturing plates etc.). Enquiries in this regard shall be sent to MAN's Homologation Department.

3.0 Liability

3.1 Liability for material defects

Claims on liability for defects only exist within the contract of sale between the purchaser and the seller.
The liability for defects consequently rests with the seller of the article of sale.
Claims may not be made of MAN if the reported defect results from the following:

- Non-adherence to these body guidelines
- Selection of a chassis unsuitable for the intended purpose of the vehicle
- Damage to the chassis caused by:
  - the body,
  - the nature/execution of body installation,
  - modification to the chassis,
  - incorrect operation.

3.2 Product liability

Defects in workmanship detected by MAN are to be corrected. In as much as this is legally admissible,
MAN will bear no liability, in particular for consequential damages.

Product liability regulates:

- The liability of the manufacturer for their product or component of a product.
- The claim to compensation from the manufacturer of an integrated component of a product made by the manufacturer claimed upon if the occurring damage results from a defect of this component of a product.

The company that executes the bodywork or modification to the chassis shall indemnify MAN from any claims for liability made by its customers or other third parties, in as much as any damage results from the following:

- The company having failed to comply with the guidelines to fitting bodies valid at the time.
- The bodywork or chassis modification has caused damage through faulty
  - Engineering Design
  - Manufacture
  - Assembly
  - instructions.
- The set principles were not complied with in any other way.

3.3 Limitation of liability for accessories/spare parts

Warning notice

Accessories and spare parts not manufactured by MAN or approved for use in its products can impair the operational and road safety of the vehicle and lead to dangerous situations.

MAN Truck & Bus AG (or the seller) accepts no liability for claims of any kind resulting from a combination of the vehicle together with an accessory that was made by another manufacturer. Excepted from the aforementioned are cases in which MAN Truck & Bus AG (or the seller) itself offers the accessory for sale or fits it to the vehicle (or the subject of the contract).

3.4 Operational and road safety

In order to ensure operational and road safety or to maintain the validity of any claims under the guarantee, the bodybuilder must observe the instructions given in these guidelines to fitting bodies exactly. MAN shall not be liable for non-compliance.

Warning notice

Before commencing work on the body, making modifications or starting installation work, the bodybuilder must also have knowledge of the sections of the operator‘s manual that relate to the work he is completing. It will otherwise be impossible to recognise risks and other persons may be endangered.

MAN cannot be liable for reliability, safety and suitability under the following circumstances.

- Bodies are not constructed and fitted in accordance with these guidelines to fitting bodies
- MAN Genuine Parts or approved parts and modifications are replaced with other parts
- Unauthorised modifications are made to the vehicle

Approvals by third parties, for example Technical Inspection Agencies or approvals from public authorities, shall not be considered sufficient for precluding safety risks.

Companies handling and working on the vehicle are liable for any damages that result from deficient functional and operational safety or inadequate operating manuals. MAN consequently requires of the bodybuilder or modifier:

- maximum state-of-the-art safety standards,
- comprehensible and adequately detailed operating instructions,
- easily visible, permanently affixed plates at points posing a risk to operators and/or third persons,
- adherence to necessary protective measures (e.g. against fire and explosion risks),
- full details relating to toxicology,
- full details relating to ecology.

Safety has priority! Make use of all technical possibilities to avoid and eliminate insecure operation.

This applies equally to:

- Active safety = prevention of accidents. This includes:
  - driving safety as a result of the overall concept of the vehicle with its bodywork
  - conditional safety produced by minimal physical stress on occupants through vibration, noise, climate, etc.
  - assured perception, especially correct design of lighting fittings, warning devices, sufficient direct and indirect visibility
  - operational safety, including optimum operability of all devices and fittings, and those of the bodywork

- Passive safety = avoidance and containment of accident consequences. This includes:
  - outer safety, e.g. design of the exterior of the vehicle/bodywork in terms of deformation, fitting of protective devices
  - inner safety, including protection of the occupants of vehicles, but also cabs installed by bodywork producers

Climatic and environmental conditions affect:

- Operational safety
- readiness for use,
- in-service performance,
- Service life
- cost-effectiveness,

Climatic and environmental influences are, for example:

- effects of temperature
- Humidity
- aggressive substances,
- sand and dust,
- radiation.

Ensure sufficient clearance of all parts involved in movement, including all cables and leads. The operating manuals for MAN vehicles provide information on the maintenance points on the vehicle. Regardless of the kind of bodywork, ensure good access to these maintenance points in all cases. Maintenance must be possible unhindered by having to remove any parts. Ensure adequate ventilation and/or cooling of sub-assemblies.

3.5 Instructions from body-building and conversion companies

In the event of a body atng added or modifications to the vehicle atng carried out by a conversion company, the operator of the vehicle is also entitled to receive the operating instructions. All the benefits of a product are of no use if the customer is unable to:

- handle it safely and true to its purpose,
- use it rationally and effortlessly,
- correctly service and maintain it,
- work with it expertly in all its functions.

Every bodybuilder and modifier shall consequently ensure that their technical manuals exhibit:

- Comprehensibility
- Complete
- Accuracy
- Traceability
- Product-specific notes on safety

A poor or incomplete operating manual means considerable risk factors for the user. Possible consequences are:

- reduced value because product advantages go unrecognized;
- complaints, irritation and annoyance;
- failures and damage that are usually attributed to the chassis,
- unexpected and unnecessary extra costs through repairs and loss of time;
- a negative image and thus less inclination to purchase from the same source again.

Operating personnel is to be instructed in operation and maintenance for the particular vehicle body or modification. Instruction must also include possible effects on the static and dynamic performance of the vehicle.

4.0 Quality assurance

To satisfy the high quality demands of our customers and comply with international product/producer liability, continuous quality inspection is also needed to conduct retrofits and in the production/fitting of bodywork.
This calls for a properly functioning quality-assurance system.

The bodybuilder is advised to set up and provide evidence of a quality management system complying with general requirements and accepted rules (e.g. EN ISO 9000 ff or VDA Vol. 8).
If MAN is the contracting body for the bodywork or modification, it will demand evidence of qualification. MAN Truck & Bus AG reserves the right to conduct its own VDA Vol. 8 system audit of a supplier or appropriate examinations of processes. VDA Vol. 8 is harmonised with the bodywork manufacturer associations **ZKF** (federal association of bodywork and vehicle engineering), **BVM** (federal association of the metalworking trade) as well as with the **ZDH** (federal association of skilled crafts).

Publications:
VDA Vol. 8: Aids to quality assurance for trailer, body and container manufacturers can be obtained from the German Association of the Automotive Industry (VDA).

5.0 Approvals

The “Approvals” section contains information on the approval of bodies and manufacturer’s confirmation.
The prerequisites, basic principles to be complied with when submitting applications and the options for obtaining applications are described.

5.1 Body approval

General information
Body approval from MAN is not required if the bodies or modifications are carried out in accordance with these guidelines to fitting bodies.

If MAN approves a body, this approval applies, in the case of bodies,

- to their basic compatibility with the respective chassis,
- to interfaces with the body (e.g. dimensioning and fastening the auxiliary frame).

The endorsement of approval entered by MAN in the submitted technical documents does not cover inspection of the:

- Function
- Engineering Design
- equipment of the body or the modification.

The endorsement of approval only concerns measures or parts to be seen or taken from the submitted technical documents.

MAN reserves the right to refuse issue of an approval of bodywork, even if comparable approval was issued at an earlier date. Technical advances rule out the possibility of cases atng fully identical. MAN furthermore reserves the right to alter these guidelines at any time, or to issue instructions differing from those contained herein in the case of single chassis.

Should a number of identical chassis have identical bodywork, MAN may issue a collective approval for the sake of simplicity.

For an approval process to proceed swiftly, the following are required:

Template for inspection documentation
Documents should only be sent to MAN if bodies deviate from these guidelines to fitting bodies. If this is the case, technical documents enabling inspection must be sent to MAN (for address see “Publisher” above) before work on the vehicle begins.

A rapid processing procedure requires:

- documents preferably submitted in the usual digital formats (e.g. PDF, DWG, DXF, STEP),
- complete technical data and documents,
- as few documents as possible.

The following details will be contained:

- Vehicle model (for model numbers see Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model numbers”) with
  - Cab version
  - Wheelbase
  - Frame overhang
- Vehicle identification number or vehicle production number (if already existing, see Chapter II, Section 6.0, “Vehicle identification numbers and vehicle production numbers)
- Appropriate marking of departures from these guidelines in all documents!
- Loads and their points of application
  - Forces from bodywork
- Axle load calculation
- Special conditions of use:
- Subframe
  - Material and cross-section figures
  - Dimensions
  - Type of profile
  - Cross member arrangement in auxiliary frame
  - Particularities of auxiliary frame design
  - Changes to cross-sections
  - Supplementary reinforcements
  - Kick-up, etc.
- Joining means:
  - Positioning (with reference to chassis)
  - Type
  - Size
  - Quantity

The following are not sufficient for inspection and approval:

- Parts lists
- Literature
- Photos
- Other non-binding information

Drawings are only of value under the number assigned them.

5.2 Manufacturer Confirmation

General information
In the case of modifications to vehicles, a manufacturer confirmation may become necessary. Upon special request, MAN can issue an exception to existing technical stipulations. Manufacturer confirmations may only be issued if this can be arranged with the functional, traffic and operational safety guidelines.

If MAN approves a chassis modification, this approval shall only relate to the basic constructive permissibility for the relevant chassis.

Manufacturer confirmations can generally be issued in the following categories:

- Vehicle confirmations, e.g.
  - Wheelbase modifications
  - Changing tyre types
  - Optional deployment or conversion of truck/semi-trailer tractor
  - Axle loads and gross weight
  - Trailer load and gross trailer weight
- Factory automatic load-dependent brake force distribution and engine plates
- Documents supplied with the vehicle, e.g.
  - COP document
  - “Low noise vehicle” certification
- Approval documents, e.g.
  - Data confirmation

A detailed overview of the available manufacturer confirmations is available at www.manted.de.

Application for manufacturer confirmations
Manufacturer confirmations may only be applied for outside Germany via the respective central import company. The applicant is both the invoice recipient and the confirmation recipient, and must be one and the same person.

Manufacturer approvals can be applied for using the following options:

- Application via fax or email
  - Obtaining the forms (templates) via www.manted.de → Guidelines and Forms
  - Sending the completed application via fax or email to the contact address specified in the application.
- Application via MANTED-online application
- can be found at www.manted.de →Services → MANTED-online application (additional registration required). → Create MANTED-online application → Select the corresponding application.
- Please complete all the required fields in the online application.
- Please see the help document in the online applications area for further information.

Note

It is a requirement that the conversion measure(s) are only carried out after the receipt of the corresponding manufacturer confirmation(s) - as far as is necessary.

Such special approval issued by MAN is not binding on the competent authority.

MAN has no influence on the issuance of exemptions by the competent authority.

Generally, every exemption must be checked and inspected by the officially recognised expert, as well as entered in the official vehicle documents by the responsible accreditation body. If the measure concerned is outside the national legal provisions and regulations, an exemption must be obtained beforehand from the competent authority.

Compliance with these guidelines to fitting bodies does not release the user from his responsibility for technically exemplary implementation of the modification works.

MAN reserves the right to decline to grant approvals for modifications, even if a comparable approval has been granted before. Technical progress does not automatically allow for equal treatment. Furthermore, MAN reserves the right to modify these guidelines to fitting bodies at any time or, for individual chassis, to issue instructions which deviate from these guidelines to fitting bodies.

5.3 Trademarks

The MAN logo and MAN emblem are trademarks of MAN Truck & Bus AG and may not be removed or repositioned without permission (for the contact address see “publisher” above).

MAN Truck & Bus AG reserves the right to prohibit the body manufacturer or vehicle modifier from using the MAN trademarks if they breach the Guideline To Fitting Bodies as amended. The body manufacturer or vehicle modifier will then be required to remove all visible trademarks.

If changes are made that render approvals for the basic vehicle (e.g. type or system approval) invalid; these approvals or evidence thereof must be reobtained by the body manufacturer or vehicle modifier. The body manufacturer or vehicle modifier must affix the legally required markings to the vehicle, e.g. the additional plate in accordance with Article 59 of the German Road Traffic Licensing Regulation (StVZO).

NOTICE

NOTICE

II. Product identification

1.0 General

For purposes of internal and external communication, various vehicle designations have been introduced according to certain classification criteria and adapted to suit requirements.

The most important designations are:

- Variant designation
- Door identification
- Base vehicle and model number
- Vehicle identification and vehicle production number

In addition, general information on MAN's cab variants can also be found in this chapter.

2.0 Terms

Definitions of the terms used to describe MAN vehicles.

2.1 Model range

MAN's "Trucknology Generation" is divided into four model ranges. An overview can be found in the following table.

Table 01-II: The "Trucknology Generation" model ranges

Series	Explanation	Tonnage [t]**
TGL	Trucknology Generation L - Light range	7 - 12
TGM	Trucknology Generation M - Medium range	12 - 26
TGS	Trucknology Generation S - Heavy range with narrow cabs*	18 - 41
TGX	Trucknology Generation X - Heavy range with wide cabs*	18 - 41

* For further information on the MAN range of cabs, see Chapter II, Section 2.8 "Cabs" and Chapter III, Section 3.2 "Cab variants"

** Standard tonnage / permissible gross weight

2.2 Model number

A vehicle can only be uniquely identified on the basis of its model number, also known as model code number. The model number comprises three characters and unambiguously classifies different vehicle families and variants. It identifies the assignment to a model range, the tonnage and the type of suspension.

As a rule, it consists of a letter and two digits and together with the base vehicle number, it is also an element of the vehicle identification number and the vehicle production number.

The tables below list the existing model code numbers for the TGL, TGM, TGS und TGX model ranges.
The designation shown in the table contains the standard wheel configuration. The given suspension type is the basic suspension of the vehicle's front- and rear-axle assemblies.

Table 02-II: Model numbers and vehicle designations in the TGS model range

Type number	Tonnage [t]	Designation	Suspension	Note
03S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x2 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
06S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
08S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x2 BLS-TS	Leaf-Air	
10S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x2 LL	Air-Air	
13S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x2 LLS-U	Air-Air	
15S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x2 LL-U	Air-Air	
18S	26	TGS 26.xxx 6x2-2 BL	Leaf-Air	
21S	26	TGS 26.xxx 6x2-2 LL	Air-Air	
22S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x4H BL	Leaf-Air	
24S	24 / 26	TGS 24.xxx 6x2/2 BL TGS 26.xxx 6x2/4 BL	Leaf-Air	
26S	26 / 33	TGS 26.xxx 6x4 BB TGS 33.xxx 6x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
30S	26 / 33	TGS 26.xxx 6x4 BL TGS 33.xxx 6x4 BL	Leaf-Air	
35S	26	TGS 26.xxx 6x4H-2 BL	Leaf-Air	
37S	35	TGS 35.xxx 8x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
39S	37 / 41	TGS 37.xxx 8x4 BB TGS 41.xxx 8x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
41S	35	TGS 35.xxx 8x4 BL	Leaf-Air	
42S	26	TGS 26.xxx 6x4H/2 BLS	Leaf-Air	
45S	24	TGS 24.xxx 6x2-2 LL-U	Air-Air	
49S	32	TGS 32.xxx 8x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
52S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
56S	26 / 33	TGS 26.xxx 6x6 BB TGS 33.xxx 6x6 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
59S	35	TGS 35.xxx 8x6H BL	Leaf-Air	
70S	26	TGS 26.xxx 6x6H BL	Leaf-Air	
71S	28	TGS 28.xxx 6x4H-4 BL	Leaf-Air	
73S	35	TGS 35.xxx 8x4H-6 BL	Leaf-Air	
74S	28	TGS 28.xxx 6x2-4 BL	Leaf-Air	
80S	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x4 BL	Leaf-Air	
82S	26 / 33	TGS 26.xxx 6x6 BL TGS 33.xxx 6x6 BL	Leaf-Air	
84S	28	TGS 28.xxx 6x4-4 BL	Leaf-Air	
89S	28	TGS 28.xxx 6x2-2 BL	Leaf-Air	
90S	35	TGS 35.xxx 8x2-4 BL	Leaf-Air	
92S	35	TGS 35.xxx 8x4-4 BL	Leaf-Air	
93S	35 / 41	TGS 35.xxx 8x6 BB TGS 41.xxx 8x6 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
96S	35 / 41	TGS 35.xxx 8x8 BB TGS 35.xxx 8x8 BB	Leaf-Leaf	

Table 03-II: Model numbers and vehicle designations in the TGS-WW model range

Type number	Tonnage [t]	Designation	Suspension	Note
03W	19 / 21	TGS 19.xxx 4x2 BBS-WW TGS 21.xxx 4x2 BBS-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
06W	19 / 21	TGS 19.xxx 4x2 BLS-WW TGS 21.xxx 4x2 BLS-WW	Leaf-Air	
18W	26	TGS 26.xxx 6x2-2 BL-WW	Leaf-Air	
19W	28	TGS 28.xxx 6x2-2 BL-WW	Leaf-Air	
26W	33	TGS 33.xxx 6x4 BB-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
30W	26 / 33	TGS 26.xxx 6x4 BLS-WW TGS 33.xxx 6x4 BLS-WW	Leaf-Air	
34W	40	TGS 40.xxx 6x4 BB-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
39W	41	TGS 41.xxx 8x4 BB-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
52W	18	TGS 18.xxx 4x4 BB-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
56W	33	TGS 33.xxx 6x6 BB-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
58W	40	TGS 40.xxx 6x6 BB-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
60W	41	TGS 41.xxx 8x8 BB-WW	Leaf-Leaf	
71W	19 / 21	TGS 19.xxx 4x2 BBS-WW-CKD TGS 21.xxx 4x2 BBS-WW-CKD	Leaf-Leaf	
72W	19 / 21	TGS 19.xxx 4x2 BLS-WW-CKD TGS 21.xxx 4x2 BLS-WW-CKD	Leaf-Air	
73W	28	TGS 28.xxx 6x2-2 BL-WW-CKD	Leaf-Air	
76W	33	TGS 33.xxx 6x4 BB-WW-CKD	Leaf-Leaf	
77W	40	TGS 40.xxx 6x4 BB-WW-CKD	Leaf-Leaf	
78W	26	TGS 26.xxx 6x4 BL-WW-CKD	Leaf-Air	
79W	41	TGS 41.xxx 8x4 BB-WW-CKD	Leaf-Leaf	

Table 04-II: Model numbers and vehicle designations in the TGX model range

Type number	Tonnage [t]	Designation	Suspension	Note
05X	18	TGX 18.xxx 4x2 BLS-EL	Leaf-Air	
06X	18	TGX 18.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
10X	18	TGX 18.xxx 4x2 LL	Air-Air	
13X	18	TGX 18.xxx 4x2 LLS-U	Air-Air	
15X	18	TGX 18.xxx 4x2 LL-U	Air-Air	
18X	26	TGX 26.xxx 6x2-2 BLS	Leaf-Air	
21X	26	TGX 26.xxx 6x2-2 LL	Air-Air	
22X	18	TGX 18.xxx 4x4H BLS	Leaf-Air	
24X	24 / 26	TGX 24.xxx 6x2/2 BLS TGX 26.xxx 6x2/2 BLS TGX 26.xxx 6x2/4 BLS	Leaf-Air	
26X	26 / 33	TGX 26.xxx 6x4 BB TGX 33.xxx 6x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
27X	28	TGX 28.xxx 6X4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
28X	28 / 33	TGX 28.xxx 6x4 BBS-CKD TGX 32.xxx 6x4 BBS-CKD	Leaf-Leaf	
30X	26 / 33	TGX 26.xxx 6x4 BL TGX 33.xxx 6x4 BL	Leaf-Air	
42X	26	TGX 26.xxx 6x4H/4 BLS	Leaf-Air	
45X	24	TGX 24.xxx 6x2-2 LL-U	Air-Air	
78X	18	TGX 18.xxx 4x2 BLS	Leaf-Air	
79X	33	TGX 33.xxx 6x4 BL	Leaf-Air	
86X	41	TGX 41.xxx 8x4/4 BBS	Leaf-Leaf	Leading axle is air-sprung
87X	41	TGX 41.xxx 8x4/4 BLS	Leaf-Air	
88X	27	TGX 27.xxx 6x2-2 BBS-CKD	Leaf-Leaf	
89X	28	TGX 28.xxx 6x2-2 BL	Leaf-Air	
92X	35	TGX 35.xxx 8x4-4 BL	Leaf-Air	
94X	41	TGX 41.xxx 8x4/4 BBS	Leaf-Leaf	Leading axle is air-sprung
95X	41	TGX 41.xxx 8x4/4 BLS	Leaf-Air	

2.3 Tonnage class

The tonnage class corresponds to the design specification as per model-number list (see Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”). It is the permissible gross weight for this vehicle model and may not be exceeded. More information on permissible gross weight can be found in Chapter III, Section 2.2.4 “Permissible gross weight”.

2.4 Power rating

The stated power ratings generally round off the engine output power to the next ten hp. Engine technical data sheets are an exception. More detailed information, for example on the exhaust-gas status (Euro standard) is not contained.

2.5 Type of suspension

As standard there are three different combinations of suspension, depending on the type of operation for which the vehicle is employed. The first letter describes the front-axle assembly, the second describes the rear-axle assembly.

Table 05-II: Types of suspension for TGL/TGM and TGS/TGX

Abbreviation	Explanation
BB	Leaf suspension on front axle, leaf suspension on rear axle(s)
BL	Leaf suspension on front axle, air suspension on rear axle(s)
LL	Air suspension on front and rear axle(s)

2.6 Wheel configuration

The wheel configuration identifies the number of wheels, driven wheels and steered wheels.
The term “wheel configuration” is a common term but not standardised. It is “wheel locations” that are counted and not the individual wheels. Twin tyres are therefore regarded as one wheel.

Here are two examples to explain the term wheel configuration:

Example of a three-axle vehicle with leading axle (wheel configuration))

6x2/4
6 Total number of wheel locations
x
2 number of driven wheels
/ leading axle in front of driven rear axle
4 number of steered wheels

Example of a three-axle vehicle with trailing axle (wheel configuration)

6x2-4
6 Total number of wheel locations
x
2 number of driven wheels
- trailing axle behind driven rear axle
4 number of steered wheels

The number of steered wheels is only stated if there are steered leading or trailing axles in addition to steered front wheels.

A leading axle runs in front of a driven rear-axle unit; a trailing axle runs behind the driven rear-axle unit. The wheel configuration identifies these axles by means of a slash “/” in the case of a leading axle and a hyphen “-” in the case of a trailing axle.

If a chassis is fitted with both a leading and a trailing axle, the number of steered wheels follows the hyphen “-”.
For a hydrostatic front axle MAN HydroDrive, an “H” is added to the wheel configuration, e.g. 6x4H = front axle with MAN HydroDrive, two rear axles, one of them driven.

The following wheel configurations are currently available ex works:

Table 06-II: Wheel configurations for TGS/TGX

Wheel configuration	Description
4x2	Two-axle vehicle with one driven axle
4x4	Two axles with two driven axles "allwheel"
4x4H	Two-axle vehicle with two driven axles, front axle with MAN HydroDrive
6x2/2	Three-axle vehicle with non-steered leading axle
6x2/4	Three-axle vehicle with steered leading axle
6x2-2	Three-axle vehicle with non-steered trailing axle
6x2-4	Three-axle vehicle with steered trailing axle
6x4	Three-axle vehicle with two driven and non-steered rear axles
6x4-4	Three-axle vehicle, two axles (first and second) are driven, steered trailing axle
6x4H/2	Three-axle vehicle, with MAN HydroDrive on the front axle, a driven rear axle and non-steered leading axle
6x4H/4	Three-axle vehicle, with MAN HydroDrive on the front axle, a driven rear axle and steered leading axle
6x4H-2	Three-axle vehicle, with MAN HydroDrive on the front axle, a driven rear axle and non-steered trailing axle
6x4H-4	Three-axle vehicle, with MAN HydroDrive on the front axle, a driven rear axle and steered trailing axle
6x6	Three axles with allwheel drive
6x6H	Three-axle vehicle with all-wheel drive, front axle with MAN HydroDrive
8x2-4	Four-axle vehicle, one driven axle, two steered leading axles, a non-steered trailing axle or four axles with three rear axles, steered leading and trailing axles
8x2-6	Four-axle vehicle, one driven axle, two steered front axles, steered trailing axle
8x4	Four-axle vehicle with two steered front axles and two driven rear axles
8x4/4	Four-axle vehicle with one front axle, one steered leading axle and two driven rear axles
8x4-4	Four-axle vehicle with one leading axle, two driven rear axles and one steered trailing axle
8x4H-6	Four-axle vehicle with two steered front axles (second front axle with MAN Hydro Drive), one driven rear axle and one driven trailing axle
8x6	Four-axle vehicle "all-wheel" with two front axles (second front axle driven) and two driven rear axles
8x6H	Four-axle vehicle "all-wheel" with two front axles (second front axle with MAN HydroDrive) and two driven rear axles
8x8	Four axles allwheel with two front axles and two trailing axles, all driven

2.7 Suffix

The suffix differentiates trucks from semitrailer tractors or describes special product features.

Semitrailer tractors are designated with an ‘S’ suffix. Trucks have no special designation.

Example of a semitrailer tractor:

TGS 33.440 6x6 BBS

S = semitrailer

Identification of special product features is added separated from the front part of the suffix by a hyphen “-”.

Example of special product features:

TGM 13.250 4x4 BL-FW

-FW = Fire engine chassis with all-wheel drive and low build height approved solely for fire fighting vehicle bodies

Table 07-II: Overview of suffixes

Abbreviation	Explanation	Example
S	**S**emitrailer tractor	TGS 33.440 6x6 BBS
-CKD	**C**ompletely **K**nocked **D**own vehicle for assembly in an MAN plant in the recipient country	TGM 18.280 4x2 BB-CKD
-TIB	**T**ruck **I**n The **B**ox for assembly in an MAN plant in the recipient country	TGM 18.250 4x2 BB-TIB
-FW	Fire-engine chassis with all-wheel drive and low build height approved solely for fire fighting vehicle bodies	TGM 13.250 4x4 BL-FW
-FOC	Forward control chassis for omnibus superstructure	TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BL-FOC
-TS	Version optimised in weight for tank/silo	TGS 18.350 4x2 BLS-TS
-WW	Worldwide variant, can only be registered outside Europe	TGS 33.360 6x4BB-WW
-EL	Vehicles fitted with **E**fficient **L**ine equipment variant	TGX 18.440 4x2 BLS-EL
-U	Vehicle with low build height ("**U**ltra")	TGX 18.400 4x2 LLS-U

2.8 Cabs

Due to the wide range of transport tasks and uses of MAN vehicles, different cab versions are available.
At MAN, there are cabs assigned to each series. The following list provides an overview.

In general, MAN offers the following cabs (not assigned here to series):

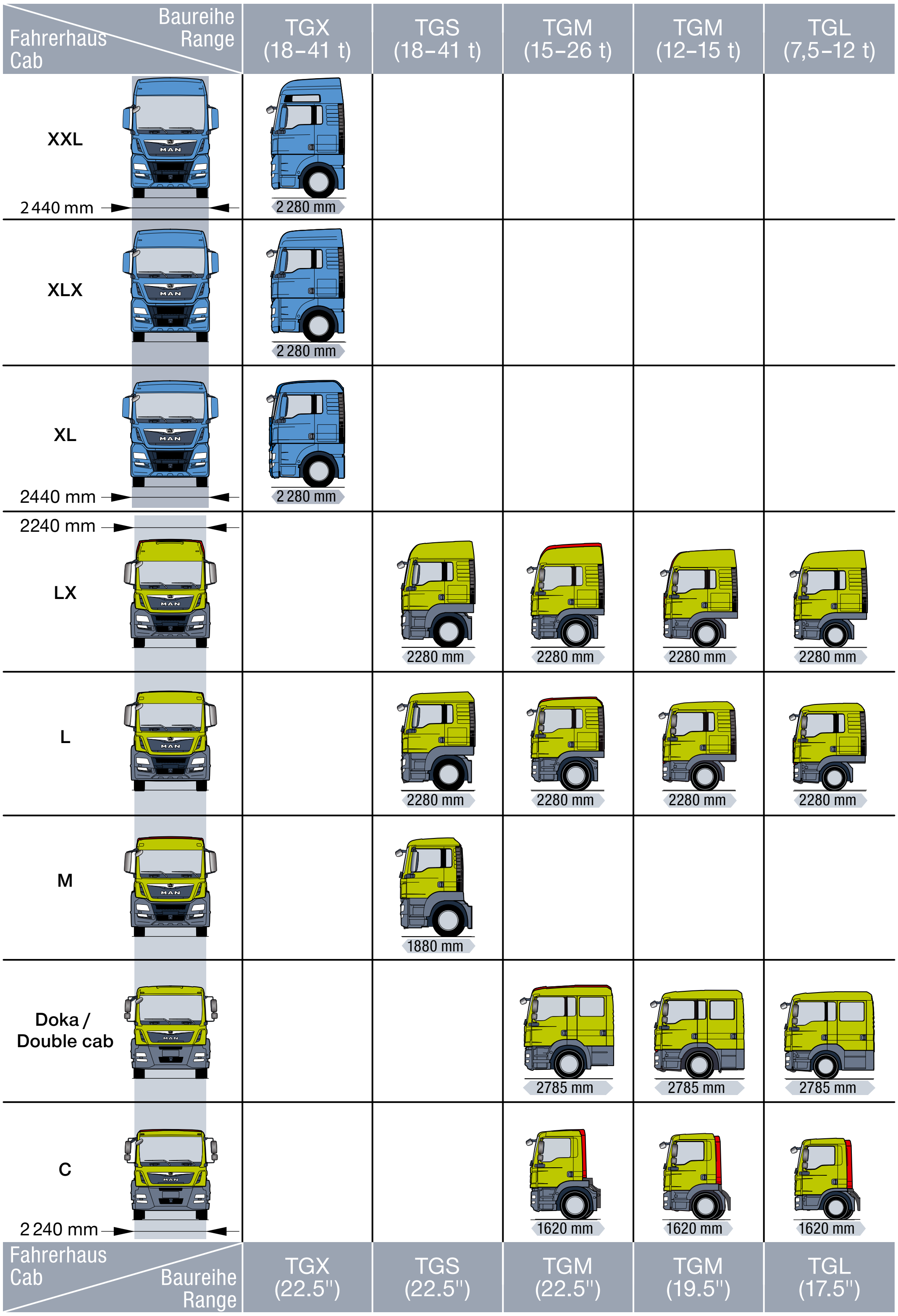
- C, M, L, DK cab
  - narrow cabs
  - e.g. for short-haul and distribution transport

- LX cab
  - narrow cab with high roof
  - e.g. for special applications and national long-haul transport

- XLX, XXL cab
  - wide cab
  - e.g. for international long-haul transport

- XL cab
  - wide cab
  - e.g. for special applications in short-haul transport
  - TGS/TGX cabs differ in their width

Fig. 01-II: **Cab variants**



Further technical information can be found in Chapter III, Section 3.2 “Cab variants”

3.0 Door designation

MAN'S door designation provides readily accessible information on the vehicle model with its tonnage and power output.

The door designation consists of:

- Series
- Permissible gross weight
- Power rating (separated from the permissible gross weight by a full stop ".")

Table 08-II: Examples of door designations

Series	Permissible gross weight [t]	Power rating [hp]
TGL	12	.220
TGM	18	.340
TGM	26	.290
TGS	24	.480
TGS	18	.360
TGX	26	.540

4.0 Variant descriptor

The variant descriptor consists of:

- Series
- Permissible gross weight
- Power rating (separated from the permissible gross weight by a full stop ".")
- Wheel configuration
- Suspension type
- Suffix

The terms used are explained in Chapter II, Section 2.0 "Terms".

Table 09-II: Examples of variant descriptors

Series	Permissible gross weight [t]	Power rating [hp]	Wheel configuration	Suspension type	Suffix
TGL	12	.220	4x2	BL	
TGM	18	.340	4x2	BB	-FW
TGM	26	.290	6x4	BB	
TGS	24	.480	6x2-2	LL	-U
TGS	18	.360	4x2	BL	S-TS
TGX	26	.540	6x2-2	LL	

5.0 Base vehicle number

The eight-character base vehicle (“GFZ”) number was introduced in order to identify and better differentiate between MAN vehicles.

The MAN base vehicle number describes an MAN vehicle (base vehicle) with certain technical features and defined standard equipment.

Table 10-II: Examples of base vehicle numbers

Digit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Example	L	0	6	X	K	G	3	1
Example	L	2	1	S	G	F	3	8
Example	L	N	1	8	C	E	0	8
	L=Truck	Typ number			Sequential designation			

The model number is an important element of the base vehicle number and occupies places 2- 4 in the base vehicle number.

More information on model numbers can be found in Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”.

6.0 Vehicle identification number and vehicle production number

The vehicle identification number and vehicle production number describe customer-specific vehicles with corresponding scopes of equipment and technical characteristics.

Vehicle identification number
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is a 17-character internationally standardised alphanumeric string that uniquely identifies a vehicle.

Table 11-II: Example of a vehicle identification number

Digit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Example	W	M	A	0	6	X	Z	Z	9	7	K	0	0	1	4	6	4
ISO 3779	World manufacturer’s code (MAN, for example, is WMA)			Descriptive designation (places 4-6 are the model number)						Sequential designation							

As a rule, vehicle identification numbers for MAN chassis of the Trucknology Generation begin with the letters “WMA”.

Exceptions are, amongst others, vehicles

- from CKD plants (these have their own manufacturer’s codes)
- of the Steyr brand (VAN)
- of the ÖAF brand (VA0)
- of the ERF brand (SAF).

The vehicle identification number contains the model number in places 4 – 6.
(see Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”).

Note:

Stamped vehicle identification numbers must not be obscured by vehicle bodies or modifications.

Vehicle production number
The vehicle production number consists of seven characters and describes the vehicle’s technical equipment.
It contains the model number in places 1 - 3 followed by a four-character alphanumeric code.

Table 12-II: Example of a vehicle production number

Digit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Example	0	6	X	0	0	0	4
	Typ number			Sequential designation			

Table 13-II: Example of vehicle designation, model number, identification number, base vehicle number and vehicle production number

Designation of vehicle	Model number	Vehicle identification number (VIN)	Base vehicle number	Vehicle production number
TGX 18.440 4x2 BLS	**06X**	WMA**06X**ZZ97K001464	L**06X**KG31	**06X**0004
TGS 26.410 6x2-4 LL	**21S**	WMA**21S**ZZ67M479579	L**21S**GF38	**21S**0002
TGM 18.330 4X2 BL	**N18**	WMA**N18**ZZ16Y155852	L**N18**CE08	**N18**0008

More information on model numbers can be found in Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”.

NOTICE

NOTICE

III. Chassis

1.0 General

To create the product a customer expects, under certain circumstances additional components may need to be integrated, attached or modified. We recommend using MAN Genuine parts to the extent to which they are compatible with the engineering design.

1.1 Obtaining technical vehicle data

Technical vehicle data enables selection of the optimal base vehicle for the intended purpose of the vehicle.

Information on MAN vehicles and vehicle components such as

- Cabs / bumpers
- Exhaust
- Frame side member
- Final cross member
- Gearboxes / power take-off systems

can be found at www.manted.de. Registration is required.

The following can be found at MANTED:

- Dimensions
- Weights
- Position of center of gravity for payload and body (minimum and maximum body lengths)
- Standard equipment
- Drawings

Information
The data published in MANTED refer to the series-production status of a vehicle. This may vary, depending on the technical scope of delivery. What is decisive is the actual status of the built and delivered vehicle. National and international specifications take priority over technically admissible dimensions and weights if they restrict the technically admissible dimensions and weights.

1.2 Standards, guidelines, regulations, tolerances

Applicable standards and guidelines / directives are technical standards and must therefore be complied with. Standards are binding if they are part of rules and regulations. It cannot be assumed that all standards, regulations and guidelines/directives mentioned in the context of the chapter are complete.

Please observe notes on:

- Legal regulations
- Other guidelines/directives.

All components installed in MAN vehicles comply with the respectively applicable national and European standards and directives.

MAN‘s own standards are often considerably more stringent than national and international standards. In some cases, MAN presupposes the application of its own standards for reasons of quality or safety. These are explicitly stated in the corresponding sections. MAN works standard can be obtained at www.ptd.man.eu. Registration is required.

Unless expressly stated otherwise, the general tolerances apply.

1.3 Quality of execution

1.3.1 Corrosion protection

Surface and corrosion protection influence the service life and appearance of the chassis. The coating quality of add-on and modification parts should consequently be that of a series-production chassis. In order to ensure this requirement, MAN works standards M3297 “Corrosion-protection and coating systems for non-MAN bodies” and M3018 “Corrosion-protection and coating systems for purchased parts” are binding.

Mechanical connecting elements (e.g. screws, nuts, washers, bolts) are to be optimally protected against corrosion.

In the event of non-compliance, MAN excludes liability for the consequences.

Series production MAN chassis are coated with environmentally friendly, water-based two-component chassis top-coat paints at approx. 80°C. To guarantee uniform coating, the following coating structure is required for all metal component assemblies:

- Bare metal or blasted component surface (SA 2.5)
- Priming: two-component epoxy primer, approved in accordance with MAN works standard M3162-C or, if possible, cathodic dip painting to MAN works standard M3078-2, with zinc phosphate pre-treatment.
- Top coat: two-component top-coat paint to MAN works standard M3094, preferably water-based; if there are no facilities for this, then solvent-based paint is also permitted.
- Refer to the data sheets of the paint manufacturer for details of curing and drying times and temperatures.

In the selection and combination of different metals (e.g. aluminium and steel), the effect of standard electrode potential for corrosion must be considered. The possible effects of the electrochemical series with regard to corrosion on the boundary surfaces (contact corrosion) must be combated by means of appropriate measures (insulation).

To prevent corrosion through salt while a vehicle is stationary during the bodybuilding phase, wash all chassis with fresh water upon arrival at the bodybuilder’s premises to remove salt residue.
Further information on corrosion protection with regard to the body can be found in Chapter IV, Section 1.9.

1.3.2 Welding work on the vehicle

In general, welding work on the vehicle other than contained in these guidelines to fitting bodies or MAN repair instructions is not permissible.

Welding on components subject to design approval (e.g. connecting devices, underride guard) may only be performed by the holder of the design approval. Welding work on these components leads to the withdrawal of the design approval and may pose road safety risks!

Welding work on the chassis requires specialist knowledge. The workshop must therefore employ suitably trained and qualified personnel to carry out the required welding work (e.g. in Germany, according to the DVS leaflets 2510 – 2512 “Carrying out repair welding work on commercial vehicles”, and DVS leaflet 2518 “Weld criteria for use of fine-grain steels in commercial vehicle manufacture/repair”, available from the DVS publishing house).

Important notice
Welding of a frame is only permissible using material identical to that used for the original frame (see Chapter III, Section 4.3).

The frames of MAN vehicles are made from high-strength fine-grain steel. The fine-grain steel employed is highly suitable for welding. Used by a qualified welder, metal active gas (MAG) and manual metal arc (MMA) welding techniques produce high-grade and durable welded joints.

Important notice

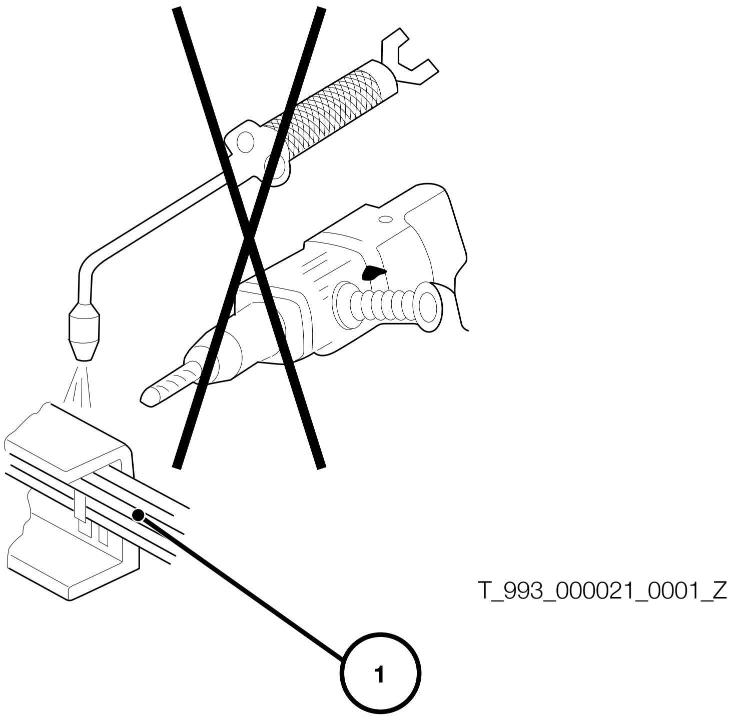
Welding filler material:
A suitable filler material must be selected; it must at minimum possess the same yield strength and tensile strength as the material to be welded.

Basic approach:
Welding must not be carried out if the ambient temperature drops below + 5°C.

It is important to prepare the welding point thoroughly to produce a high-quality joint.

Heat-sensitive parts in the vicinity of welded joints (e.g. electric wiring, compressed-air lines) must be protected against the effects of heat or disassembled (Fig. 01-III).

Fig. 01-III: Protection of heat-sensitive parts



1) Polyamide pipes

The areas where the part to be welded joins the vehicle and the earth terminal on the welding equipment must be bare metal. Any paint, corrosion, oil, grease, dirt, etc. must be removed.

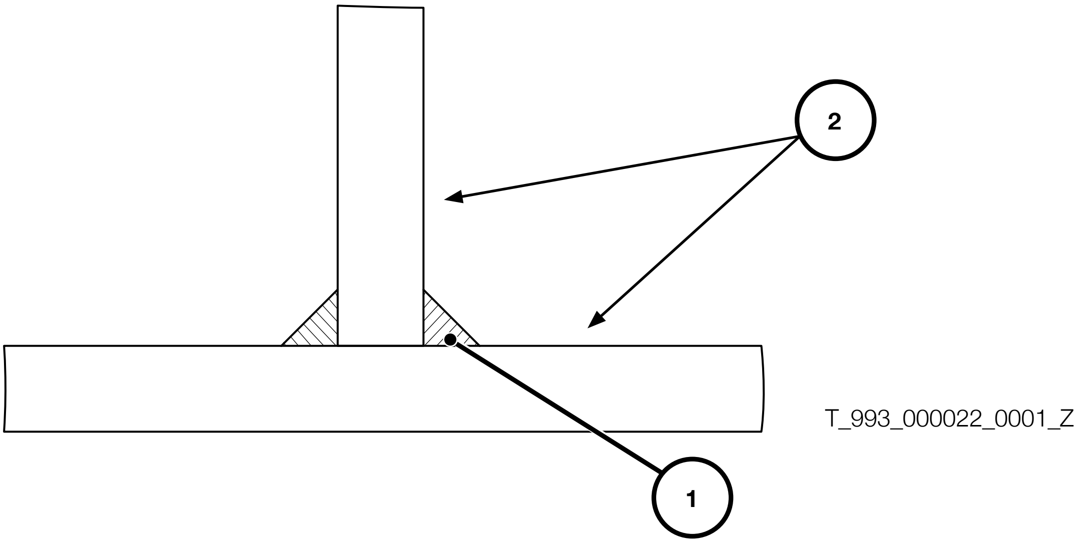
Only DC welding is allowed - pay attention to the polarity of the electrodes.

Welding must be done without undercuts (see Fig. 02-III). Make sure there are no cracks in the weld seam.
Produce joint seams on main members as V or X (see Fig. 03-III) seams in several passes.

The layer of scale caused by the welding process as well as residue of burned paint must be mechanically removed. Welds must be restored to a bare-metal state prior to preserving/painting.

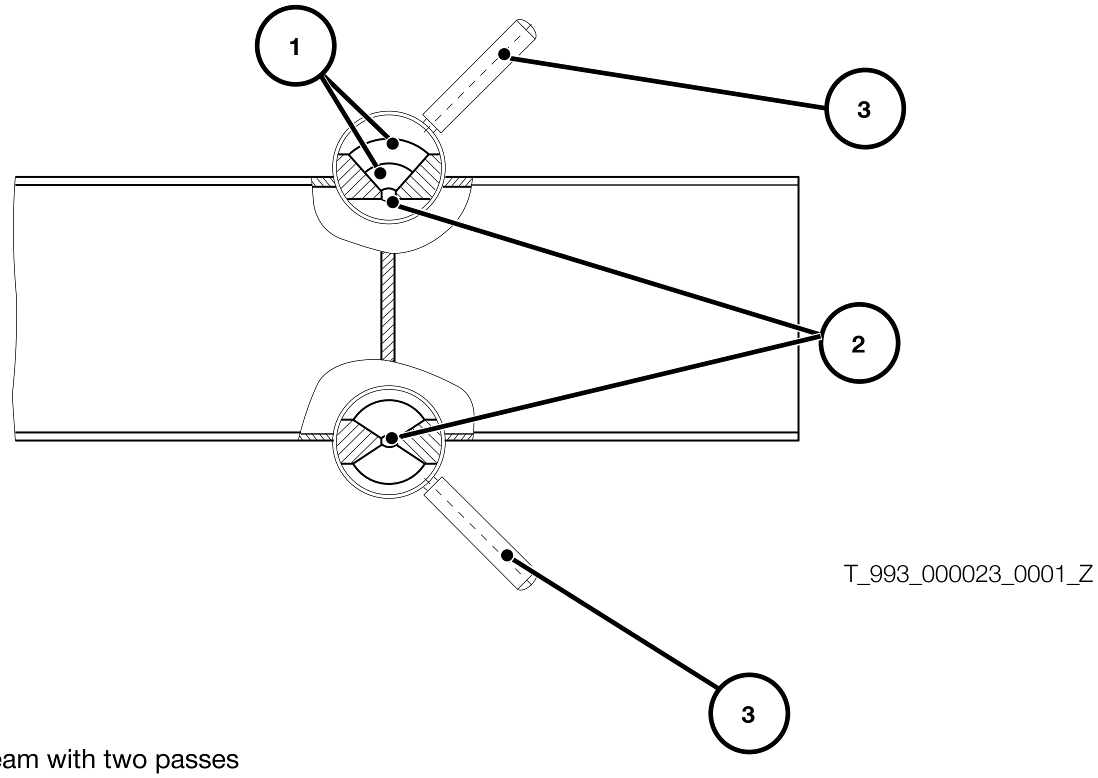
To this end, MAN recommends that welds be mechanically finished.

Fig. 02-III: Undercuts



1) Weld seam
2) Avoid undercuts at the locations shown

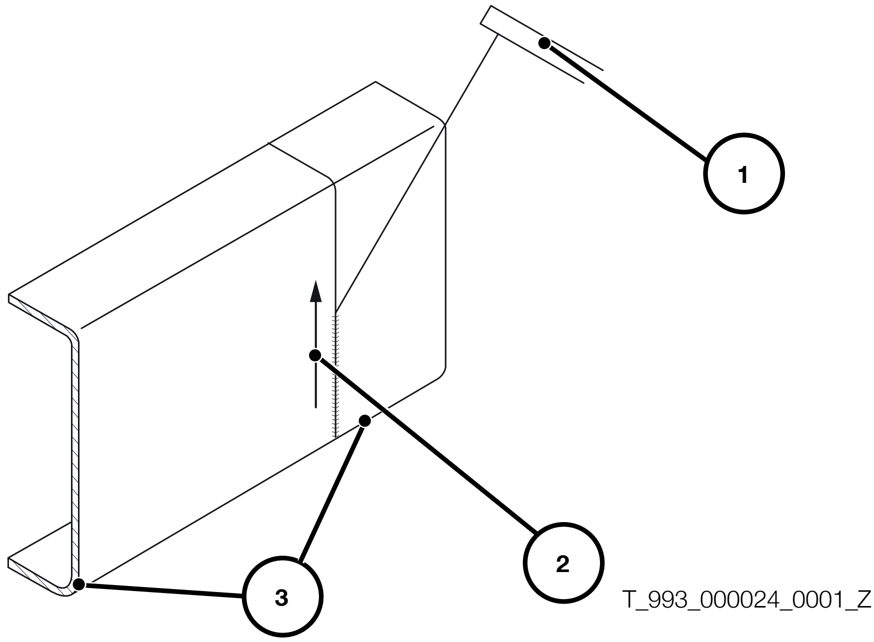
Fig. 03-III: Welding an X and Y seam



1) Weld seam with two passes
2) Root pass
3) Welding electrode

Vertical welding shall be carried out from bottom to top (see Fig. 04-III).

Fig. 04-III: Vertical welding



1) Welding electrode
2) Direction of welding
3) Profiles to be welded

To prevent damage to electronic subassemblies (e.g. alternator, radio, FFR, EBS, EDC, ECAS) keep to the following procedure:

- Disconnect the minus and plus cables of batteries, join the loose ends of the cables (- to +).
- Turn on the battery master switch (mechanical) or bypass the electric battery master switch on the solenoid (disconnect cables and join).
- Attach the earth clip of the welding apparatus directly to the point to be welded, ensuring good conductivity (see above).
- Connect the parts to be welded with each other (e.g. connect both parts to the earth clip).

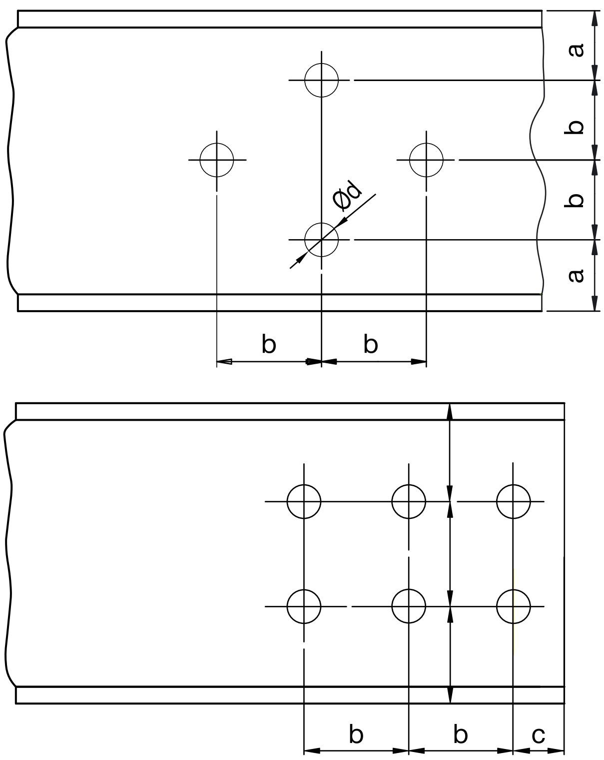
Electronic sub-assemblies need not be disconnected if the above prerequisites are precisely met.

1.3.3 Drill holes, riveted and bolted connections

Connections between frame parts and frame add-ons (e.g. corner plates with cross member, thrust plates, platform corner pieces, tank brackets and so on) are realised by means of rivets or bolts during series production.

Drill holes in frame side member
The drill holes in the frame web are to be used for connections to the frame.
The hole pattern extends in parts along the entire length of the frame side member. If required, the exact hole pattern can be accessed at www.manted.de under “Frame side member”. Drill-hole and edge distances are shown in Fig. 05-III. If the existing drill holes do not enable the connection to be realised, it is possible to drill holes in the web of the side member in accordance with Fig. 05-III. Drill holes can be made (in the fame web) along the entire useful length of the frame. Drilling must not damage any of the parts located on the inner side (e.g. electric wiring, compressed-air lines). All drill holes must be deburred after drilling and the drilling swarf removed.
In addition, it must be ensured that subsequently drilled holes are adequately protected against corrosion (see Chapter III, Section 1.3.1).

Fig. 05-III: Distances between drill holes

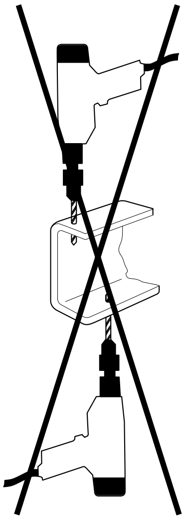


T_993_000025_0001_Z

a ≥ 40 mm
b ≥ 50 mm
c ≥ 25 mm
d ≤ 14 mm on the TGL
d ≤ 16 mm on the TGM
d ≤ 16 mm on the TGS/TGX

Important notice
Drill holes in the upper and lower flange As a matter of principle, it is not permitted to subsequently drill any holes in the upper and lower flanges of the frame side member (Fig. 06-III).be selected; it must at minimum possess the same yield strength and tensile strength as the material to be welded.

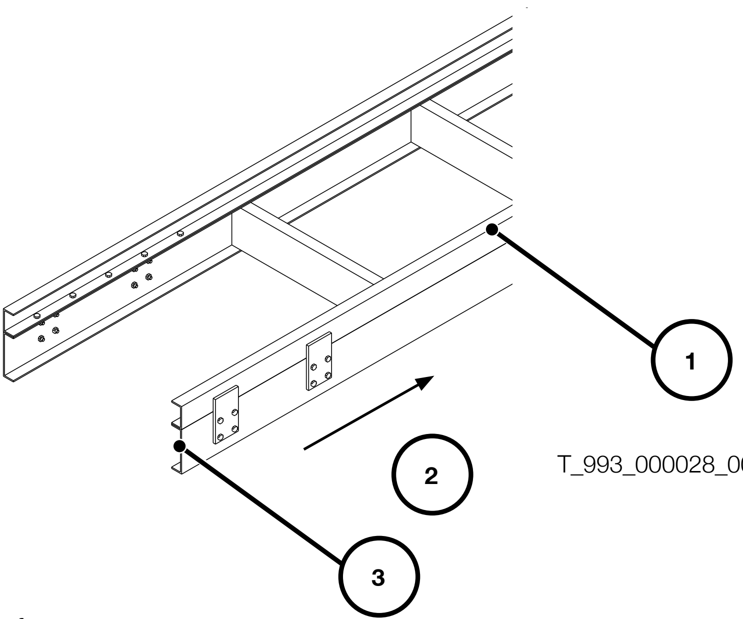
Fig. 06-III: Drill holes in the upper and lower flange



T_993_000027_0001_Z

The only exception to drilling holes in the upper and lower flange is at the rear end of the frame behind the final cross member or the last cross member (in cases where no final cross member has been fitted). In addition, the use of thrust plates in this area is necessary. Moreover, any holes in the upper and lower flanges not used for bodywork shall nevertheless be occupied by bolt connections of the frame and auxiliary frame (Fig. 07-III).

Fig. 07-III: Drill holes at frame end



T_993_000028_0001_Z

1) Auxiliary frame
2) Direction of travel
3) Frame end (vehicle)

Bolted connections on chassis frame

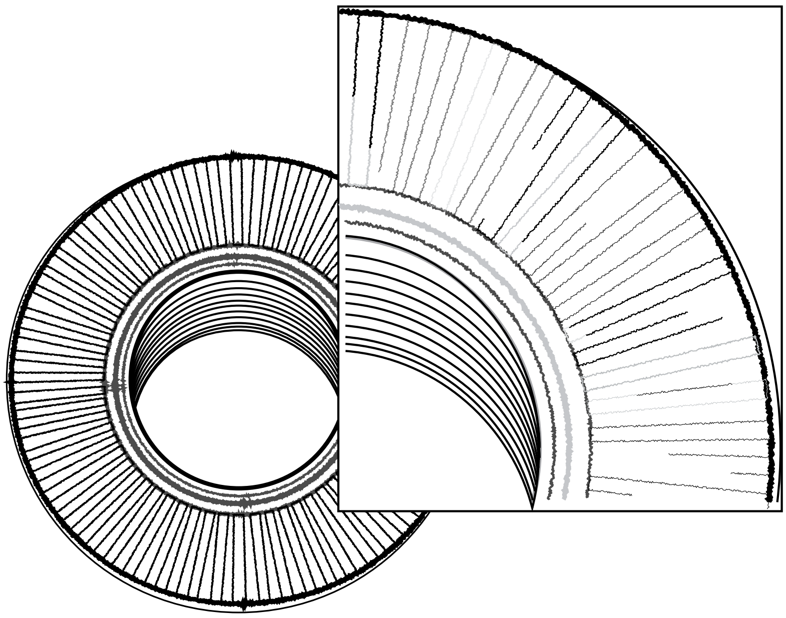
If ex works bolted connections are changed, a bolted connection of equal quality as per manufacturer's specifications must be restored in accordance with MAN standard M3059 (for obtaining this standard, see www.ptd.man.eu). For this purpose, the following aspects of the bolted connections must be identical:

1. Number and location of bolted connections (e.g. at connections of cross members)
2. Strength class (e.g. ribbed bolts 10.9, hexagonal flange nuts 10)
3. Types of nuts and bolts (ribbed bolts/hexagonal flange nuts)
4. Thread dimensions (e.g. M14 x 1.5)

Tightening torques are to be applied as per MAN standard M3059-1. To the end, the total coefficients of friction of the nuts and bolts must be between μ_{tot} = 0.09 to 0.15.
MAN recommends the use of ribbed bolts/hexagonal flange nuts as per MAN standards M7.012.04/M7.112.40.

If connections are disassembled, use new nuts and bolts on the tightening side when reassembling ribbed bolts. The tightening side can be identified by slight grooves on the ribs in the bolt/nut flange (see Fig. 08-III).

Fig. 08-III: Marks on nips on the tightening side



T_993_000026_0001_Z

Alternatively, in accordance with manufacturer's specifications it is also possible to use high-strength rivets (e.g. Huck-BOM, blind fasteners). A riveted joint must be at least equivalent to a bolted connection in terms of design and strength.

1.4 Fire-protection measures for vehicle bodies and modifications

This chapter contains basic information as well as specific notes concerning fire-protection measures for bodies and modifications on MAN chassis.

Fires can originate from:

- vehicle bodies or modifications
- falling cargo (e.g. wood chips)
- the operational environment of the vehicle
- the surface temperature of exhaust silencers and exhaust pipes.

1.4.1 General

An increasing variety of transport tasks and vehicle applications results in a large number of causes of fires in vehicles and cargo. It is mandatory for the body manufacturer or converter to comply with the specifications set down in MAN's Guideline to fitting bodies, *Section I-Applicability and legal agreements -3.4 Operational and road safety.*

It is mandatory for the body manufacturer or converter to initiate the fire-protection measures appropriate for the type of application/operation during conversion of the vehicle.
In particular, information relevant to registration, country-specific regulations and laws must be observed.

The body manufacturer or converter must point out the corresponding fire-protection measures in the operating instructions for its body and refer the end user to the particularities thereof.

The following applies to all fire-protection measures taken by body manufacturers and converters:
MAN can provide no information on the effectiveness of the measure used, responsibility lies with the company performing the modification.

1.4.2 Statutory requirements

MAN delivers chassis that are already equipped ex works in accordance with national ADR regulations.
No component or system on the chassis with relevance to ADR/GGVS may be modified during work on the body/conversion unless necessitated by the respective national regulations to be complied with.

It is mandatory for body manufacturers and converters to comply with ADR/GGVS regulations and country-specific laws and regulations.

Please see www.manted.de for further information. Registration is required.

1.4.3 Measures in the vicinity of the engine and exhaust system

In general, modifications to the exhaust system are to be avoided. Various factory options are available for MAN chassis and body builders must check to see if these can be used on a case-by-case basis.

Temperatures of 250 – 300°C occur on the surface of the exhaust system.
MAN recommends the installation of heat shields or heat-protection mats as required on parts of the vehicle/body that exhibit high temperatures.

With regard to vehicles fulfilling the EURO 6 exhaust standard, it must be noted that the diesel particulate filter (DPF) is subject to automatic regeneration cycles. The soot particles are collected and converted into CO_2 in the diesel particulate filter (DPF). This process is known as regeneration. A high exhaust gas temperature is required upstream of the DPF for this purpose. Regeneration usually takes place automatically during driving operation and is not noticed.

In this regard, please note the detailed information in the vehicle‘s operating instructions.

Warning notice

FIRE RISK!

Exhaust system becomes extremely hot and requires a long time to cool down.

Combustible materials, dust and vapours can be ignited especially easily, e.g.:

- If they are lying on or adhering to the exhaust system
- When refuelling, near fuel, coal, wood or grain storage facilities or similar
- On grass surfaces, hay, straw, foliage or other vegetated areas.
- When loading and unloading dangerous goods vehicles

Please see the further information in the vehicle operator‘s manual regarding this.

1.4.4 Measures on the air intake system

In order to avoid drawing in burning cigarette ends or similar, a so-called cigarette mesh must be fitted directly over the air intake in the same fashion as the mesh installed on production vehicles (non-flammable material, mesh size SW6, area of the open cross-section at least that of the intake air scoop on the air filter).

Warning notice

There is a risk of vehicle fire if this requirement is not observed!

MAN can provide no information on the effectiveness of the measure used, responsibility lies with the company performing the modification.

1.4.5 Electric wiring/fittings

Overloading, external thermal influences, sparks produced by improper connections or loose plug connectors in the electric wiring can result in a vehicle fire.
Electric wiring in the body, in particular wiring carrying heavy loads, must be adequately dimensioned and equipped with fuses appropriate for the maximum current draw.

When connecting additional electrical consumers, the electrical interfaces of the vehicle described in the Guideline to fitting bodies are to be employed.
Electric wiring is to be routed in such a manner that it is protected by adequate distance from the thermal effects of heat sources such as the engine, the exhaust system and son on (see Chapter III, Section 1.4.3 „Measures in the vicinity of the engine and exhaust system“).
If this is not possible, the wiring must be protected by means of suitable insulation measures such as covers, corrugated tubes/protective hoses, ducts and so on.
There must be no chafing points on sharp edges, protruding threaded bolts, nuts, heads of screws and so on.

Connections between individual cables must be implemented professionally and correctly, using plug connectors. The requisite spare parts can be obtained from the MAN Spare-parts Service.

Important notice
Subsequent connection to existing electric wiring by means of insulation displacement connectors or simply twisting or soldering is forbidden. Soldered connections are not permitted in movable wiring.

Any electric wiring/cable harnesses on the chassis damaged during assembly of the body must be replaced.

More detailed information can be found in Chapter III- Chassis – 8.0 Electrical/electronic system (vehicle electrical system).

2.0 Overall vehicle

2.1 General

This chapter contains basic terms as well as specific notes concerning the modification of MAN vehicles.
In particular, information relevant to registration must be observed.

2.2 Terms, dimensions and weights

The terms, dimensions and weights below are to be observed when modifying vehicles and bodywork.

Information
National regulations take priority over technically permissible dimensions and weights if they restrict the technically permissible dimensions and weights.

2.2.1 Theoretical wheelbase

The theoretical wheelbase is a variable that assists in determining the position of the centre of gravity and the axle loads. It depends on the:

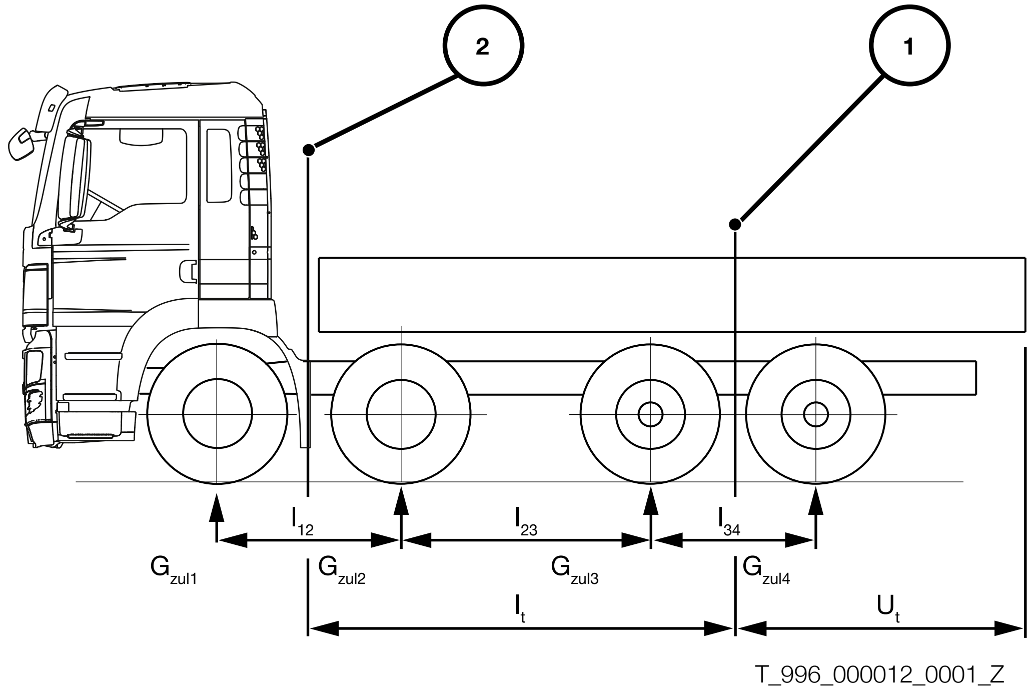
- Number of axles
- Arrangement of axles
- Distance between axles
- Permissible loads on individual axles

The theoretical wheelbase is the distance between the theoretical front-axle centerline and the theoretical rear-axle centerline.

Theoretical axle centerlines are used as reference points in order to simplify calculations. The reference point is needed in order to group several axles at one point. The permissible axle loads of the axles to be grouped may be the same or different.

An example can be seen in Fig. 09-III, where both front axles are combined to a theoretical front-axle centerline and both rear axles to a theoretical rear-axle centerline.

Fig. 09-III: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang on a four-axle vehicle with two front and two rear axles (random axle-load distribution)



1) theoretical rear-axle centerline
2) theoretical front-axle centerline

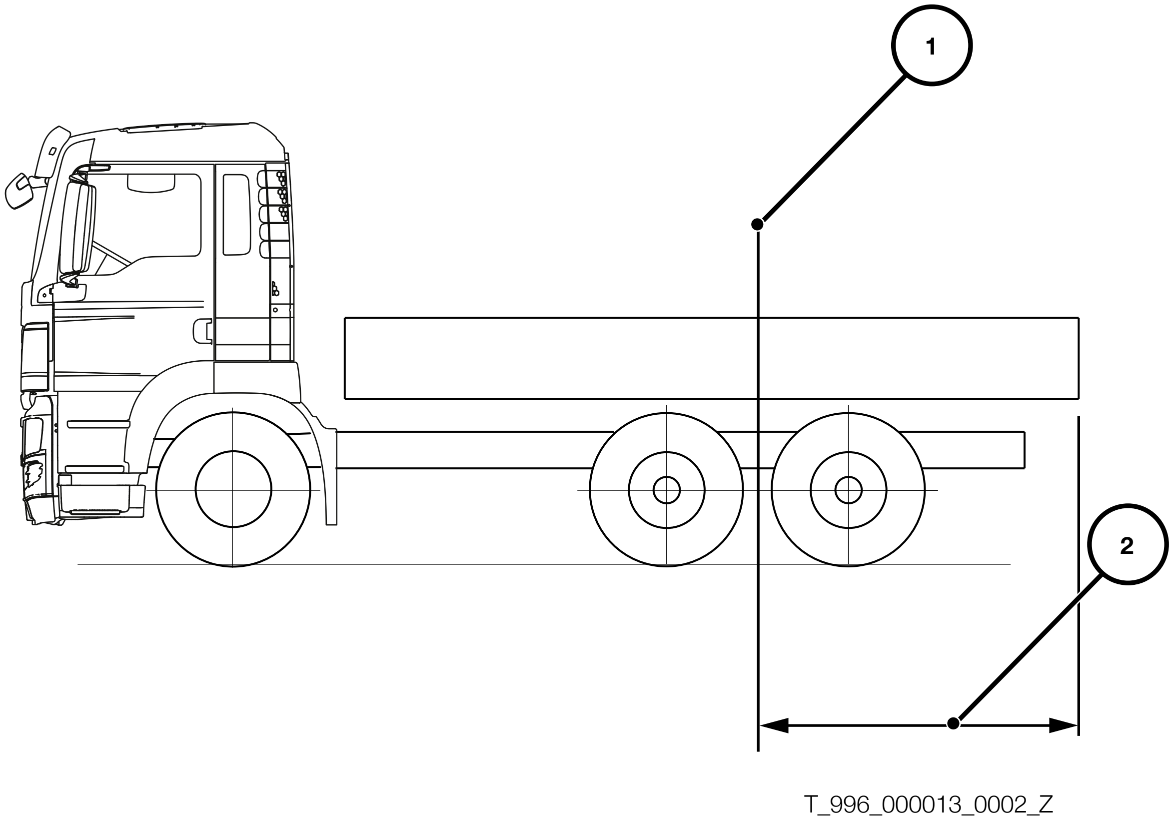
l_{12}, l_{23}, l_{34}	distance between the respective axles
G_{zul1}, G_{zul2}, G_{zul3}, G_{zul4}	permissible axle load of the respective axles
l_t	theoretical wheelbase
U_t	theoretical overhang

Formulae for calculating the theoretical wheelbase in different axle configurations are described in Chapter V Section 1.13.

2.2.2 Theoretical and permitted overhang lengths

The theoretical overhang length is the distance between the theoretical rear-axle centerline and the end of the vehicle, including its bodywork (see Fig. 10-III).

Fig. 10-III: Frame overhang on a three-axle vehicle with two rear axles and same rear-axle loads



1) theoretical rear-axle centerline
2) theoretical overhang

The permitted overhang is an important dimension with regard to adhering to permissible axle loads and the minimum front-axle load. As an example, Fig. 10-III shows the overhang on a three-axle chassis.

The permissible overhang for

- two-axle vehicles is 65%
- all other vehicles is 70%

of the theoretical overhang.

The theoretical overhang must not be longer than the permissible overhang.
However, the above-mentioned figures can be exceeded by 5% in the absence of equipment for pulling a trailer.

The prerequisite is that the minimum front-axle loads stated in Chapter III, Section 2.2.8, Table 01-III are maintained in every operating state.

The terms “theoretical wheelbase” and “theoretical rear-axle centerline” are explained in Chapter III, Section 2.2.1.

In addition, the overhang length has a significant effect on the distance that the rear end of the vehicle swings out when the vehicle is driven in a circle. The national registration requirements must be complied with when planning the body.

2.2.3 Permissible axle load

The permissible axle load is the total load on an axle or group of axles that may not be exceeded.

A distinction is made between

- technically permissible axle load
- nationally permissible axle load.

The technically permissible load on an axle or group of axles is restricted by the characteristics, condition and design of the components of the axle(s), for example the axle itself, suspension, rims and tyres.

The nationally permissible load on an axle or group of axles depends on the laws and the criteria governing the registration of vehicles in that specific country.

Important notice
Exceeding technically permissible axle loads is forbidden!

Under certain circumstances, nationally permissible axle loads may be exceeded. In this regard, the following must be observed.

- A certificate of exemption must be obtained from the national authority responsible.
- A certificate of exemption can only be obtained in case where the nationally permissible axle loads are lower than the technically permissible axle loads.

2.2.4 Permissible gross weight

The permissible gross weight is the total weight of a vehicle including its load that may not be exceeded.

A distinction is made between

- technically permissible gross weight
- nationally permissible gross weight.

The technically permissible gross weight is the weight that may not be exceeded, taking into account the engineering design of the vehicle‘s components (e.g. axle concept, brake system, material stress).

The nationally permissible gross weight of a vehicle depends on the laws and the criteria governing the registration of vehicles in that specific country.

Important notice
Exceeding the technically permissible gross weight is forbidden!

Under certain circumstances, the nationally permissible gross weight may be exceeded. In this regard, the following must be observed.

- A certificate of exemption must be obtained from the national authority responsible.
- A certificate of exemption can only be obtained in case where the nationally permissible gross weight is lower than the technically permissible gross weight.

2.2.5 Permissible gross train weight

The permissible gross train weight is the weight of a train combination, i.e. tractor and trailer or semitrailer tractor and semitrailer (including its load) that may not be exceeded.

A distinction is made between

- technically permissible gross train weight
- nationally permissible gross train weight.

The technically permissible gross train weight is the weight that may not be exceeded, taking into account the engineering design of the vehicle's components (e.g. axle concept, brake system, material stress).

The nationally permissible gross train weight depends on the laws and the criteria governing the registration of vehicles in that specific country.

Important notice
Exceeding the technically permissible gross train weight is forbidden! Under certain circumstances, the nationally permissible gross train weight may be exceeded.

In this regard, the following must be observed.

- A certificate of exemption must be obtained from the national authority responsible.
- A certificate of exemption can only be obtained in case where the nationally permissible gross train weight is lower than the technically permissible gross train weight.

2.2.6 Axle overload

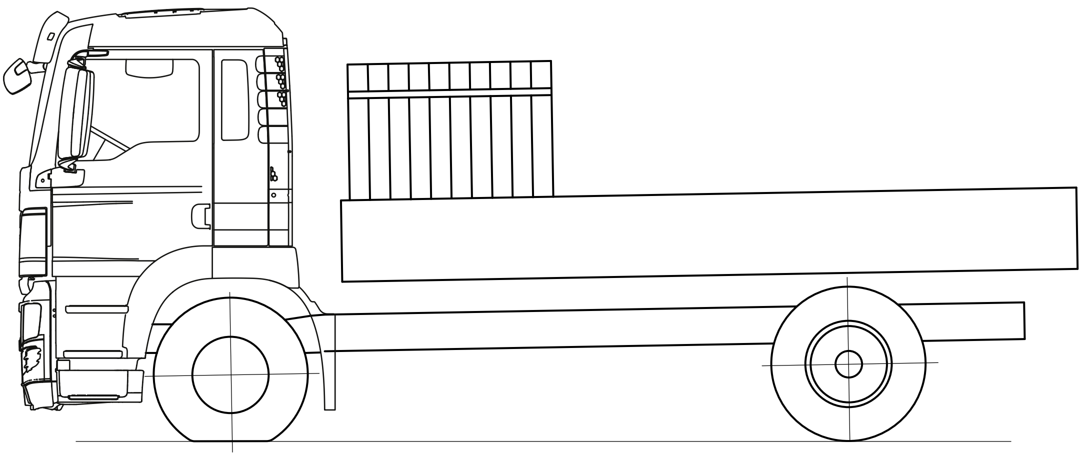
Axle overload is to be understood as the exceeding of both nationally permissible and technically permissible axle loads.

Axle overloads can result from:

- loading the vehicle in front- or back-heavy manner
- overloading
- incorrect design of vehicle or body.

Important notice
Axle overloads must be avoided because otherwise, serious damage can occur to the vehicle and its components.

Fig. 11-III: Overload on front axle due to front-heavy loading



T_996_000019_0001_G

2.2.7 Wheel-load difference

The wheel-load difference describes the difference in load on the left and right wheel or set of wheels of **an axle or group of axles**. The difference in load can cause a tilted position in relation to the road. In conjunction with a laterally shifted center of gravity, this can lead to adverse driving characteristics. Furthermore, it can also result in one-sided wear on the tyres.

Bodybuilders and operators must ensure that the wheel-load difference in all operating states (laden and unladen) is as low as possible. An uneven load distribution as a result of the body can, for example, be countered by relocating parts such as the tank, battery box and spare wheel.

If there are increased wheel-load differences, ESP (Electronic Stability Program) should be selected as alternative equipment in order to improve driving stability.

The maximum wheel-load difference must not exceed <u>10% of the actual (1)</u> axle load, but <u>5% of the permissible (2)</u> axle load. The smaller value is the decisive factor (see red line in Fig. 12-III).

In addition, the permissible load of the tyre and rim combination should be checked. Information concerning this can be found in the technical manuals of the tyre and rim manufacturers.

Proceed as follows to determine the maximum permissible wheel-load difference per axle or group of axles.

<u>Step 1:</u> calculate the limit value of the axle load = $\frac{0{,}05}{0{,}1} \cdot$ permissible axle load

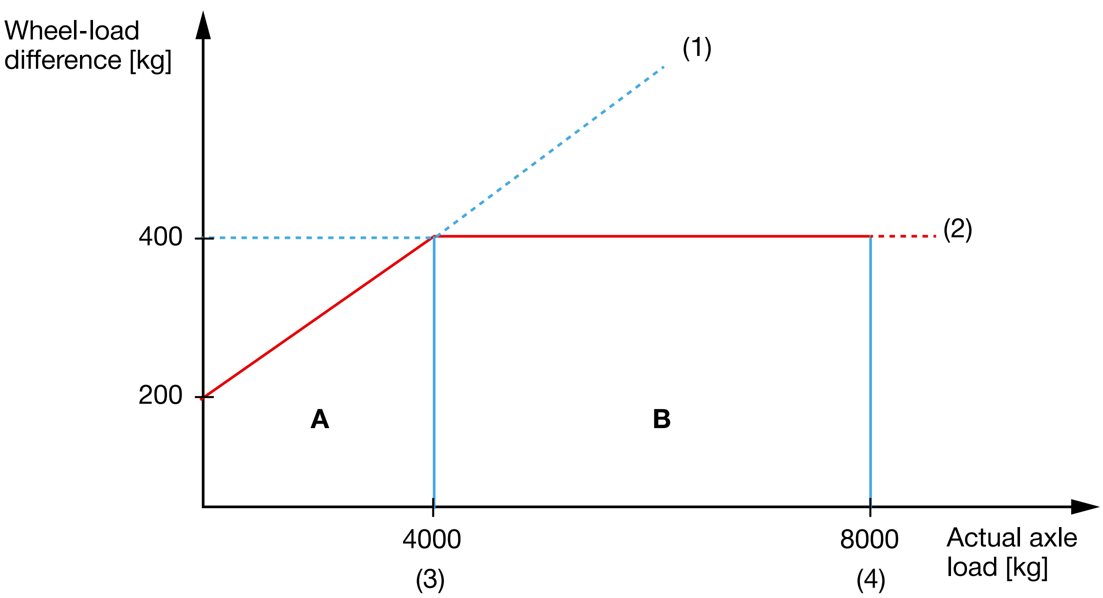
<u>Step 2</u>: determine the applicable range: Range A ≤ limit value
Range B > limit value

<u>Step 3:</u> calculate the permissible wheel-load difference
If the actual axle load is in Range A, the formula
- permissible wheel-load difference = 0.1 x actual axle load applies.

If the actual axle load is in Range B, the formula
- permissible wheel-load difference = 0.05 x permissible axle load applies.

<u>Step 4:</u> check the permissible wheel loads

Fig. 12-III: Representation of the permissible wheel-load difference (the numerical values apply to this example; they are not universally applicable)



T_354_000001_0001_D

1) 10% of the actual axle load
2) 5% of the permissible axle load
3) Limit value between Ranges A and B
4) Permissible axle load

Example:

Axle data:
Actual weights:

- Unladen: 3000 kg; (with equal distribution 1500 kg per wheel)
- Laden: 7800 kg; (with equal distribution 3900 kg per wheel)

Permissible axle load: 8000 kg
Tyres: 315/80R22,5 with load index 156

Step 1: calculate the limit value of the axle load

Limit value = $^{5\ (\%)}/_{(10\ (\%)}$ x 8000 kg = 4000 kg

Step 2: determine the applicable range

- Unladen: < limit value (3000 kg < 4000 kg) -> Range A
- Laden: > limit value (7800 kg > 4000 kg) -> Range B

Step 3: calculate the permissible wheel-load difference

- Unladen: 0,1 x 3000 kg = 300 kg (± 150 kg per wheel)
  A load of 1350 kg is thus permitted on one side and 1650 kg on the other.
- Laden: 0,05 x 8 000 kg = 400 kg (± 200 kg per wheel)
  A load of 4100 kg is thus permitted on one side and 3700 kg on the other.

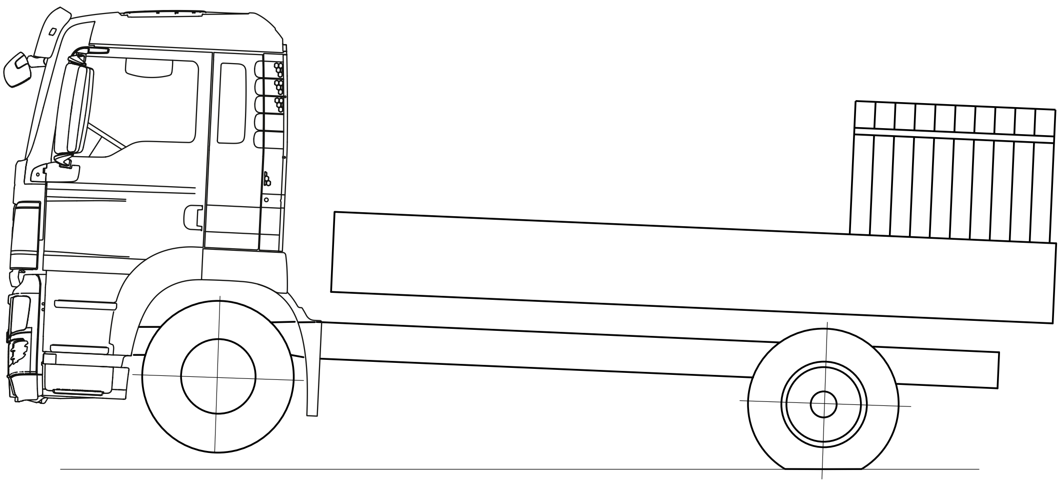
Step 4: check the permissible wheel loads

Load index 156 means that the permissible tyre-load capacity is 4000 kg.
In this example, the tyre-load capacity thus limits the possible wheel-load difference to 200 kg when laden.
(± 100 kg per wheel)

2.2.8 Minimum front-axle load

To ensure proper steering, the front axle of the vehicle, depending on model range and number of axles, must exhibit a given minimum load as per Table 01-III in all load conditions of the vehicle.

Fig. 13-III: Minimum load on front axle



T_996_000020_0001_G

Notes on use of the table

- If there is more than one front axle, the %-value is the sum of the front axle loads.

- Three-axle vehicles with liftable leading or trailing axle must be considered as two-axle drive when axle lift is actuated. In this condition, the higher minimum front axle load of two-axle drive vehicles applies. The empty condition must be considered with both lifted and lowered axle.

- If vehicles are equipped with variable axle load ratio (sales code 128VA), these must be considered as two-axle vehicles with lowered leading or trailing axle and with an actual drive axle load less than the permitted drive axle load (e.g. <11.5 t). In this condition, the higher minimum front axle load of two-axle drive vehicles applies. It is not necessary to consider the empty condition with lowered axle here.

Table 01-III: Minimum loading of front axle(s) of the TGS/TGX in every load situation expressed as a percentage of the respective vehicle's actual weight

Minimum loading of front axle(s) in every load situation expressed as a percentage of the respective vehicle's actual gross weight GW = gross weight RDT = rigid-drawbar trailer CAT = center-axle trailer				
Number of axles	Without RDT / CAT Solo vehicle	With RDT / CAT Gross weight of trailer ≤ 18 t	Tridem RDT / CAT, GW > 18 t	Other tail load, e.g. crane, liftgate
Two axles	25%	25%	35%	30%
More than two axles	20%	25%	30%	25%

With combined rear loads like rigid drawbar trailers with loading crane for example, the higher minimum front-axle load applies.

The values apply including any additional tail loads such as

- nose weight through central axle trailer,
- loading crane on vehicle tail,
- Lift gates
- transportable fork-lift trucks.

2.2.9 Calculating the axle load and weighing procedure

It is essential that an axle load calculation be completed in order to ensure correct design of the body.
The weights given in the sales documents only apply to production standard vehicles. Weight differences can be caused by optional equipment or manufacturing tolerances. Manufacturing inaccuracies (within tolerances) may occur.

Achieving optimum compatibility between bodywork and truck is only possible if the vehicle is weighed before any work on the body is commenced. The weights thus obtained are then taken as a basis for an axle load calculation.

The vehicle must be weighed subject to following conditions:

- Without the driver
- With a fully filled AdBlue® tank and fully filled fuel tank
- With the handbrake released and the vehicle secured with chocks
- If fitted with air suspension, raise the vehicle to normal driving position
- Liftable axle(s) must be raised to the normal driving position (as in loaded condition)
- Do not actuate any moving-off aid.

Observe the following sequence when weighing a vehicle (leading or trailing axle relates to the rear axle):

Two-axle vehicles:

- 1st axle
- 2nd axle
- whole vehicle as a check

Three-axle vehicles with two rear axles:

- 1st axle
- 2nd together with 3rd axle
- whole vehicle as a check

Four axle vehicle with two front and two rear axles:

- 1st together with 2nd axle
- 3rd together with 4th axle
- whole vehicle as a check

Four-axle vehicle with one front and three rear axles:

- 1st axle
- 2nd together with 3rd and 4th axles
- whole vehicle as a check.

2.2.10 Rolling circumference and difference in rolling circumference

The rolling circumference is the distance a tyre covers in the course of a single revolution without slip.

Different tyre sizes on the front and rear axle(s) can only be fitted to all-wheel-drive vehicles (including HydroDrive) if the difference in rolling circumference of the tyres used does not exceed 2%.
In the case of non-all-wheel-drive vehicles, the difference in rolling circumference may not exceed 10%.

The basis for calculation is always the circumference of the smaller tyre.

2.3 Modifications to the overall vehicle

In general, modifications to the complete vehicle should only be made in exceptional cases. It is essential to comply with all manufacturer's specifications and to agree any modifications with MAN (for the address, see "Publisher" above).
In this context, individual components cannot be regarded individually, because they are usually part of systems and functions of the complete vehicle. The cross members of the chassis frame are an example of this. Together with the frame side members, they form the support structure of the truck and affect many other functions. This means they are subject to heavy loads and may not be modified.

2.3.1 Modifications to the wheelbase

Every change of wheelbase requires manufacturer's confirmation. It is assumed that any change to the wheelbase will only be carried out subsequent to receipt of the manufacturer's approval.

Notes on applying for manufacturer's confirmation can be found in Chapter I, Section 5.2.1. The conversion data file associated with changes to the wheelbase and/or frame overhang will be provided together with the confirmation.

Technical design regulations applicable to steering (in particular 70/311 EEC, ECE-R79) mean that, depending upon the number and type of steered axles, wheelbase, tyres axle loads and gross weight, chassis of MAN model ranges are fitted with different steering wheels (diameter), steering gear (range of ratios) and steering oil piping (cooling coils).

As a basic principle, it must be ensured that the new wheelbase is within the model limit.
"Within the model limit" means that the new wheelbase is neither

- shorter than the shortest nor
- longer than the longest standard wheelbase for the same model of vehicle.

"The same model of vehicle" means vehicles with
- the same model number
- the same type of vehicle and
- the same wheel configuration

Important notice
Any shortening or extending of wheelbases exceeding this may only be carried out by MAN or its qualified conversion suppliers ("qUL") subsequent to consultation with MAN.

In addition, the following applies to TGS/TGX vehicles

- fitted with hydraulic forced steering of the "ZF-Servocom® RAS" (rear-axle steering) trailing axle (e.g. 6x2-4, 6x4-4 or 8x2-4): extending and shortening the wheelbase is possible. Depending on the extent to which the wheelbase from the first - Second axle has been modified, steering arms with different steering angles must be installed on the trailing axle. The steering arms to be used can be found in the confirmation.
- fitted with electronic-hydraulic steering of the "ZF-Servocom RAS-EC (rear-axle steering – electronically controlled)" leading axle (e.g. all 6x2/4 and 8x4/4): shortening the wheelbase is possible, but not extending it. Modifications to the steering system, however, are not permitted.
- fitted with electronic-hydraulic steering of the leading or trailing axle "EHLA®": it is possible to extend and shorten the wheelbase. Modifications to the steering system, however, are not permitted.
- fitted with two mechanically steered front axles (e.g. 8x4): steered axles may only be relocated by MAN or its qualified conversion suppliers.

Type of wheelbase modification
Modifications to the wheelbase can be carried out in one of the following two ways:

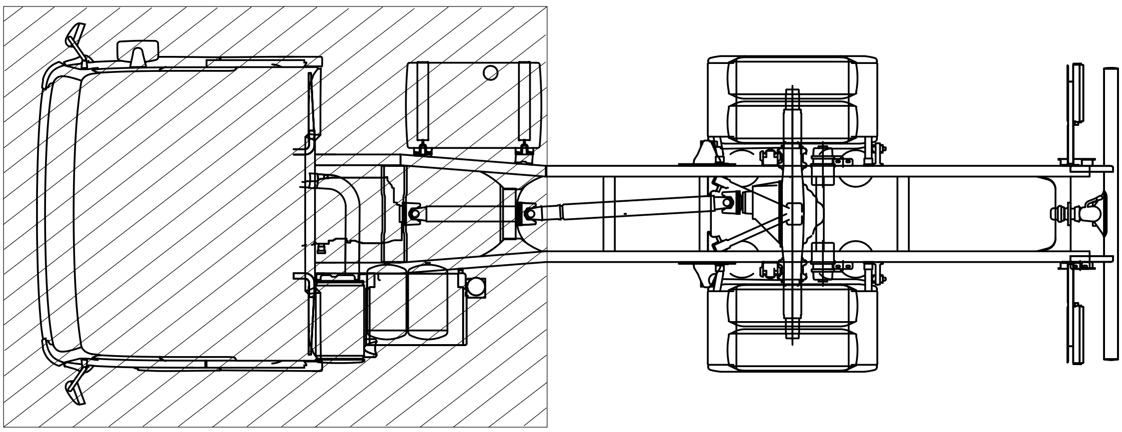
I. Relocating the entire rear-axle unit
II. Disconnecting the frame side members (inserting or removing a section of the frame).

Irrespective of the type of wheelbase modification, the following must be observed.

- The maximum distance between cross members subsequent to wheelbase modification may not exceed 1500 mm. A tolerance of +100 mm is permissible.
- Modifications to the propshaft train must be carried out according to these guidelines to fitting bodies (see Chapter III, Section 6.5 and the instructions provided by the propshaft manufacturer. If the new wheelbase is the same as a standard wheelbase, then the arrangement of the propshaft and cross members must be the same as that for a vehicle with standard wheelbase.
- Chapter III, Sections 6.3.5.2 and 8.2.1 apply with regards to the relocation of air and electrical lines. CAN cables may not be cut. For this reason, longer routes must be selected when shortening wheelbases. More over, rings and loops may not be formed when routing cables. During wheelbase extensions all rear-axle related control units and sensors must be relocated with the axle, which is why adapter cable harnesses are available for all the aforementioned equipment. System, method and item numbers are described in detail in Chapter III, Section 8.2.

I. Relocating the entire rear-axle unit
If the rear-axle unit is relocated, the axle mounting, axle guide and cross members must be attached using rivets or MAN double-nip countersunk bolts in accordance with Chapter III, Section 1.3.3 of the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies. The distance between drill holes specified there must be adhered to!
In the case of vehicles with dropped frames, the axle guide and suspension (e.g. spring hangers, longitudinal control arm brackets) may not be located in the area in front of or within the bends in the frame. A minimum clearance of 100 mm to the second frame bend is assumed (see Fig. 14-III).

Fig. 14-III: Forbidden zone for rear axle guide



T_996_000017_0001_Z

II. Separating the frame side member

If the wheelbase modification is carried out by separating the frame side member, it is mandatory for welding to comply with the specifications in the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies (see Chapter III, Section 1.3.2). The original frame material must be used for any part inserted in the frame, e.g. frame side members, frame inserts. The material specifications can be found in Chapter III, Section 4.2. It is recommended that the frame side members are pre-heated to 150°C – 200°C.

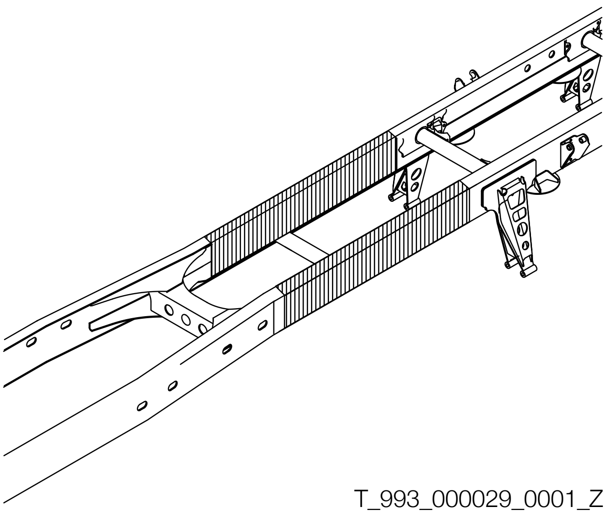
The frame must not be separated in the vicinity of:

- Axle guides and suspension (e.g. spring hangers, trailing arm mountings), minimum distance 100 mm
- Bends in the frame, minimum distance 100 mm
- Points where loads are introduced
- Gearbox mountings and cross members (also transfer cases on all-wheel-drive vehicles)
- Engine mounting
- Points where loads are introduced from bodywork

The area in which weld seams for wheelbase modifications are permitted begins at least 100 mm behind the bend and ends at most 100 mm ahead of the frontmost rear-axle guide (see Fig. 15-III).

Welded seams along the longitudinal axis of the vehicle are not permitted!

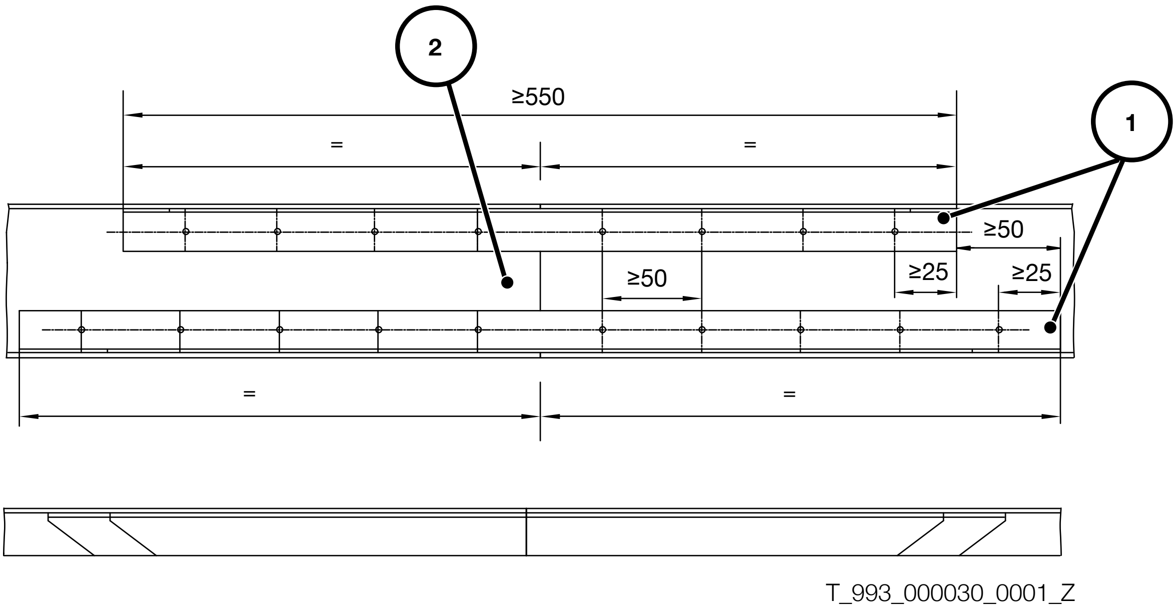
Fig. 15-III: Permissible area for welding dropped frames



T_993_000029_0001_Z

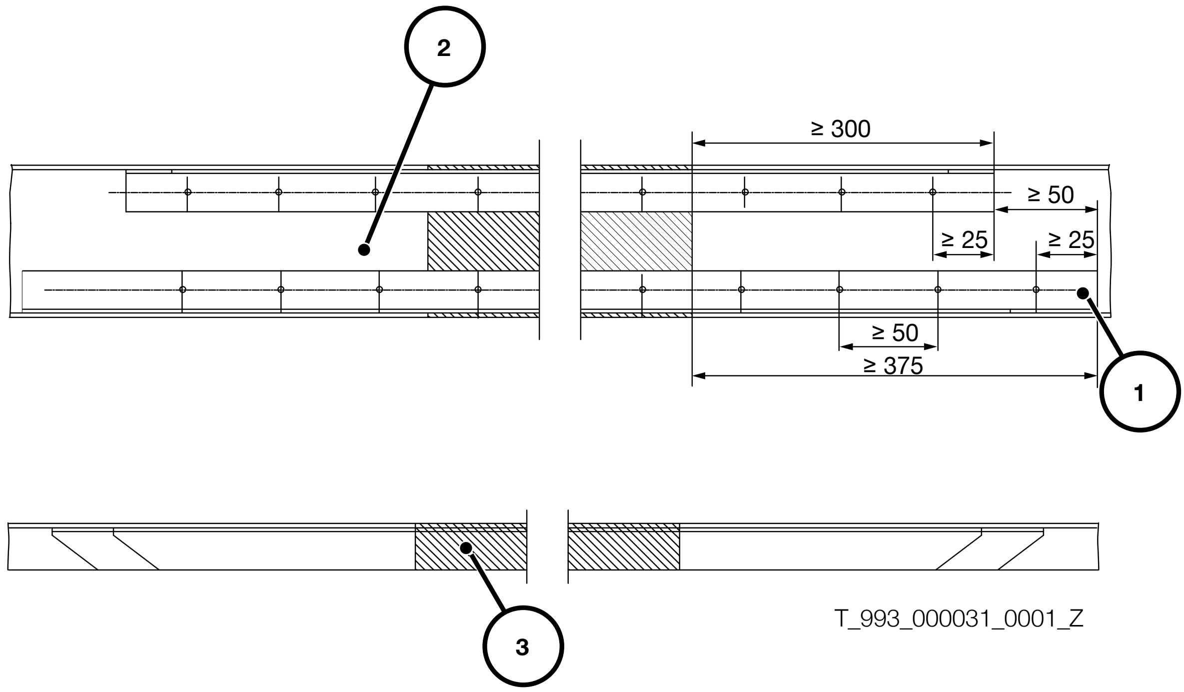
If the wheelbase modification is carried out by separating the frame side member, weld seams for shortened wheelbases must be secured by means of inserts. Frame inserts must be in accordance with the following:

Fig. 16-III: Inserts for wheelbase shortening



1) Frame insert
2) Frame side member

Fig. 17-III: Inserts for wheelbase extension



1) Frame insert
2) Frame side member
3) Profile section

Location no. 1, Fig. 16-III and Fig. 17-III:

- Existing drill holes in the frame in the vicinity of the angle inserts are to be used. The following applies to the arrangement of drill holes on the frame side member:
  distance between holes ≥ 50 mm, edge distances ≥ 25 mm. The hole pattern can be found in the corresponding frame side member drawing.

Location number 2, Fig. 16-III and Fig. 17-III:

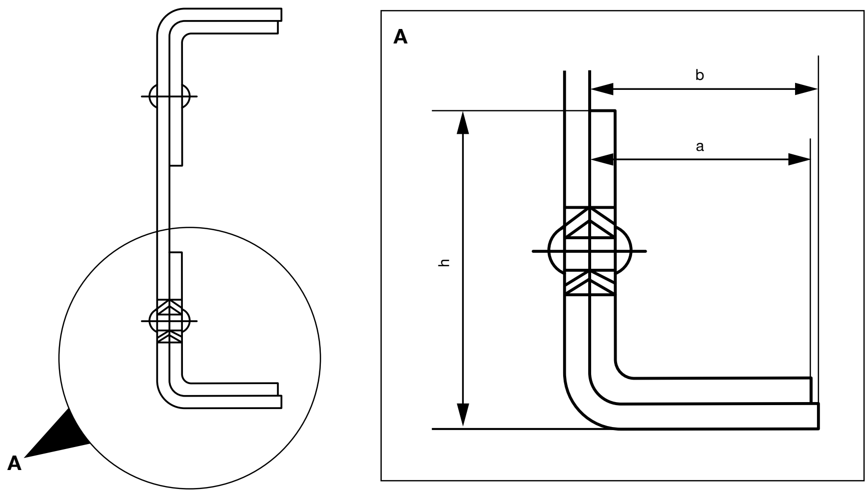
- Where parts are in contact, the weld seam must be levelled (no. 2 in Fig. 16-III and Fig. 17-III).

Location no. 3, Fig. 16-III and Fig. 17-III:

- Where wheelbases are extended by means of inserting a frame side member profile, the material specifications as set down in the frame-section table and the maximum permissible wheelbases as per the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies must be observed. The frame track may not be changed. If the maximum distances between frame cross members is exceeded, supplementary cross members must be inserted.

Moreover, the following notes on the dimensions of inserts must be observed.

Fig. 18-III: Inserts for wheelbase extension



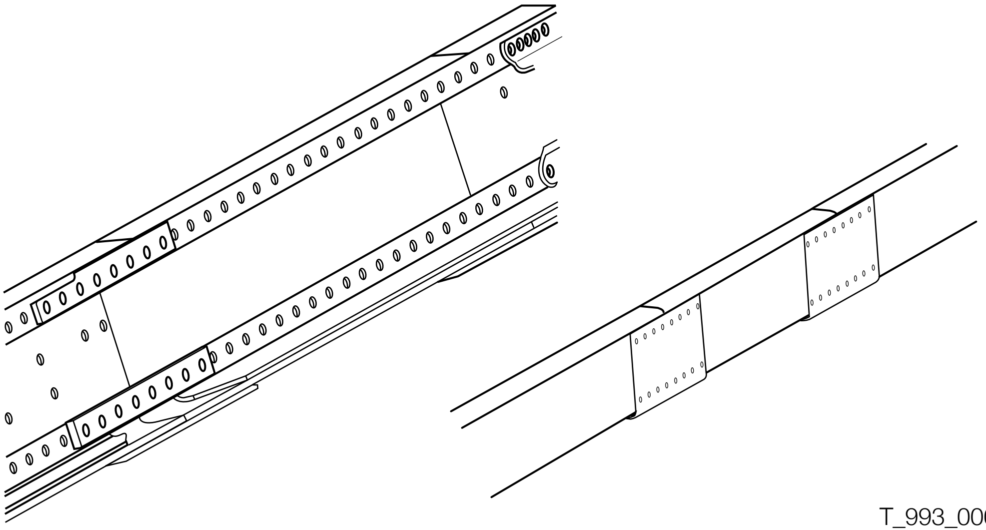
T_993_000032_0001_Z

Key

- Height (h) ≥ Width (a)
- Width (a) is the same as the inner width of the frame (b), tolerance -5 mm.
- Thickness is the same as frame thickness, tolerance -1 mm. Material min. S355J2G3 (St.52-3)
- Rolled sections are not permitted.

On some long-wheelbase chassis, frame inserts are already fitted between the front and rear axles at the factory. Frame inserts may not be welded together with the frame side members. This can be avoided for example, by inserting a copper-based separating foil which is removed once the welding work is completed.
Inserts used in changing the wheelbase may be simply butted-up to one another and may either be welded together or joined with an overlapping plate (see Fig. 19-III, Fig. 20-III).

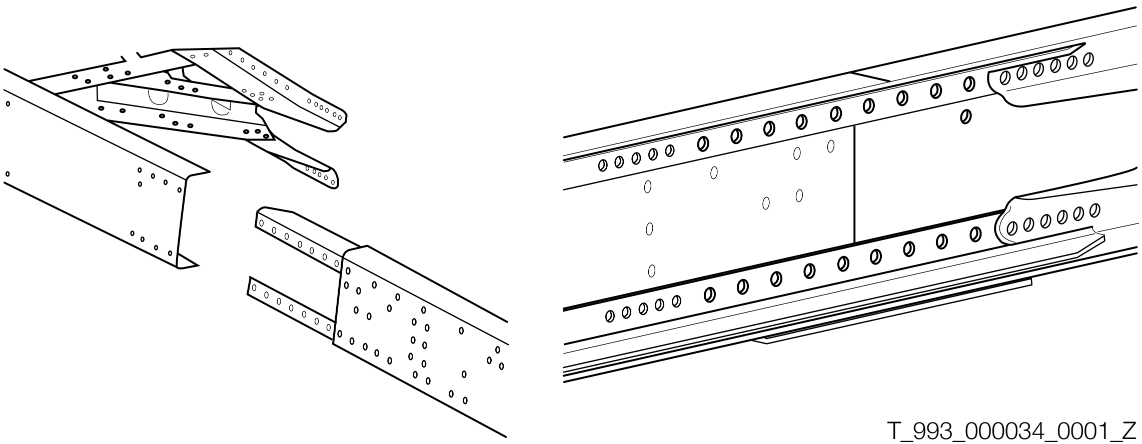
Fig. 19-III: Insert covering, outside and inside



T_993_000033_0001_Z

The joint between the frame and the insert seam may not coincide with a weld seam in the frame - a distance of 100 mm between seams must be observed.
This is easy to achieve if during cutting of the frame the location of the frame-insert joint is already taken into account.

Fig. 20-III: Projecting inserts, outside and inside



T_993_000034_0001_Z

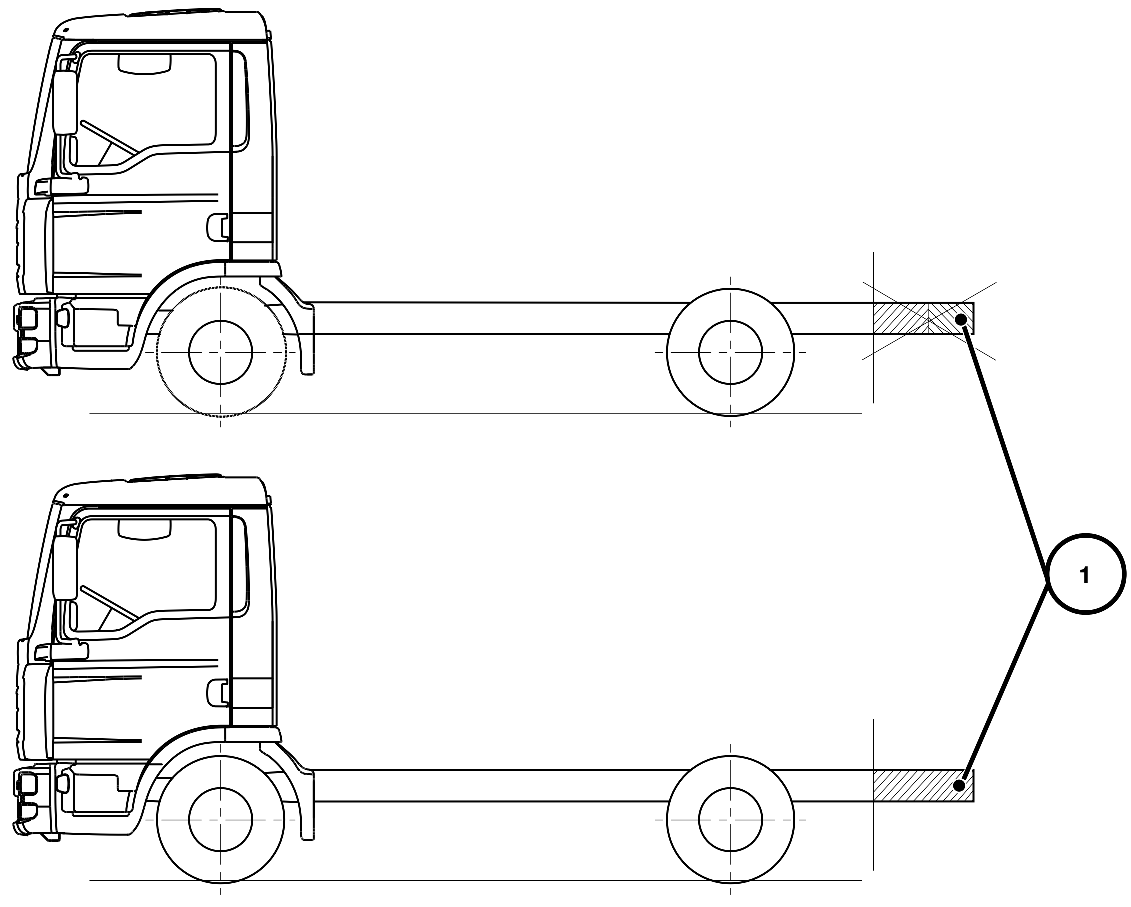
2.3.2 Modifying the frame overhang

“Frame overhang modification” refers to any changes in length from the middle of the last rear axle to the frame end. As a basic principle it is possible to extend or shorten the overhang, provided the generally applicable national conditions for registration are met.

Modifications to the overhang can change the location of the center of gravity for payload and body as well as the resulting axle loads. Prior to commencing work, an axle-load calculation must be carried in order to determine whether the respective permissible axle load can be complied with (see Chapter V, Section 1.10 for an example of an axle-load calculation).

Frame overhang extension
Frame extensions are only permissible using material identical to that used for the original frame (see Chapter III, Section 4.2). Extensions must always be carried out on the frame end. Extensions consisting of several profile sections are not permitted (cf. Fig. 21-III).

Fig. 21-III: Extension of frame overhang



T_995_000023_0001_G

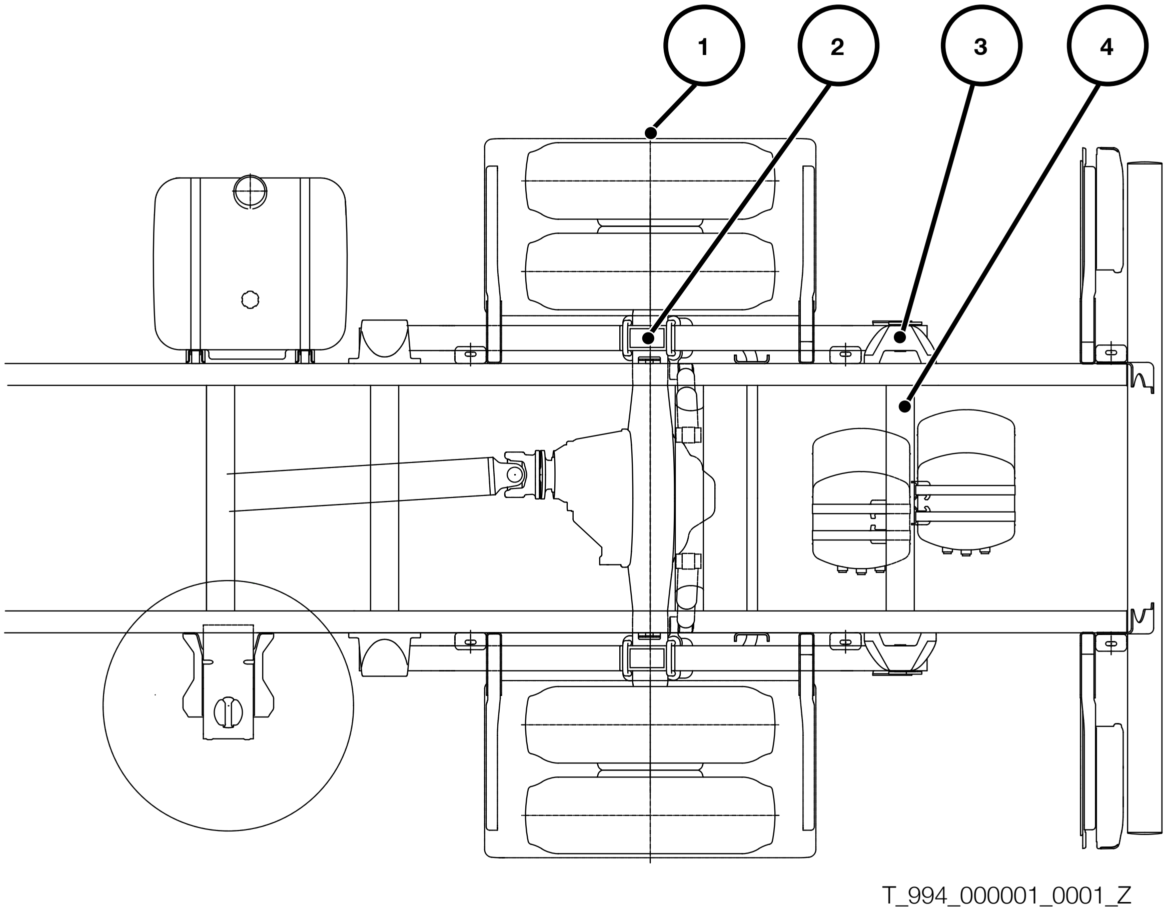
1) Frame extension

The specifications concerning welding on the frame (see MAN guidelines to fitting bodies, Chapter III, Section 1.3.2) must always be observed.

Frame overhang extensions may not be carried out the area of the rear-axle mounting and guide or the axle suspension (e.g. the air-spring-disc, leaf-spring-bearing and stabiliser mountings). The necessary minimum distance of 100 mm must be maintained here. Cross members located in this area may not be relocated but must be left where they are.

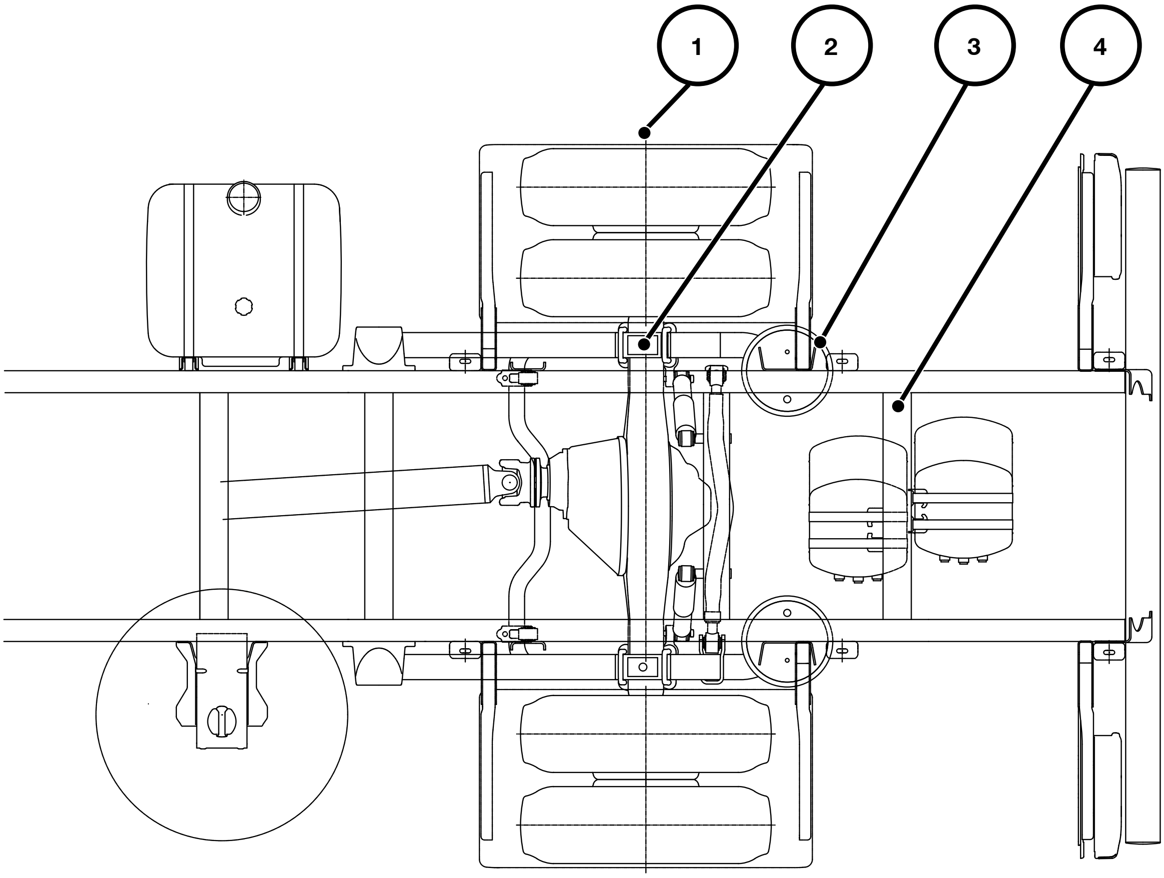
If the distance between any two cross members to the rear of the frame overhang extension is greater than 1500 mm ± 100 mm, a supplementary cross member must be provided.

Fig. 22-III: Example of a leaf-sprung rear-axle unit with associated fastenings



1) Center of rear axle
2) Axle mounting
3) Fastening of axle-suspension elements (leaf spring)
4) Frame side member

Fig. 23-III: Example of an air-sprung rear-axle unit with associated fastenings



1) Center of rear axle
2) Axle mounting
3) Fastening of axle-suspension elements (air-spring-disc)
4) Frame side member

Important notice

On certain bodies it is sensible to use frame inserts in order to reinforce the modified overhang. For this reason, MAN recommends using frame inserts.

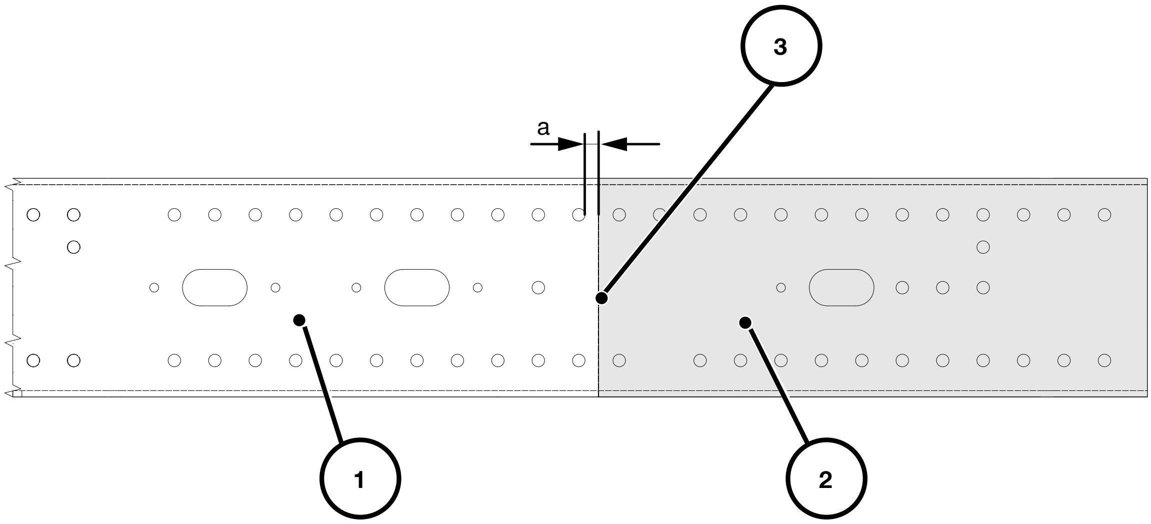
The dimensions of the frame inserts depend on the following criteria:

- Type of load
- Introduction of force
- Body design
- Body type
- Dimension of auxiliary frame

Correspondingly prepared cable harnesses for frame extensions are available from MAN.
A detailed description of the procedure for extending cable harnesses, including a list of all permissible item numbers can be found in Chapter III, Section 8.2. Notes on routing cable harnesses are to be observed.
For extending and re-routing compressed-air lines, refer to Chapter III, Section 6.3.5 of the guidelines to fitting bodies.

Shortening the frame overhang
When a frame overhang is shortened, it is vital to adhere to the necessary minimum distance of 100 mm when cutting the frame side member in the area of the rear-axle mounting and guide, as well as in the area of the axle suspension (e.g. the air-spring-disc, leaf-spring and stabiliser mountings).
The cut must be so positioned that drill holes are not cut. If forces are introduced via drill holes at the frame end, it is mandatory to adhere to the necessary distance to the extreme fibre (Fig. 24-IIIDistance a).

Fig. 24-III: Distance to extreme fibre of frame end



a Distance to extreme fibre
1) Frame side member
2) Frame overhang to be removed
3) Frame cut

Any cross members in the area of the cut must be relocated so that they can be bolted to the frame side member again.

The following applies:

Distance between cross members ≤ 1500 mm ± 100 mm.

Where a frame overhang has been shortened, the cable harness installed as standard remains in use. In such cases, Chapter III, Section 8.2 must be observed with regard to routing lines. Compressed-air lines may be shortened in accordance with Chapter III, Section 6.3.5.

Important notice
MAN recommends reinforcing frames by means of frame inserts (see also frame overhang extension).

Use of final cross member
A final cross member must always be fitted.

2.3.3 Modifying the wheel configuration

Modifying the wheel configuration means:

- fitting of additional axles,
- removal of axles,
- Converting non-steered axles to steered axles
- Converting steered axles to non-steered axles

Important notice
Modifying the wheel configuration is forbidden. These conversions are carried out exclusively by MAN and its qualified conversion suppliers (“qUL”). Manufacturer’s confirmation is necessary in every case.

2.3.4 Changing the tyre type

Every change of tyre type requires manufacturer’s confirmation. Notes on applying for manufacturer’s confirmation can be found in Chapter I, Section 5.2.

The conversion data file associated with changes to the tyre type will, if required, be provided together with the confirmation.

Technical limit values with regard to changing the tyre type can be found in Chapter I, Section 2.2.10.

The notes in Chapter IV “Body” relating to anti-skid chains, clearance and the load ratings of tyres and rims must be observed.

2.3.5 Changing the vehicle type and interchangeable operation as semitrailer tractor/truck

Conversion of a truck into a semitrailer tractor or of a semitrailer tractor into a truck or using the same vehicle alternatively as a semitrailer tractor or truck requires manufacturer’s confirmation from MAN.

Notes on applying for manufacturer’s confirmation can be found in Chapter I, Section 5.2 “Manufacturer’s confirmation”.

Conversion of a semitrailer tractor to a truck or vice versa requires modification of the vehicle’s parameterisation. The conversion data file associated with the chassis modification will be provided together with the confirmation.

Depending on the selected vehicle (vehicle model), the change of vehicle type as well as interchangeable operation may possibly require conversion measures to be taken in the area of the axle guide (e.g. springs, shock absorbers, stabilisers) and the brakes.

The scope of such conversion measure depends on the selected vehicle model and the desired utilisation.

Therefore, in the case of new-build vehicles to be used as both semitrailer tractors and trucks, it must be determined beforehand whether a truck chassis or a semitrailer tractor is to be used.

One exception in the TGS and TGX model ranges is the vehicle transporter: please refer to Chapter IV, Section 3.13 “Vehicle transporters”.

Operation of the following vehicle models (model numbers) as combined semitrailer tractors/trucks or conversions to trucks are not permitted. 05X, 08S, 13S, 13X.

2.3.6 Retrofitting additional units, attachments and accessories

If units, attachments or accessories are to be retrofitted to the vehicle, they must be harmonised with MAN when the measures are in the planning phase (for address see “Publisher” above).
Full and verifiable documentation enabling a decision to be taken on the feasibility of the planned measures must be submitted.

The background to this is that retrofitting usually involves intervention in the control unit’s CAN. This also involves additions to the programming of a vehicle’s software. Retrofitted systems may under certain circumstances not be assimilated into the vehicle’s own Trucknology® “Time maintenance system” or “Flexible maintenance system”.
For this reason, in the case of retrofitted original parts, the same maintenance convenience will not necessarily result as in a first-time configuration.

Subsequent modification or expansion of the vehicle parameterisation can only be carried out with the help of the MAN Service outlet responsible and MAN approval of the programs.

Warning notice

Under no circumstances does MAN accept design responsibility or responsibility for the consequences of retrofits that it has not approved. The stipulations stated in these guidelines and in approvals must be adhered to. Approvals, reports and certification produced by third parties (e.g. test institutes) do not automatically mean the issue of approval by MAN.

MAN may refuse approval even though third parties have issued appropriate clearance. Unless otherwise agreed, approval only refers to the actual installation of the equipment. Approval does not mean that MAN has checked the entire system with regard to strength, vehicle handling etc., and has accepted responsibility for warranty of products. This responsibility is borne by the executing company. The retrofitting of subassemblies and the like can alter the technical data of a vehicle. The respective equipment manufacturer and/or the dealer/importer is responsible for determining and issuing this new data.

2.4 Homologated vehicle components / vehicle components relevant to safety

This section provides an overview of the most important homologated components of the vehicle and/or components of the vehicle relevant to safety. They may not be changed without permission from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

If any changes are made, the affected parts must be accepted again by a technical inspectorate.
The MAN warranty, however, is invalidated.

To be admissible for registration, vehicles must be configured in such a manner that they comply with the respective country-specific laws. In order to ensure this in series production, parts relevant to registration are homologated. Because of this, individual acceptances are no longer necessary.

Some of these components are listed below.

- Exhaust silencer
- Axles and running gear
- ADR components
- Trailer bracket and coupling
- Driveline and wheels
- Brake system
- Electrical components
- Cab
- Front cross member
- Camera system
- Fuel tank with mounting, hose and pump
- Steering system
- Lighting equipment
- Air intake
- Engine with engine attachments
- Register coupling
- Fifth-wheel coupling
- Final cross member for trailer coupling
- Underride protection, rear and side
- Adjuster mechanism

Further information concerning the homologation or relevance to safety of parts not listed above can be requested from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

3.0 Cab

3.1 General

Modifications to the cab's structure (e.g. incisions/cut-outs, changes to the support structure including the seats and seat fastenings, cab extensions, lowering of the roof) as well as modifications to the cab mountings and tilting mechanism are to be avoided wherever possible.

Warning notice
If modifications to the cab are nevertheless necessary for technical reasons relevant to the body, they must be harmonised with MAN during the planning phase (for address see "Publisher" above).

Modifications to the cab may only be carried out by MAN or its qualified conversion suppliers ("qUL").

The generally applicable national conditions for registration must be met in every case.

3.2 Cabs

This section provides an overview of cabs including technical data for all the model ranges. The tabular overviews provide information on designation, dimensions and a schematic representation for identification purposes.

TGS/TGX cabs are differentiated by their width. TGS/TGX chassis are supplied with the following cab variants:

Table 02-III: TGS cabs

Designation	Dimensions*			
Name	Technical designation	Length	Width	Height (from Cab-0)
M	Left-hand drive vehicle:F99L17S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R17S	1.880	2.240	1737
L	Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L34S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R34S	2.280	2.240	1737
LX	Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L39S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R39S	2.280	2.240	2035

*) Cab dimensions without added on parts such as wings, skirts, mirrors, spoiler, etc.

Table 03-III: TGX cabs

Designation	Dimensions*			
Name	Technical designation	Length	Width	Height (from Cab-0)
XL	Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L44S Right-hand drive vehicle:F99R44S	2.280	2.440	1737
XLX	Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L49S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R49S	2.280	2.440	2035
XXL	Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L45S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R45S	2.280	2.440	2260

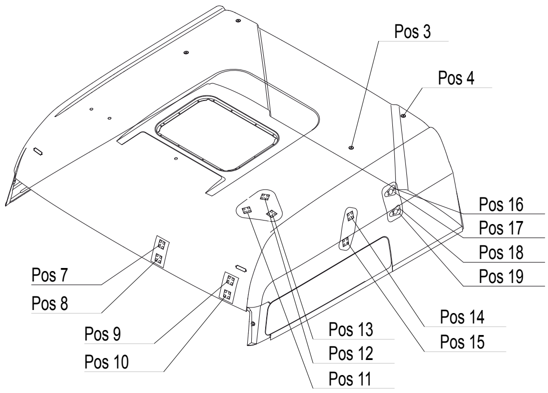
*) Cab dimensions without added on parts such as wings, skirts, mirrors, spoiler, etc.

3.3 Spoilers, roof extensions, roofwalk

The retrofitting of a roof spoiler or aero package available ex works is possible. Genuine MAN spoilers and aerodynamics kits for retrofitting can be obtained from the Spare-parts Service. Drawings can be found in MANTED under "Cabs". Only the proper attachment points may be used when retrofitting components to the cab roof.

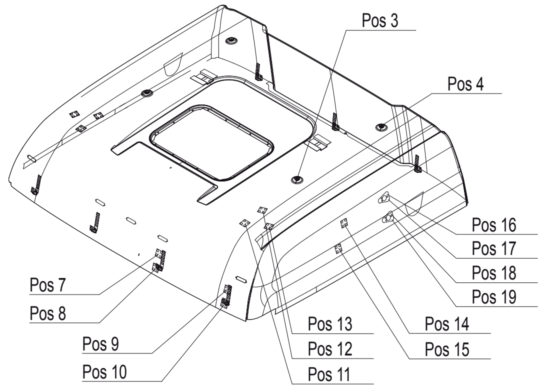
Fastenings on cab roofs

Fig. 25-III: XXL cab (L/R45)



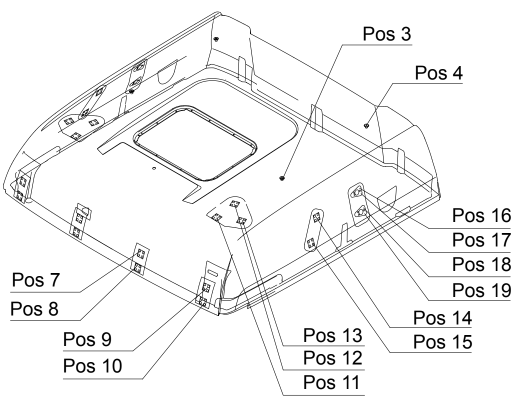
T_629_000004_0001_G

Fig. 26-III: XLX cab (L/R49)



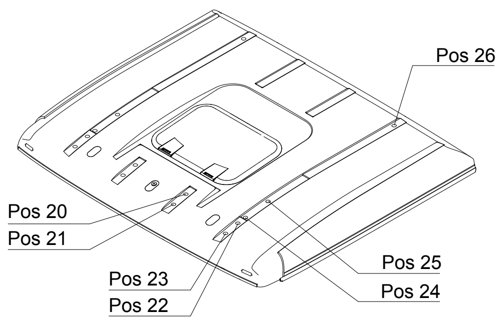
T_629_000005_0001_G

Fig. 27-III: LX cab (L/R39)



T_629_000001_0001_G

Fig. 28-III: XL, L and M cab (L/R 44, 34, 17)



T_629_000002_0001_G

Table 04-III: Attachment points on cab roofs

	Position	Bolt / drill hole	Tightening torque
Roof spoiler with plastic high roof	3/3a 4/4a	M8	20 Nm
Roof spoiler with steel roof	24/24a 25/25a 26/26a	M8	20 Nm
Sunblind with steel roof	20/20a 21/21a 22/22a 23/23a	M8	20 Nm
Sun blind with plastic high roof	7/7a 8/8a 9/9a 10/10a	St 6,3 / Ø 5,5 mm	10 Nm
Air horn with plastic high roof	14/14a 15/15a 16/16a 17/17a 18/18a 19/19a	St 6,3 / Ø 5,5 mm	10 Nm
Rotating beacons with plastic high roof	11/11a 12/12a 13/13a	St 6,3 / Ø 5,5 mm	10 Nm

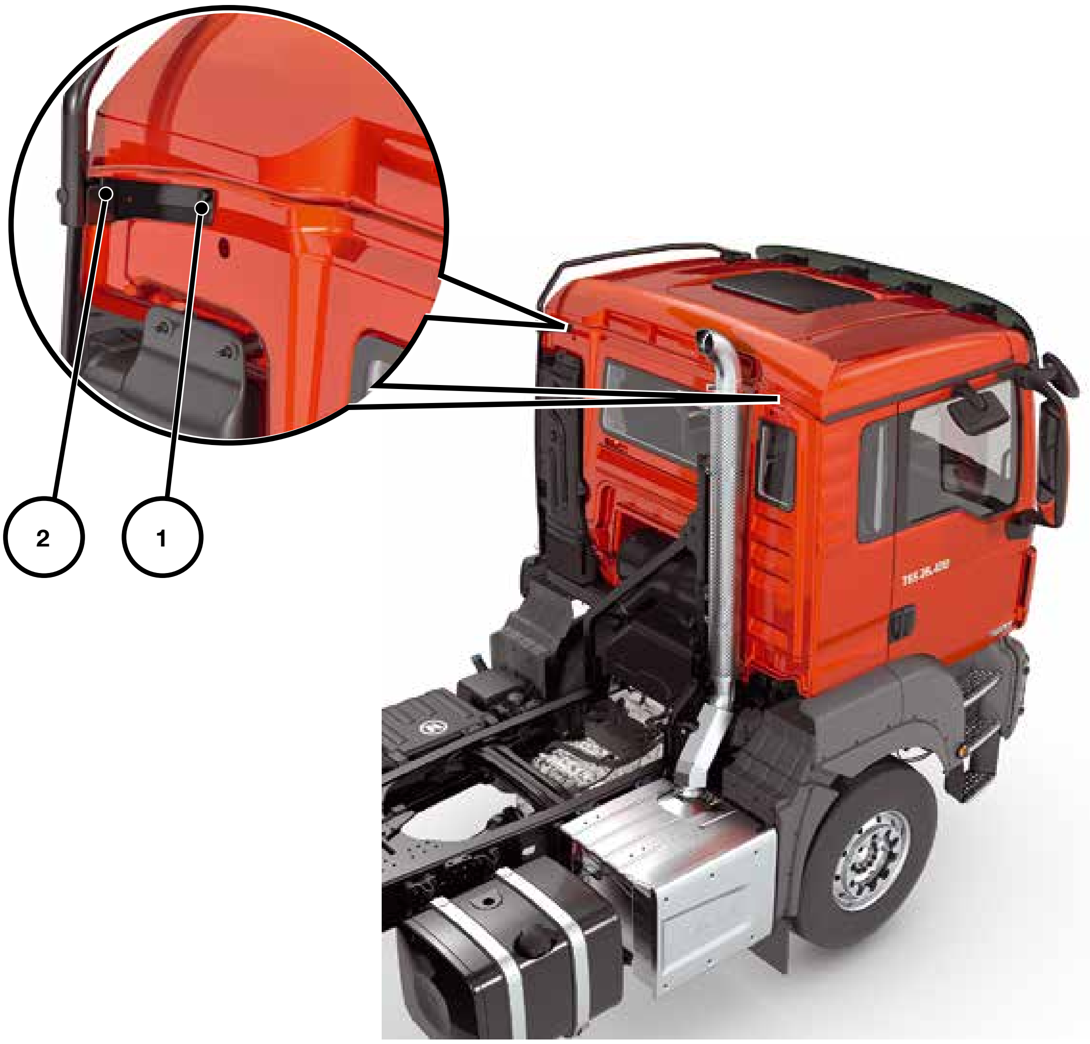
- Drilling designation “a” is symmetric with y = 0
- Maximum load per bolt: 7.49 -12 t
- Maximum roof load: 30 kg
- Bolted connections over 3 offset points (not in one line)
- Center of gravity of roof extensions max. 200 mm above mounting level
- Drill holes in the plastic raised roof (laminated-in plates):
  - Drilling axis parallel to the surface
  - Drilling at an angle of ± 2 mm to the surface
  - Drilling depth 10 mm + 2 mm

Information on additional attachment for roofwalk

Table 05-III: Additional attachment for roofwalk

	Position	Bolt / drill hole	Tightening torque
Roofwalk on rear wall (all cabs)	1/1a 2/2a	M8 / Ø 11,2 mm	20 Nm

Fig. 29-III: Additional fastener for roofwalk



T_629_000008_0002_G

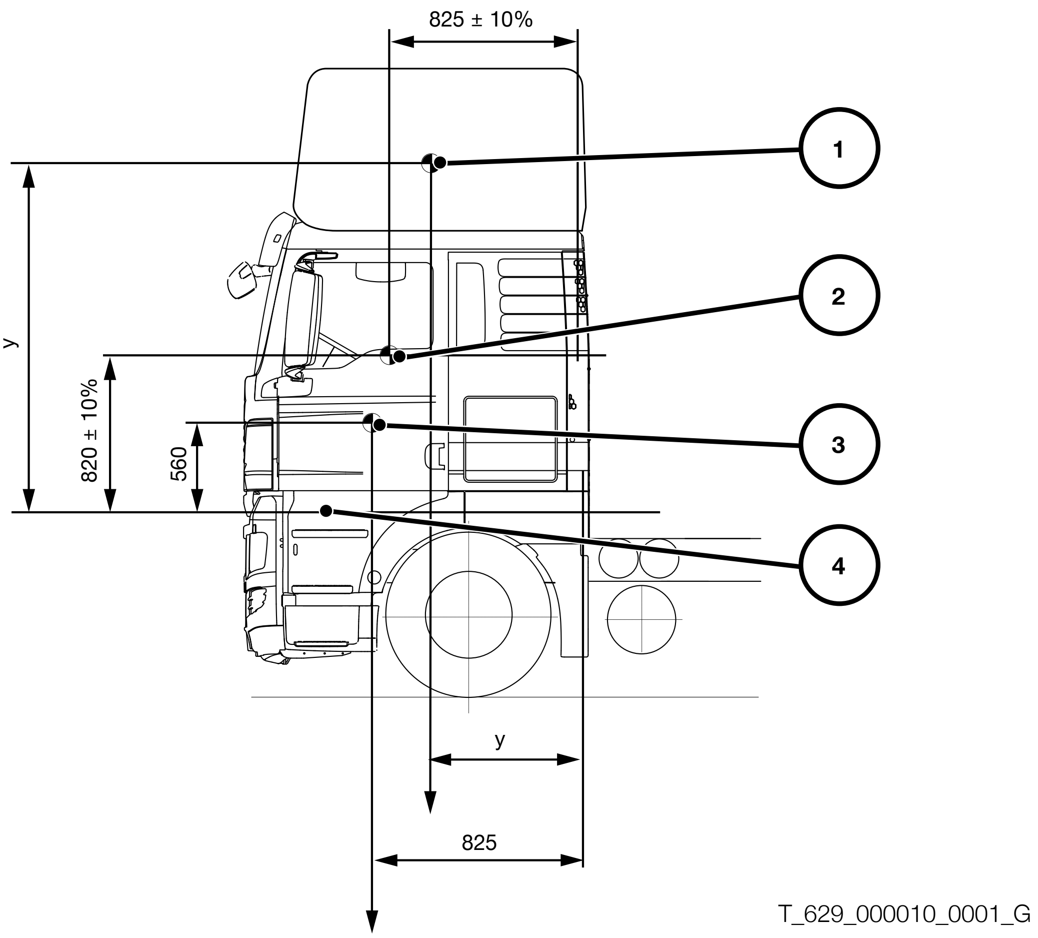
- Drilling designation “a” is symmetric with y = 0
- A support for the roofwalk must be fitted to the rear wall
- All 4 attachment points 1/1a, 2/2a must be used
- The roofwalk must never be installed ahead of the rear edge of the roof hatch.
- Maximum weight of roofwalk: 30 kg
- Maximum load on roofwalk: 100 kg

3.4 Roof sleeper cabs

Roof sleeper cabs (Topsleepers) can be fitted when the following prerequisites are met:

- Body approval must be obtained from MAN. This is the responsibility of the manufacturer of the roof sleeper cab and not of the workshop fitting it (see Chapter III, Section 2.3.6).
- The manufacturer of the roof sleeper cab is responsible for compliance with regulations (in particular safety regulations, e.g. trade association guidelines), regulations and laws (e.g. GGVS/ADR).
- A suitable method of preventing the cab from closing by itself when it is tilted must be installed (e.g. by fitting a securing device).
- If the tilting process differs from that for the standard MAN cab, a simple but comprehensive operating manual must be drawn up.
- The antennas fitted on original MAN cab roofs must be properly relocated. This is intended to ensure good quality reception and transmission of electromagnetic radiation in accordance with the EMC Directive. Extension of the antenna cable is not permitted.
- When the cab has been fitted, the dimensions stated for the resulting cab center of gravity must be adhered to and verified (see Fig. 30-III)
- The maximum weights listed in Table 06-III must be adhered to.
- Fitting a roof sleeper cab is permitted only when the cab mount is air-sprung.

Fig. 30-III: Cab center of gravity with top sleeper



1) Topsleeper center of gravity
2) Resulting center of gravity
3) Cab center of gravity
4) Cab floor

Table 06-III: Roof sleeper cab, maximum weights of bodies/fittings

Cab designation	Technical code: Left-hand drive vehicle	Technical code: Right-hand drive vehicle	Requirements	Max. mass of roof sleeper cab with equipment
M	F99 L17 S	F99 R17 S	Air-sprung cab mount	130 kg
L	F99 L34 S	F99 R34 S		180 kg
XL	F99 L44 S	F99 R44 S		200 kg
LX	F99 L39 S	F99 R39 S	Cabs with high roof ex works, no modification permitted	
XLX	F99 L49 S	F99 R49 S		
XXL	F99 L45 S	F99 R45 S		

3.5 Fastening of warning plates to the front flap

To avoid damage to the front flap while fastening the warning plates, the procedure must comply with Service Information (SI 288606). This is available from MAN workshops.

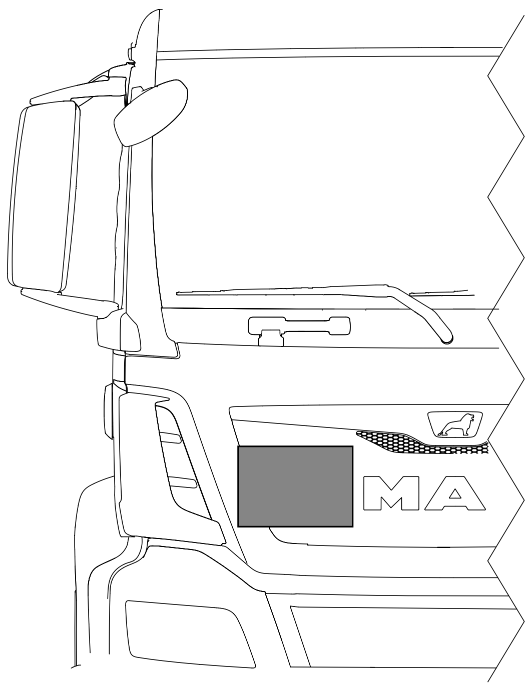
The location for fastening warning plates to the front cover is defined and released by MAN.

The following apply:

- The statutorily permitted vehicle width must not be exceeded.
- The supply of air to the radiator/engine must not be impaired.
- The connection must be adequately strong.
- Generally applicable guidelines concerning the transport of hazardous goods must be observed.

The description of the assembly procedure together with the necessary distances/clearances and the standard parts to be used can be found in Service Information (SI 288606).

Fig. 31-III: Schematic representation of the defined position for warning plate



T_639_000001_0001_G

4.0 Chassis frame

4.1 General

The frame forms the basis of the chassis. It accommodates the axles, the driveline with engine, gearbox and transfer case and carries the cab and bodywork. Modifications to the chassis frame must be carried out in accordance with the specifications set down in Chapter III, Section 2.3.

4.2 Frame materials

Modifications to the frame side members and cross members of the chassis are permitted only when the original frame material is used.

Table 07-III: Steel materials for MAN chassis frames

Material no.	Old material designation	Old standard	$\sigma_{0,2}$ N/mm^2	σ_B N/mm^2	New material designation	New standard	Profile nos.
1.0980	QStE420TM	SEW 092	≥ 420	480-620	S420MC	DIN EN 10149-2	5, 33, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41, 42
1.0984	QStE500TM	SEW 092	≥ 500	550-700	S500MC	DIN EN 10149-2	31, 32, 34, 40, 46
			500	560-700	LNE500	NBR 6656:2008	43, 45

The assignment of model-range-specific frame profiles (profile numbers), their material parameters and the model-related allocation of frame profiles can be found in Chapter III, Section 4.3.

4.3 Frame profiles

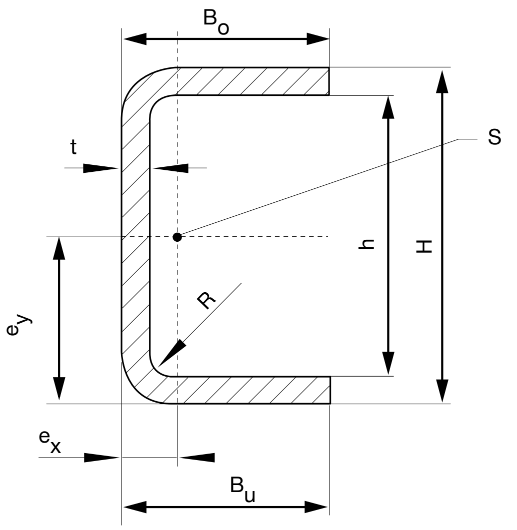
Precise data on the standard model-related allocation of frame side members are available via www.manted.de (registration required).

The frame side member profile that is being used is described in up-to-date and binding form by:

- the chassis drawing
- the technical data sheet for the corresponding vehicle, see “Chassis” on www.manted.de.

The following tables show the series-specific profile data and type classification for the frame side members.

Fig. 32-III: Profile data of frame side members



T_411_000001_0001_G

S Surface center of gravity

Table 08-III: Profile data for frame side members TGS/TGX

No	H	h	B_o	B_u	t	R	G	$\sigma_{0,2}$	σ_B	A	e_x	e_y	I_x	W_{x1}	W_{x2}	I_y	W_{y1}	W_{y2}
	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	kg/m	N/mm^2	N/mm^2	mm^2	mm	mm	cm^4	cm^3	cm^3	cm^4	cm^3	cm^3
31	270	254	85	85	8	10	26	500	550..700	3296	20	135	3255	241	241	201	101	31
32	270	251	85	85	9,5	10	30	500	550..700	3879	21	135	3779	280	280	232	110	36
33	334	314	85	85	10	10	37	420	480..620	4711	19	167	6691	401	401	257	135	39
34	270	256	85	85	6,8	10	22	500	550..700	2821	19	135	2816	209	209	174	92	26
43[1)]	270	254	85	85	8	10	26	500	560..700	3296	20	135	3255	241	241	201	101	31
45	270	251	85	85	9,5	10	30	500	560..700	3879	21	135	3779	280	280	232	110	36

1) 500 as per Brazilian standard NBR 6656:2008, for TGX in Latin America (last updated 03 2010: CKD models 28X.88X).

5.0 Frame attachments

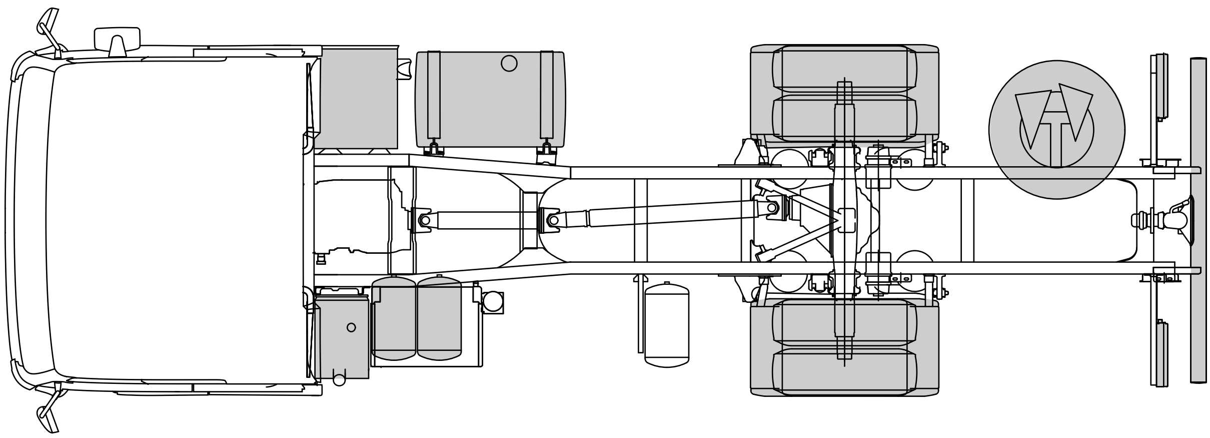
5.1 General

Frame attachments are parts whose attachment points are located on the frame.

These include, for example:

- Fuel and AdBlue tank
- Side underride protection
- Underride protection
- Battery box
- Spare wheel
- Exhaust silencer
- Mudguard

Fig. 33-III: Example for frame attachments



T_996_000018_0001_G

5.2 Front underride protection

Motor vehicles used for the transport of goods that have at least four wheels and a maximum permissible mass of over 3.5 t must be fitted with front underride protection that is approved in accordance with Directive 2000/40/EC.

This shall not apply to:

- Offroad vehicles
- vehicles whose application is not compatible with the regulations for front underride protection.

The following criteria must be met in order to obtain registration as an off-road vehicle:

- At least 50% of the wheels are driven.
- A differential lock or ASR is fitted.
- Gradeability of the individual vehicle ≥ 25%
- Plus at least four of the following requirements:
    - Approach angle ≥ 25°
    - Departure angle ≥ 25°
    - Ramp angle ≥ 25°
    - Ground clearance beneath the front axles is at least 250 mm.
    - Ground clearance beneath the rear axles is at least 250 mm.
    - Ground clearance between the axles is at least 300 mm.

Vehicles that do not meet the criteria for an off-road vehicle are fitted with FUP that complies with the requirements of Directive 2000/40/EC.

All-wheel-drive vehicles (wheel configurations e.g. 4x4, 6x4-4, 6x6, 8x6 and 8x8) and vehicles that meet the off-road criteria can be registered as off-road vehicles and are therefore not fitted with front underride protection at the factory.

If it is not possible to locate bodies or attachments (e.g. outriggers, tool boxes) such that the above stated criteria are not violated then the vehicle must be retrofitted with front underride protection, which is available from the MAN spare parts organisation.

Responsibility for this lies with the body builder. MAN is not liable for any costs arising from the retrofitting of front underride protection to vehicles that were delivered as off-road vehicles.

Important notice
Underride protection equipment may not be modified (e.g. by welding, drilling or modification of brackets). Non-compliance voids type approval.

5.3 Side underride protection

“Lateral protection device(s) (are) designed to offer effective protection to unprotected road users against the risk of falling under the sides of the vehicle and atng caught under the wheels” (excerpt from ECE-R73). Trucks, tractor units and their trailers with a permissible gross weight of > 3.5 t must be fitted with side underride protection.

Exceptions applicable to the truck sector are as follows:

- Semitrailer tractor units (not semitrailers)
- Vehicles built for special purposes that are incompatible with the fitting of side underride protection.

The following apply in Germany:

- The respective national approval authority can be applied to for certificates of exemption to cover transfer trips of chassis.
- In this connection, “special vehicles” mainly means vehicles with side tipper. This only applies to vehicles with side tippers and a body inside length of less than 7,500 mm. Neither vehicles for combined transport nor off-road vehicles are exempt from the mandatory requirement for fitting side underride protection.

The corresponding national regulations must be observed when determining whether or not side underride protection has to be fitted.

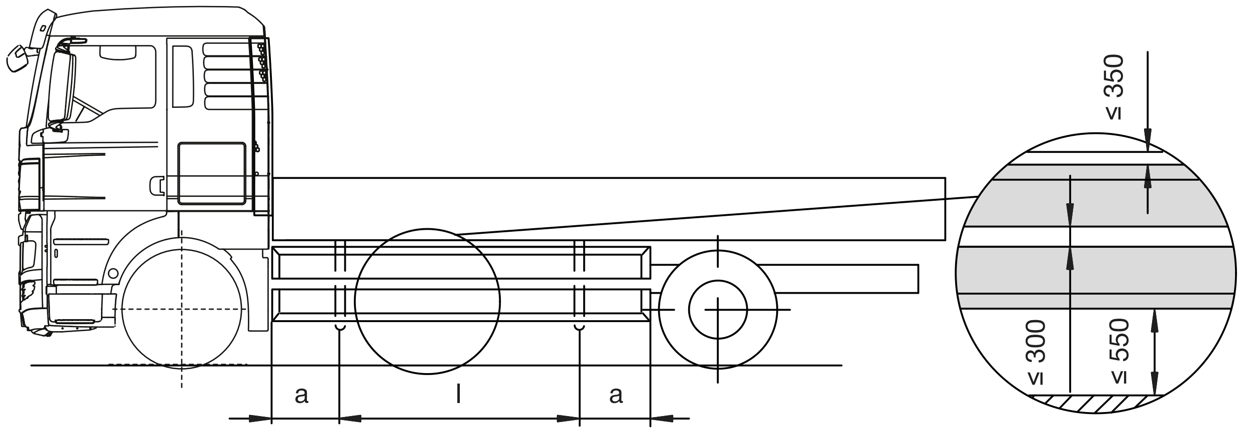
Side underride protection for chassis can be delivered ex-works. Body builders who retrofit side underride protection can procure MAN profiles, profile supports and components for assembly from the Spare-parts Service.

Important notice
The company installing or modifying side underride protection is responsible for compliance with national regulations (regulated by Directive ECE-R73 01, in Germany by §32c StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regulations)).

It is not permissible to attach brake, air or hydraulic pipes to side underride protection. There may be no sharp edges or burrs; the rounding-off radius for all parts cut to size by the body builder must be at least 2.5 mm; Rounded bolts and rivets may project by a maximum of 10 mm. If the vehicle is fitted with different tyres or different springs, the height of the SUP must be checked and, if necessary, corrected. If there are several components in a row (battery box, tool box) that serve as a form of SUP, a maximum distance of 25 mm is permissible but the rear component may not project laterally outwards above the front one.

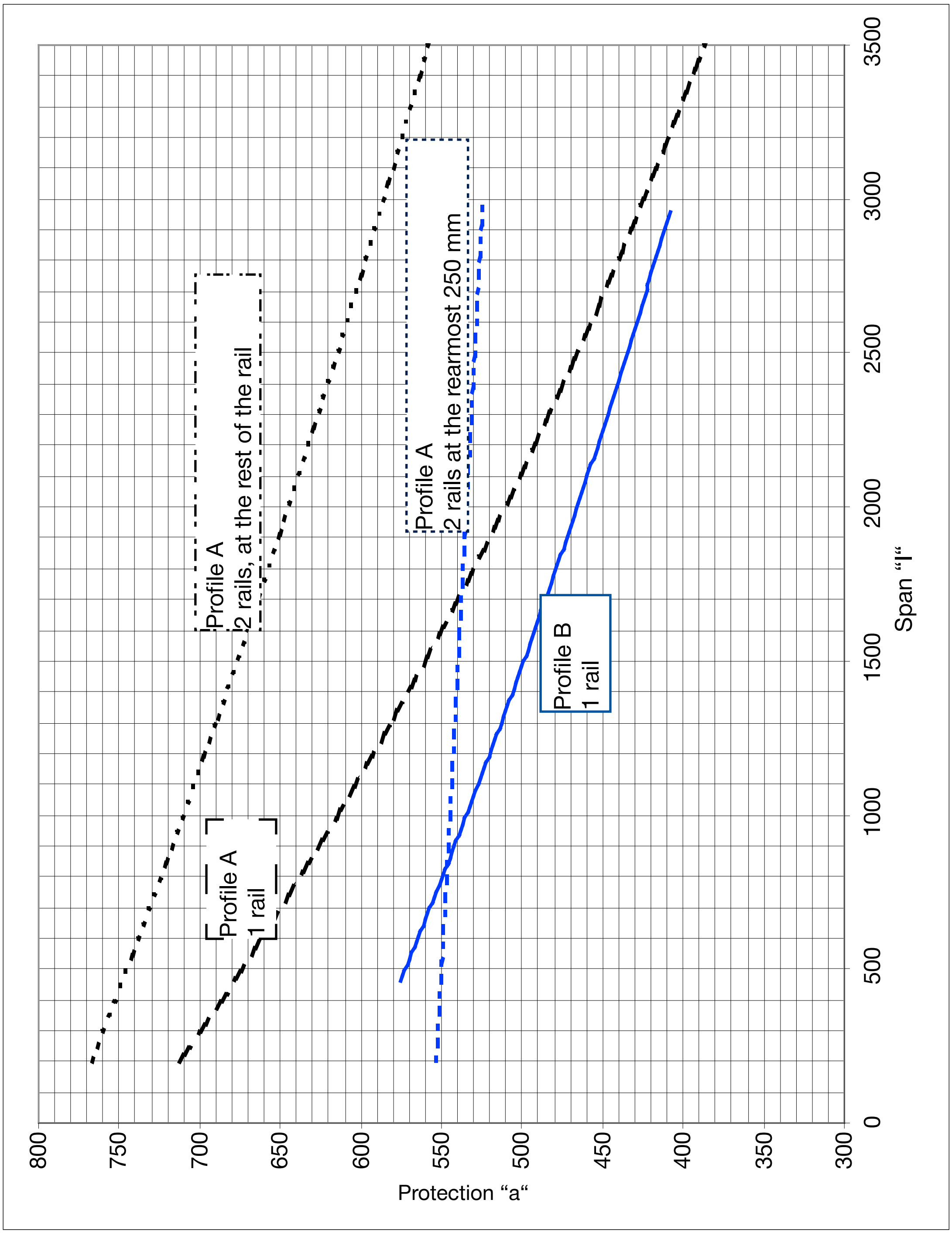
If it is necessary for the body builder to modify MAN's original profile support for the SUP, then the relationship between the span "l" and projection "a" shall apply as illustrated in the following diagram (Fig. 35-III). If, according to expert opinion, the permitted dimensions are exceeded then the body builder must arrange for strength testing to be carried out. The illustrations are only intended to clarify the dimensions for which the MAN side underride protection meets strength requirements.

Fig. 34-III: Side underride protection on the TGS/TGX



T_429_000001_0001_G

Fig. 35-III: **Graph for ascertaining span and projection for the TGS/TGX**



T_429_000004_0001_D

Both profiles (A and B) are used ex works for TGS/TGX vehicles in the exhaust-emission class Euro 6 and lower.

The profiles are shown in Fig. 36-III and Fig. 37-III below.

Fig. 36-III: Version A

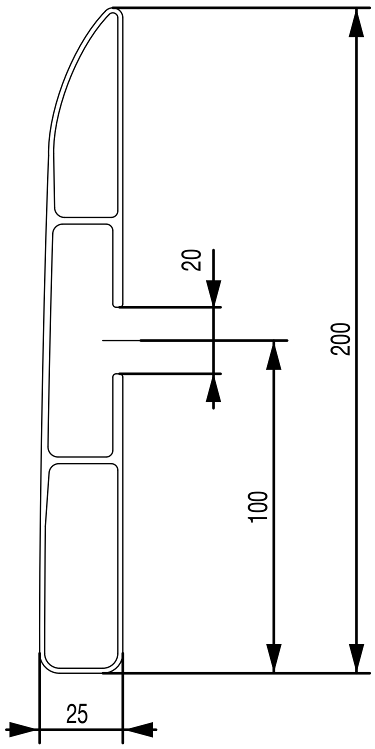
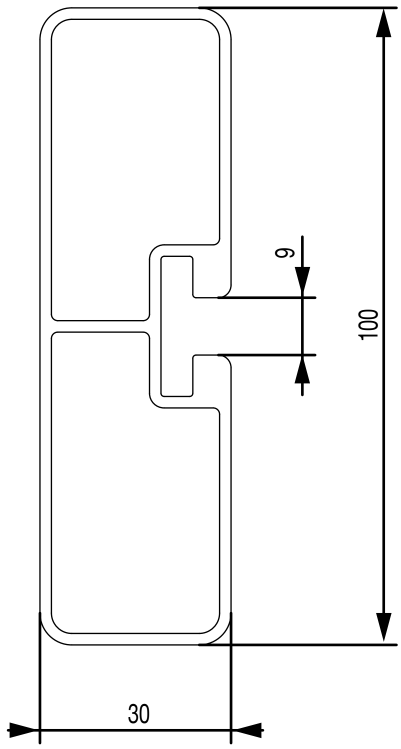


Fig. 37-III: Version B



T_429_000005_0001_G

5.4 Rear underride protection

Chassis of the TGS and TGX model ranges are delivered ex works with different variants of MAN's rear underride protection. The respective variant is controlled by MAN in dependence on the parameters wheel configuration, build height, suspension type and wheelbase in combination with the factory-fitted body (swap body fitting), see Table 09-III. MAN underride protection devices are approved in accordance with Directive 70/221/EEC as last amended by 2006/20/EU.

Table 09-III: Underride protection variants (for an explanation of the values see Fig. 38-III)

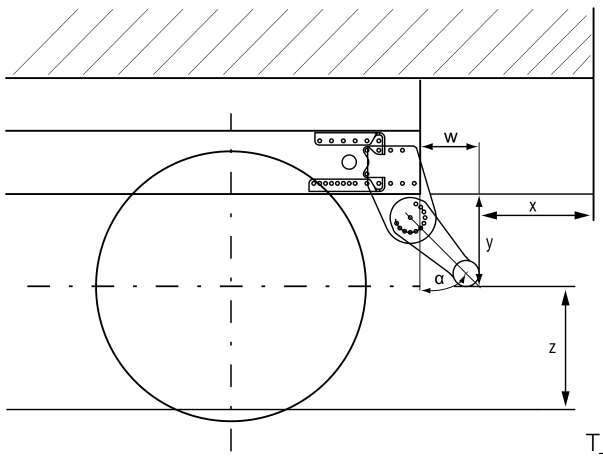
Item no. fitting	Version	w	X	Y	Z*	α
81.41660-8176	C2WB	191 mm	max. 348 mm	340 mm	max. 550 mm	56,3°
81.41660-8177	C1	199 mm	max. 332 mm	432 mm	max. 550 mm	33,8°
81.41660-8178	C2	291 mm	max. 348 mm	340 mm	max. 550 mm	56,3°
81.41660-8180	B1	249 mm	max. 318 mm	507 mm	max. 550 mm	33,8°
81.41660-8181	B2	366 mm	max. 339 mm	391 mm	max. 550 mm	56,3°
81.41660-8183	A1	276 mm	max. 305 mm	549 mm	max. 550 mm	33,8°
81.41660-8184	A2	407 mm	max. 330 mm	418 mm	max. 550 mm	56,3°
81.41660-8213	A1	276 mm	max. 305 mm	549 mm	max. 550 mm	33,8°
81.41660-8214	B1	249 mm	max. 318 mm	507 mm	max. 550 mm	33,8°
81.41660-8215	D	442 mm	max. 321 mm	481 mm	max. 550 mm	52,8°

* maximum permissible distance as per Directive 70/221/EEC

Important notice

The bodybuilder/converter must ensure and verify that the regulations have been adhered to because the dimensions are dependent upon the superstructure and can only be determined once the vehicle including the superstructure has been fully completed.

Fig. 38-III: Dimensional specifications for underride protection



The following dimensions must be observed.

w = horizontal distance from frame end to rear edge of underride protection
y = vertical distance from frame lower edge to lower edge of underride protection
x = horizontal distance from lower edge of underride protection to read edge of body
z = vertical distance from lower edge of underride protection to the road surface for an unladen vehicle
α = angle α depends upon the requirements for dimensions w and y.

Depending upon the chassis variant, a folding underride guard from Ringfeder VBG is available as optional equipment for vehicles fitted with an MAN low coupling system. Alternatively, folding underride protection for construction site vehicles is available from Meiller.

Important notice

Underride-protection systems may never be modified (e.g. by welding or modifying the tube or angle α) because this will invalidate certification/type approval. This also applies to vehicles with a factory-fitted body!

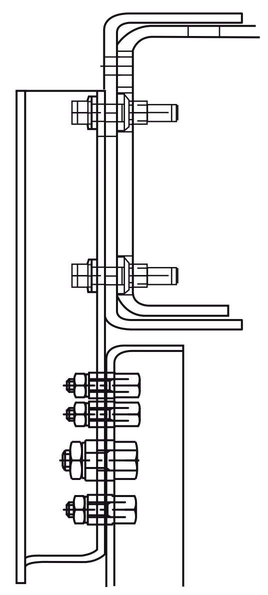
If rear underride protection is retrofitted or refitted, e.g. after shortening the frame, the bodybuilder/modifier is responsible for fitting it in accordance with the regulations.

The following points must be observed:

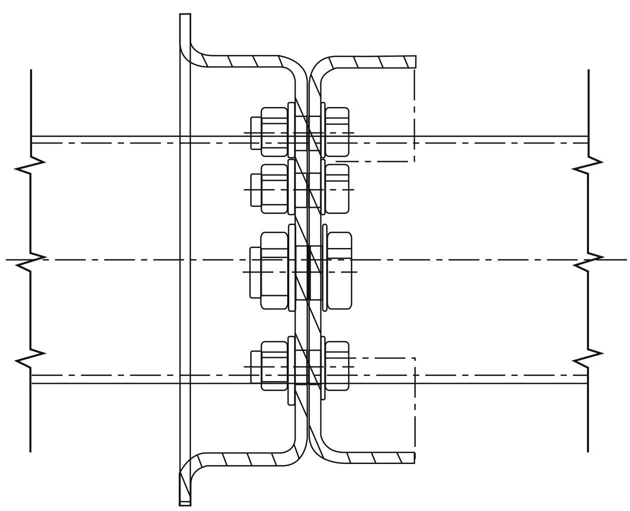
- For the bolted connections between the bracket and frame it is imperative that MAN Verbus-Ripp bolts with shaft are used (MAN 06.02813-4915, M14 x 1.5 10.9), tightening torque 200 Nm on the nut side (see Fig. 39-III).
- The bolts of the lower connection of the underride protection must be tightened with a torque of 330 Nm. (See Fig. 40-III.)
- Angle α of the underride protection may not be modified at a later time, otherwise registration becomes void.
- Any modifications to underride protection must be certified by an officially approved inspector (e.g. an officially accredited expert in Germany).

Fig. 39-III: Bolted connection of underride protection

Fig. 40-III: Lower bolted connection, underride protection bracket



a



b

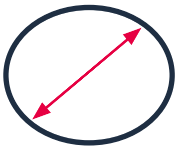
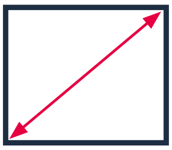
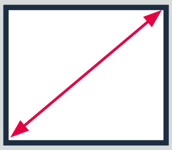
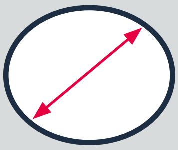
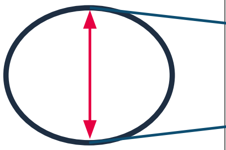
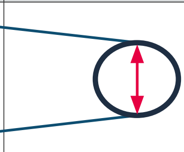
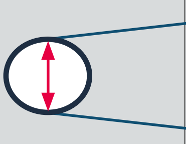
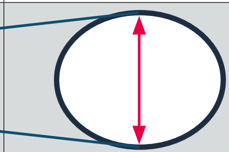
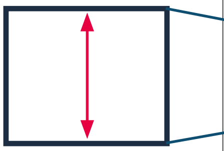
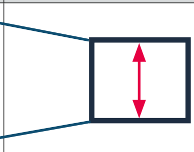
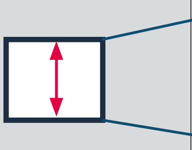
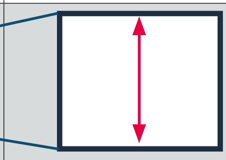
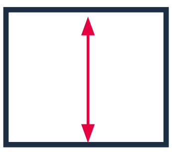
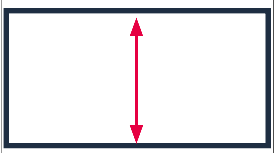
T_429_000008_0001_G

5.5 Fuel tanks

As far as space permits, fuel tanks can be moved and auxiliary ones installed. With large volumes, ensure an equal distribution of load on the wheels, as far as possible (see Chapter III-Chassis Section 2.2.7 Wheel load difference).

If the tank shape has changed, the tank pick-up must be replaced and in certain cases the vehicle must be parameterised again by a MAN service outlet.

The following overview applies:

OLD Tank profile	NEW Tank profile	Exchange tank pick-up necessary?	Parametrisation necessary	Note
		Yes	Yes	change of cross section
		Yes	Yes	change of cross section
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		No	No	none tank filling height

For special fuel tank shapes, contact the manufacturer of the fuel tank.

If larger or auxiliary fuel tanks are fitted after delivery from the factory, then the additional tank volume will be subject to a mineral oil/fuel/energy tax by the territory into which it is being imported.

This regulation applies to modifications carried out before the vehicle was registered in the customer’s name (e.g. at the body builder) and to retrofits carried out once the vehicle has already been registered in the end customer’s name. Customers must be informed of this issue.

Fuel can only be carried tax-free in “main tanks” (and in reserve tanks up to a total volume of 20 litres). Main tanks are the fuel tanks with which the vehicle was delivered, not those which were fitted afterwards by a body builder or workshop, for example.

According to the ADR directive, the maximum permissible total volume may not exceed 1500 l.
Country-specific ADR directives must be observed.

Country-specific guidelines must be observed in the event of modifications.

The description of the procedure for the first fuelling of twin or multi-tank systems can be found in the applicable vehicle operating instructions or service information (SI 545200).

Information on use in mining:

Corrosion damage can occur on vehicles with aluminium fuel tanks which are used in coal mining or for coal transport.

Here, contact corrosion occurs between the elements aluminium and carbon.

MAN recommends selecting steel tanks when configuring vehicles for coal mining applications.
If no steel tanks are available in the desired size, then the tank system must be checked regularly.
Another option is to have the fuel tank professionally painted; regular checks are still recommended, however.

5.5.1 Mounting fuel tanks

Various fuel tank versions are offered ex works for the different series.

The following points must be observed when fuel tanks are mounted on the frame:

- MAN recommends using original MAN fuel tanks, tank supports and fixing elements. These can be obtained from the MAN Spare Parts Service.
- The weight of the tank should be borne equally by the tank supports.
- If possible, tank supports are to be mounted on the chassis frame close to cross members.
- Ensure that the attachment points for the tank support in the chassis frame have the greatest possible vertical spacing.
- For strength and stability reasons, clamping straps must be placed over the baffles of the fuel tank.
- The distance from the centre of the tank support to the centre of the baffle must not exceed 200 mm for tank volumes of up to 400 l. The distance from the centre of the tank support to the centre of the baffle for greater volumes (> 400 l) must not exceed 150 mm.
- Individual fuel tanks of up to 600 l are fixed to the vehicle frame by two tank supports and clamping straps. Depending on the application, however, three tank supports may already be required.
- For 600 l and larger, fuel tanks are fixed to the vehicle frame by three tank supports and clamping straps.
- The fuel tanks are fixed to the vehicle frame by tank support brackets. Between the tank supports and tank shell and between the clamping straps and tank shell, underlays must be added in accordance with MAN standards M3306-2 and M3306-1 respectively in order to ensure even, slip-free transmission of force from the clamping straps and tank supports to the tank shell. Absolutely no deformation of the fuel tank may be allowed to occur.

Body builders can obtain the mentioned MAN works standards via www.ptd.man.eu
(registration required).

5.5.2 Modifications to fuel lines

Environmental note

Collect any remaining fuel that emerges with a suitable container.

Country-specific disposal provisions must be observed.

Important notice

The ingress of dirt into fuel lines must be prevented at all costs! A risk of damage to the fuel system exists.

Please note the stipulations in the repair manuals of MAN Truck & Bus AG on the MAN After Sales Portal (ASP*): www.asp.mantruckandbus.com. Registration is required.

If fuel tanks have to be moved during assembly or conversion work, then the fuel lines must be adapted to the new conditions.

To ensure that lines are laid correctly, the standards and the specifications in the installation drawings defining the lines and their fixing elements must always be observed.

The lines must laid in accordance with the following MAN standards:

Table 10-III: MAN standards

PA lines	M 3319 M 3230-1 MAN 318 SAE J 2260
Steel pipes	M 3005-1 M 3360 M 3512 DIN ISO 8535-1
Hose lines	M 3114 M 3243 MAN 327 DIN 73379

MAN works standards can be purchased via the MAN portal for technical documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).

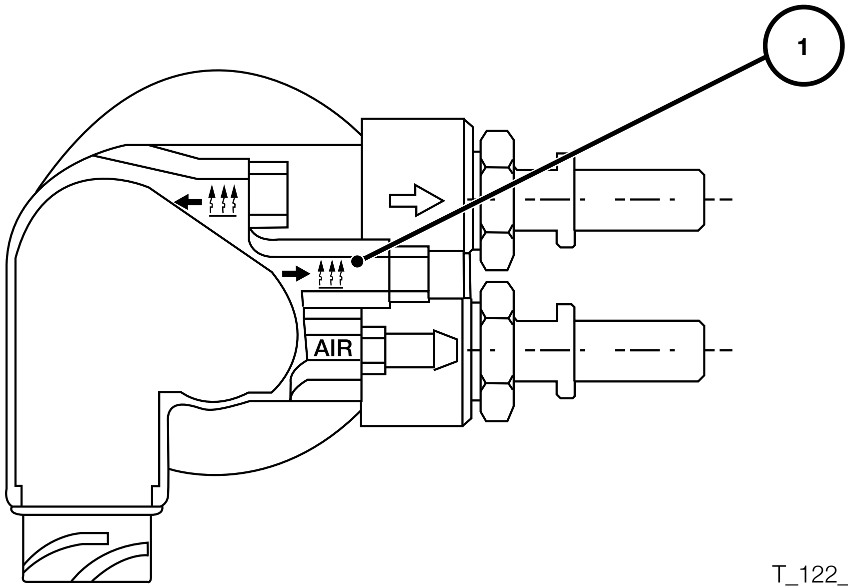
As a rule, the following requirements must be met when modifications are made to fuel lines:

Table 11-III: Material specifications

	Fuel lines for engine	Fuel lines for auxiliary heaters
Material	according to DIN73378	
Diameter	12x1,5	Suction line 4x1 Pressure line 4x1.25
Plug/Connector	81.98181-6404	Hose M3243-3.5X3-P1 (50 mm or 85 mm long) Hose clamp 81.97440-0248
	51.98181-0006	
	81.12510-0029	
	81.98181-6418	
Attachment	using cable tie 81.97401-0631 or similar	
Distance between individual attachment points	max. 500 mm	
Lay in accordance with	M3317	

- When the tank is relocated, it must be ensured that the tank ventilation is protected against water and kept free of dust. The tank ventilation hose must not be shortened.
- Fuel tapping is permitted only at the tank supply unit, see Pos. 1, Fig. 41-III.

Fig. 41-III: Tank supply unit



T_122_000002_0001_G

1) Fuel tapping at tank supply unit

The connection of an addition diesel-driven heater unit to the non-MAN fuel tap is only possible in the following circumstances:

- Only an auxiliary heater (water or air) has been installed ex works
- The additional heater unit has a fuel consumption of a maximum of 0.6 L/h
- The connection complies with the condition recorded ex works for two additional auxiliary heaters. The relevant documentation of the line schematics can be requested from MAN (for address see “Publisher”).
- Ventilation of fuel line after connection of the additional heater unitMAN genuine spare parts are available via the MAN service outlet.

If the position of the tank is changed, then the following guidelines must be observed:

Table 12-III: Guidelines

Change in tank position	Subject	Specification	Note
Move tank to other side of vehicle with respect to the standard position	Line extension Line reduction	Max. permissible line extension 3000 mm Ensure laying of lines according to MAN standards	Correct laying of lines for tank ventilation must be ensured
Move tank backwards with respect to the standard position	Line extension	Max. permissible line extension 3000 mm	Correct laying of lines for tank ventilation must be ensured
Move tank forwards with respect to the standard position	Line reduction	Ensure laying of lines according to MAN standards	Correct laying of lines for tank ventilation must be ensured
Place tank higher with respect to the standard position	Height change	Max. permissible line extension 3000 mm	Lower edge of the supply unit may not be higher than the lower edge of the fuel service centre (KSC)
Place the tank higher than the fuel service centre with respect to the standard position	Height change	Written request to MAN required. (For address, see “Publisher”)	
Place tank lower with respect to the standard position < 300 mm	Height change	Ensure laying of lines according to MAN standards	Correct laying of the hose for tank ventilation must be ensured
Place tank lower with respect to the standard position > 300 mm	Height change	Written request to MAN required. (For address, see “Publisher”)	

5.6 Coupling devices

In order to operate turntable trailers, rigid drawbar trailers or semitrailer tractors, a correspondingly designed coupling device (i.e. trailer coupling and final cross member / fifth-wheel pick-up plate and fifth-wheel coupling) is necessary.

Important notice

Standardisation and legislation for the implementation of coupling devices are based on national conditions for registration, for example:

- Article 43 of the German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations (StVZO) (safety standard),
- Article 22a of the German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations (StVZO) (type approval),
- BGV D29 (accident-prevention regulations of the Trade Association for Vehicle Operators)

and the calculation of the D value.

A comprehensive description of the final cross members available from MAN, the calculation of the D value and more detailed information can be found in the separate booklet entitled “Coupling devices TG”.

5.7 Front-mounted attachments

Front mounting plates enable the fitting of front-mounted attachments, e.g. for winter or road maintenance services and front-mounted crane outriggers. However, one must differentiate between mounting plates for winter services and mounting plates for crane outriggers. There are special mounting plates and preparations for both purposes and in each case, these must be used only for the purpose for which they were intended.

Front attachments should influence the inflow to the radiator as little as possible.
It is necessary to ensure sufficient clearance between vehicle front and front attachment. Covers attached directly to the vehicle front should be avoided. However, should they be necessary, openings on the sides must also be provided in addition to openings at the front.

If the front attachment affects the inflow to the radiator, Chapter III Section 6.3.3 must also be observed.

5.7.1 Mounting plates for winter and road maintenance service

The mounting unit for front-mounted attachments consists of two components: the front mounting plate and the preparation for the front mounting plate hereinafter referred to simply as “preparation”.

Front mounting plates and preparations are available ex works for selected vehicle models.

The front mounting plate acts as a mounting facility for equipment used in winter and road maintenance service.

The preparation forms the connecting element between vehicle chassis and front mounting plate. The scope of delivery of the preparation includes the front mounting plate brackets, shackle bolts and the support. The front mounting plate bracket enables the front mounting plate to be adjusted for height when mounted on the preparation.

A DIN EN 15432-1-compliant front mounting plate can be fitted on the ex works preparation. In order to ensure interchangeability, the front mounting plate must be designed in compliance with DIN EN 15432-1.

The combination of front mounting plate and preparation available ex works complies with the requirements in accordance with DIN EN 15432-1. Where a non-MAN front mounting plate is fitted, MAN is unable to make any statements about the strength of the combination.

Requirements concerning the attachment

Front-mounted attachments are usually snowploughs. Other front-mounted attachments such as rotating road sweepers or mowers must not exceed the load that arises from a snowplough.

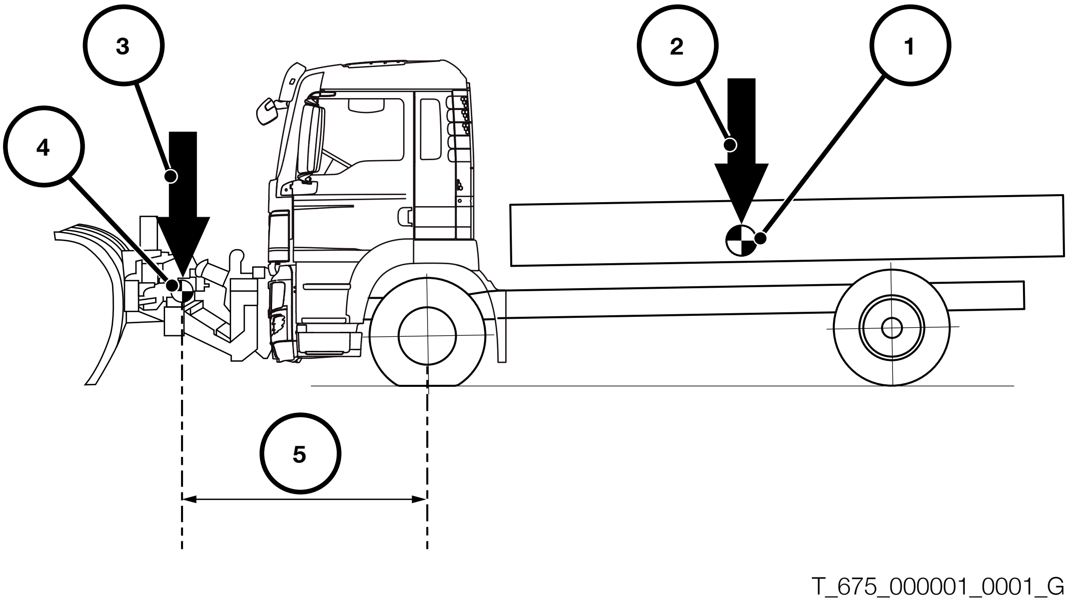
The load arising from the front-mounted attachment is restricted by the following factors:

- Permissible front-axle load
- Permissible gross weight
- Minimum rear-axle load
- Compliance with the limits of the mechanical load on the combination as per DIN EN 15432-1.

When these factors are checked, it is especially important to note that the snowplough cannot be considered separately from the overall vehicle. Various factors can result in the permissible limits being exceeded.
The spreader hopper, which is generally taken along on winter service, must be considered both when full and when empty for the purpose of calculating the design. When the hopper is emptied during the trip, the vehicle‘s center of gravity shifts towards the front axle while its gross weight drops. Bodies such as loading cranes also require axle loads to be individually examined. Due to the long lever arm and frontal weight of the snowplough, front-axle overloading in particular must be critically examined.

For information on the method of calculating axle load, please see Chapter V, Section 1.10.1.

Fig. 42-III: Example of forces and force application points



1) Vehicle‘s center of gravity
2) Weight of vehicle
3) Weight of plough
4) Attachment‘s Center of gravity
5) Lever from the frontaxle to the attachment‘s center of gravity

Compatibility between front mounting plate and the MAN preparation as well as compliance with the above-mentioned points must be checked prior to attaching.

Retrofitting

Where the preparation is retrofitted, MAN Genuine Parts must be used. Non-MAN parts are not permitted for retrofitting this attachment.

The preparation can only be retrofitted with the aid of the appropriate MAN Service outlet and MAN Customer Service.

Important notice
The clearance of the cab must not be impinged upon by front-mounted attachments. For the protection of other road users, the front mounting plate must be fitted with a protective cover when not in use. This cover is included when the MAN front mounting plate is ordered.

5.7.2 Front plate for crane support

Some types of crane require a front support. The crane support front plate available ex works allows feet to be attached in order to divert force into the vehicle frame.

To increase the frame rigidity, the frame side members with profile number 32 (see Chapter III Section 4.3 Frame profiles) and additional frame inserts must be installed in the front section.
Retrofitting the reinforcements is very complicated and is only possible on vehicles equipped with frame profile 32. Therefore, the necessary equipment should be ordered ex works.

Information

Always ask a MAN salesperson and the customer special request department (CSR) in advance whether implementation is possible for the vehicle type. To do so, a truck request must be sent via www.manted.de.

Also, the following equipment limitations must be noted:

- not available for 2-axle and 3-axle vehicles with HydroDrive (Euro 5)
- not available for vehicles with air suspension on the front axle
- not available for right-hand drive vehicles with hydraulically steered trailing axle without electric actuation (RAS steering system)

The following equipment must be included as a customer special request.

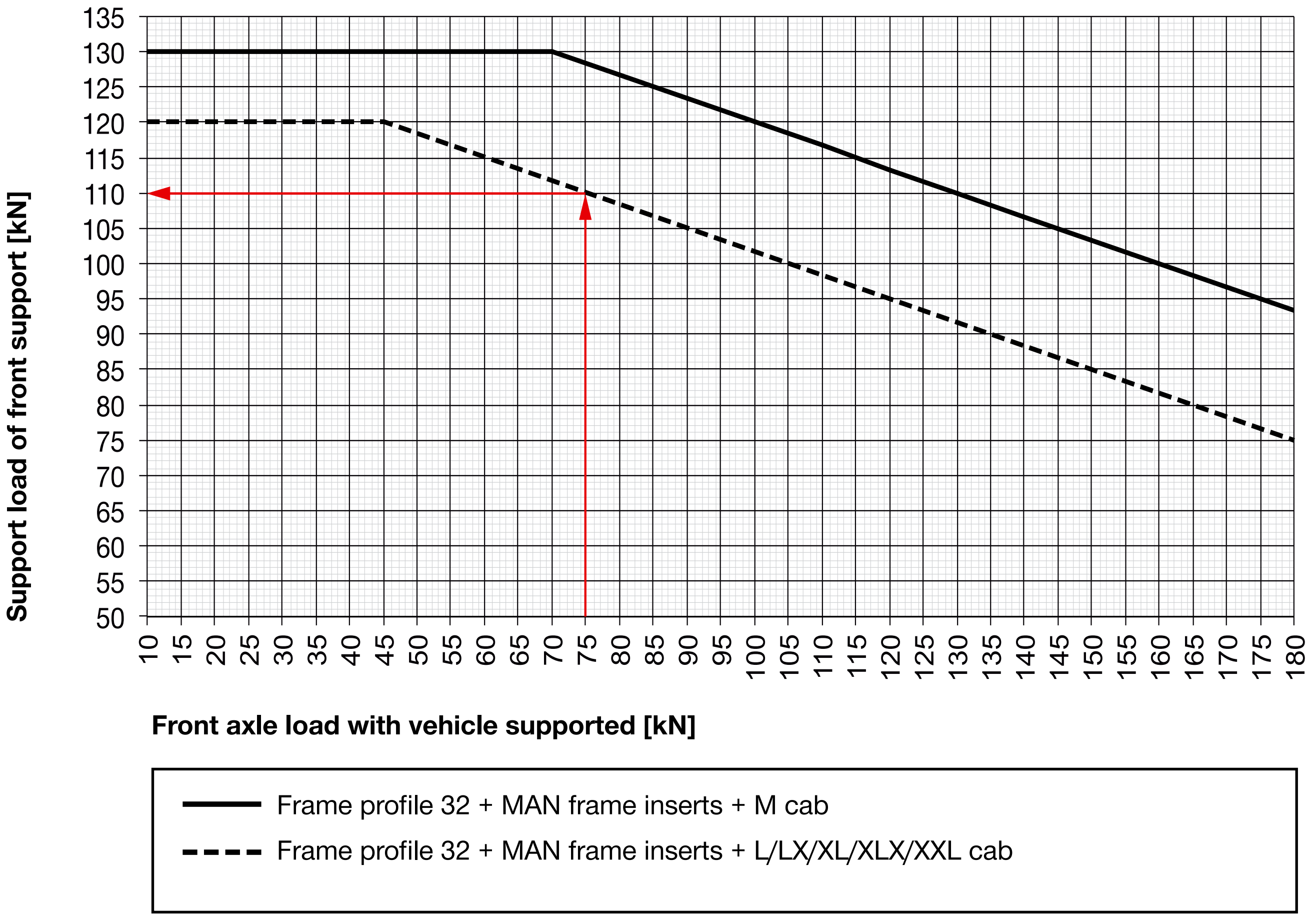
- 233EM steel bumper
- 240EQ front plate for crane support
- 240CJ 9.5 mm main frame side member and additional frame inserts at front

The following are mandatory requirements for using the front plate for crane support:

- laterally to the vehicle, the support load must be introduced symmetrically to the chassis zero point (symmetrical load on both frame side members)
- the centre of the support(s) may not be more than 100 mm in front of the front plate
- the support load may not occur in jolts
- the auxiliary frame of the body must begin directly behind the cab mount
  - with M cab approx. 330 mm from the centre of the front axle
  - with L, LX, XLX, XL, XXL cab approx. 550 mm behind the centre of the front axle
- the auxiliary frame must be firmly connected to the chassis frame

Additional support loads:
If the front axle is not completely relieved during crane operation, additional bending stress above that caused by the front support is introduced to the frame. Therefore, the diagram also shows the maximum permitted axle loads of the first front axle. If service conditions during crane operation impose larger front axle loads, the support loads are be reduced according to the diagram shown below (Fig. 43-III).

Fig. 43-III: Diagram for determining permitted support loads



T_669_000001_0001_D

Example of how to use the support load diagram:

Vehicle type:	39S
Vehicle variant description:	TGS 41.400 8x4 BL
Cab:	LX

The axle load of the first front axle of the vehicle when supported is 75 kN.
According to the diagram (Fig. 43-III), this means only 110 kN can be introduced via the front support (see the arrows in the diagram).

6.0 Engine and driveline

6.1 General

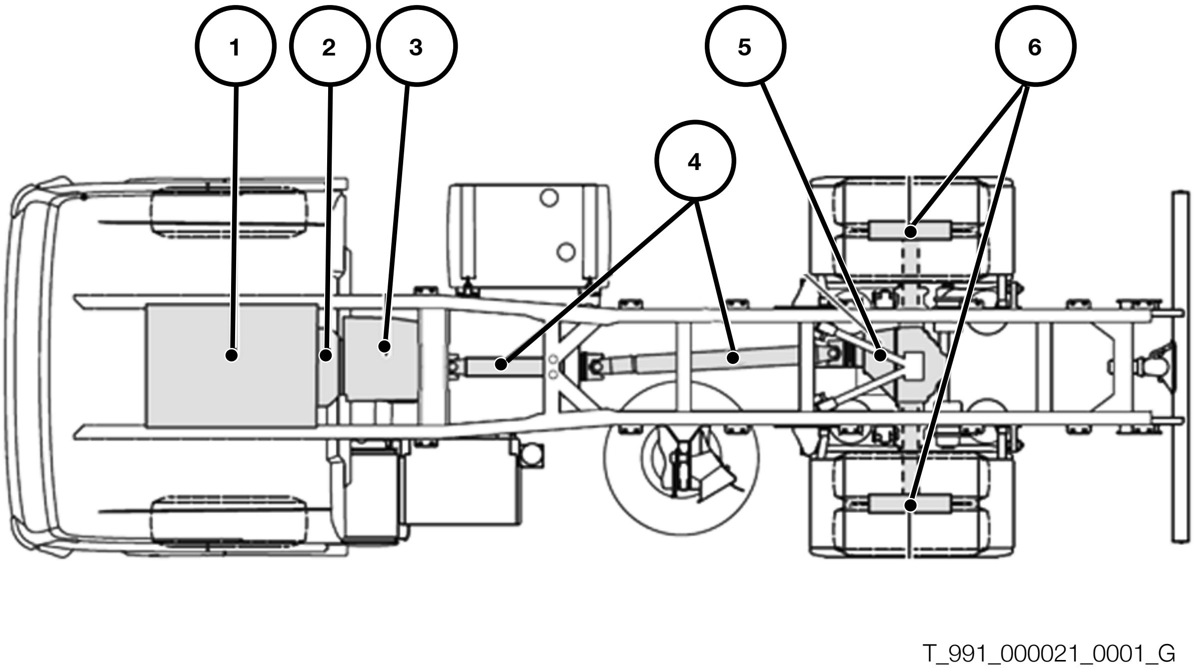
The task of the driveline is to provide the thrust and tractive forces necessary for propelling a vehicle subject to the effective driving resistances. The driveline must fulfil the following functions.

- Conversion (adjustment) of torque and engine speed
- Compensation for different speeds of inner and outer wheels when cornering
- Driving operation, forwards and in reverse
- Operation of the engine at the optimum consumption and exhaust levels of its operating map
- Driving of auxiliary consumers

Drive components are (see Fig. 44-III):

- Engine and engine components
- Gearbox and gearbox components
- Axles and axle components
- Transfer case (only on all-wheel-drive vehicles)

Fig. 44-III: Example of an MAN driveline



1) Engine
2) Clutch
3) Gearbox
4) Propshafts
5) Axle transfer case
6) Axle with planetary gear

6.2 Engine versions

MAN offers various engine versions according to series and emissions class.

In the TGS and TGX six-cylinder in-line diesel engines (R6) with

- D20 common rail
- D26 common rail
- D38 common rail

are installed.

The engines are available in emissions classes Euro II, Euro III, Euro IV, Euro V, EEV and Euro VI.

Depending on emissions class, the engines are equipped with exhaust-gas recirculation, on-board diagnosis **(Euro IV and higher)** including NO_x control (torque reduction in case of NO_x control failure) and exhaust gas aftertreatment.

The Brazilian emissions class Conama P6 is similar to Euro IV without OBD. Conama P7 is similar to Euro V with an OBD similar to the European OBD2.

The following abbreviations are used:

EEV: **E**nhanced **E**nvironmentally friendly **V**ehicle
OBD: **O**n **B**oard **D**iagnosis
EGR: **E**xhaust **G**as **R**ecirculation
PM-Cat: Particulate filter (open particulate filter; PM = **P**articulate **M**atter)
CRT: Particulate filter (closed particulate filter; CRT = **C**ontinuously **R**egenerating **T**rap
SCR: **S**elective **C**atalytic **R**eduction with “AdBlue” as the reducing agent; without exhaust gas recirculation (Euro IV, Euro V, EEV)

6.2.1 Type codes for MAN engines

Information on the engine number and the additional data on the type plate can be found via the MAN After Sales Portal or in the vehicle operating manual.

The type code for MAN engines is based on a precisely defined system. As a general principle, this classification key consists of 6 elements that serve to identify the following features:

1) Fuel type
2) Bore
3) Stroke
4) Number of cylinders
5) Turbocharging
6) Engine installation

Using the example **D2066LF8**0, the type code is explained as follows:

Table 13-III: Type code for MAN engines

Model designation	Explanation	Example
D	Fuel type	Diesel
20	Figure +100	120 mm bore
6	(Figure x10) +100	**155** mm stroke (rounded)
6	Number of cylinders	6 cylinders
L	Supercharging	with turbocharging and intercooler
F	Engine installation	Engine/vertical/forward-control
80	Model identifier	Rating/speed/approval

6.3 Engine environment

6.3.1 Modifications to the engine

Important notice
MAN does not permit any modifications to the engine or its components. Non-compliance voids type approval and warranty.

6.3.2 Modifications to the air-intake system

In general, modifications to the air-intake system are to be avoided. Various factory options are available for the TGS/TGX and body builders should check to see if these can be used. Information on availability for the corresponding vehicle can be obtained from your closest MAN sales branch.

If it is still not possible to avoid making modifications the following requirements must be met:

- The intake of air must not be inhibited in any way.
- The negative pressure in the intake branch must not be allowed to vary.
- When modifying the intake system it must be ensured that all statutory regulations relevant to noise and emissions are fulfilled.
- All regulations pertaining to the components in question issued by professional associations or similar facilities must also be fulfilled (e.g. surface temperature in the vicinity of handles/grips).
- In the case of modified intake systems, MAN cannot
    - guarantee compliance with these and other regulations. Responsibility for this remains with the company performing the modification. This also applies to regulations pertaining to on-board diagnosis (OBD).
    - provide any information about changes in fuel consumption or noise characteristics; in some circumstances, a new noise emission approval will be required. Components that have an effect on the vehicles acoustics (e.g. nozzles in the air filter) not be modified. Non-compliance with noise limits voids type approval!

For vehicles up to and including the Euro 5 exhaust standard, the following apply in addition to the general specifications:

- Never change the shape or area of pipework cross-sections.
- Avoid sharp bends in the pipe; mitre cuts are not permitted.
- Do not modify air filters.
- The service life of the air filter may be shortened when modifications are made to the air-intake system.
- Only use approved air filters.
- Changes to the installation location of the humidity sensor in the air-filter housing are not allowed.
- The design of mountings and supports and the basic installation position of components must not be changed.
- The air-intake must be protected against drawing in warmed air (e.g. heat dissipated by the engine in the vicinity of the wheel housings or the exhaust silencer). A suitable location for the air intake must be chosen such that the intake air is not warmed by more than 5°C (difference between the ambient air temperature and the temperature at the turbocharger inlet). If the intake air temperature is too high there is a risk that the exhaust emission limits will be exceeded. Non-compliance with emission limits voids type approval!
- In order to avoid drawing in burning cigarette ends or similar, a so-called cigarette mesh must be fitted directly over the air intake in the same fashion as the mesh installed on production vehicles (non-flammable material, mesh size SW6, area of the open cross-section at least that of the intake air scoop on the air filter). There is a risk of vehicle fire if this requirement is not observed! MAN can provide no information on the effectiveness of the measure used, responsibility lies with the company performing the modification.

- The air intake must be positioned such that there is a low level of dust and spray ingestion.
- Sufficient dewatering using water separation systems and unobstructed dust discharge from the filter housing and the unfiltered side must be ensured to prevent damage to the engine.
- Pipework on the filtered-air side must be selected to ensure that it is absolutely sealed from the unfiltered side. The inside of the air intake pipes must be smooth – no particles or similar may come loose from the sides. It is imperative that the air intake pipe cannot slip out at the sealed joints. Suitable brackets must therefore be fitted.
- The partial-vacuum sensor shall be positioned in a straight section of the pipe at the shortest possible distance from the turbocharger. It is the responsibility of the company carrying out the modification to ensure the sensor reads correctly. Important: Risk of engine damage if the sensor underreads!
- All air-intake pipes must be capable of resisting vacuum pressures of 100 mbar and temperatures of at least 80°C (peaks of 100°C). Flexible tubing (e.g. hoses) is not permitted.

For vehicles up to and including Euro 6, the following apply in addition to the requirements of the lower exhaust-gas standards:

- Modifications to the air-intake system may only be undertaken following written request and approval by MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).
- Changes to the installation location, position and alignment of sensors in the air-intake system are not allowed.
- If the air-compressor intake line is re-routed, it must be ensured that the cross-sections are adequately dimensioned. The line must have a vacuum stability of at least 250 mbar and a temperature stability range of between - 40°C and +120°C.
- Independent retrofitting or removing of the safety elements (for difficult operating conditions) leads to non-compliance with the emission limit values. Retrofitting may only be carried out by MAN workshops. Under certain circumstances the vehicle will require parameterisation.

6.3.3 Modifications to the engine cooling system

Engine cooling systems are harmonised with the respective engines and the following must therefore be observed.

- Components of the factory-fitted cooling system (radiator, grille, air ducts, coolant circuit) may not be modified.
- Exceptions only with permission from MAN (for address, see “Publisher” above).
- The cooling system may **only** be filled with the coolants released by MAN as specified in the fuel database.
- Materials that contain copper may not be used in the cooling circuit.

If the area of the inflow surface is reduced (by front attachments, for example), thus reducing the performance of the radiator, the following must be taken into account:

- Increased operation of the fan and thus increased fuel consumption
- Negative influence on the capacity of the continuous brake
- Reduction of engine power when close to its limits

Under the following conditions, a radiator with modified performance may be required:

- Operation primarily under stationary conditions
- Operation in climatically unfavourable zones (countries with hot climates)
- Operation in areas where it can be expected that the cooling performance can be reduced e.g. due to high dust level

When fitting a third-party radiator, it is mandatory to follow the mechanical installation requirements set down in the installation guidelines for built-in engines. These guidelines can be requested from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

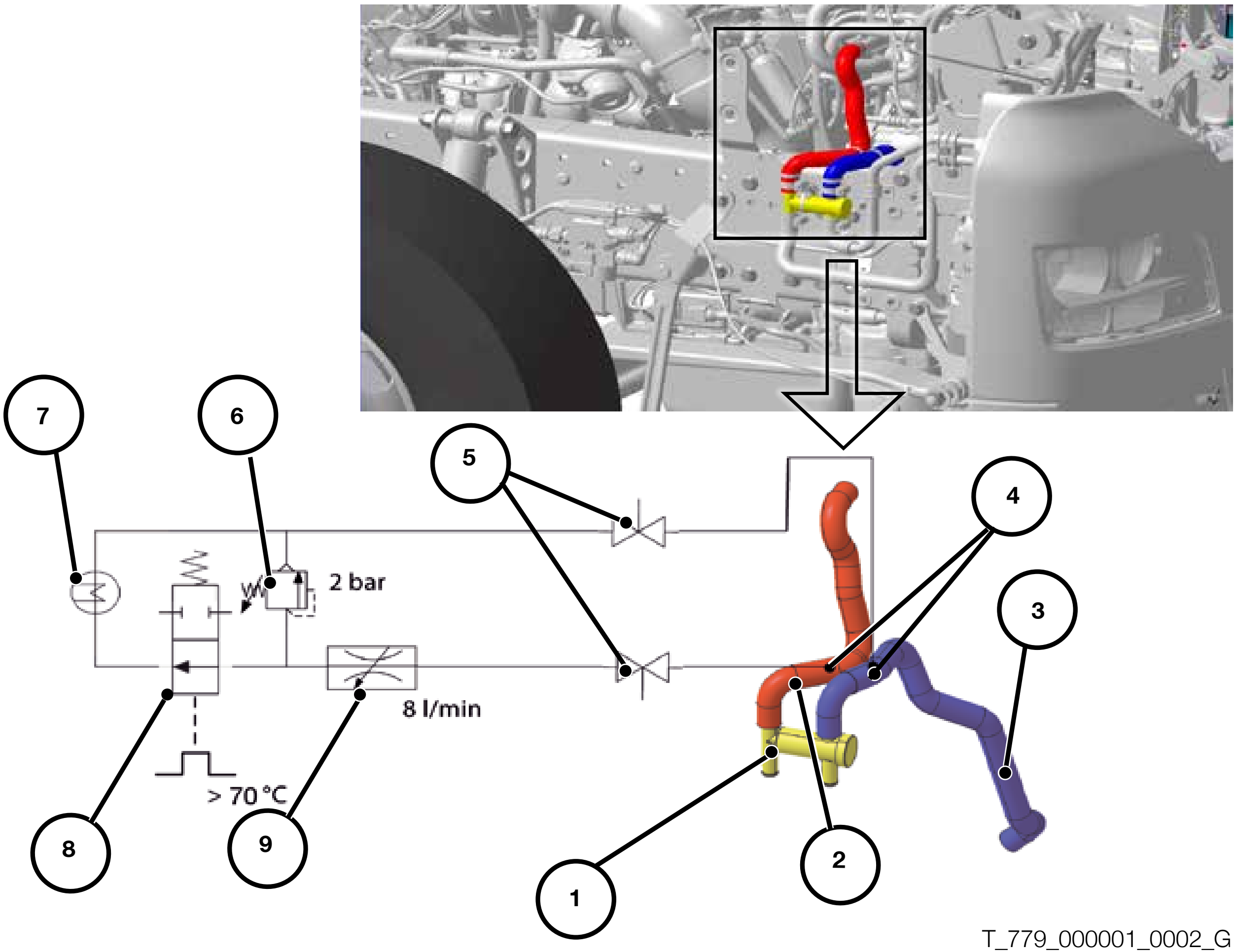
With some bodies, it may be necessary to heat boxes or storage spaces. The vehicle engine cooling circuit must not be used for this purpose. Heating can be provided via an external diesel-driven air heater. If the vehicle has only had an auxiliary air heater installed ex works, then fuel can be supplied via the vehicle fuel tank.
Chapter III, Section 5.5.2 “Changes to fuel lines” applies in this case. Otherwise an additional fuel tank may be installed on the vehicle for the operation of the auxiliary heater. Chapter III, Section 5.5 “Fuel tanks” and the tank manufacturer specification apply in this case.

Coolant tapping for heating body components

For some bodies, it can be necessary for body components through which flow medium flows to be heated at low ambient temperatures in order to prevent the flow medium from freezing or to reduce the viscosity of the transported medium. This can be achieved by tapping coolant from the cooling circuit.
Coolant must be picked up via a circuit parallel to the cab heating circuit in accordance with Fig. 45-III. The tapping can take place using a T-piece in front of the H-valve (pressure-limiting valve, installed at the front right of the chassis frame) of the cab heating system. The return line of the body heating system is also connected to the heating return line using a T-piece.
If the tapping of coolant is not a permanent requirement, it must be manually shut off using shut-off valves.

Information
The software package with MAN item number 81.25890-7953 (ordered via www.manted.de) is to be installed on vehicles with engines of exhaust gas level Euro 6c or Euro 6d, which are not fitted with an Intarder or MAN PriTarder, if coolant tapping is to be achieved. If the above-named software package is not available, coolant tapping for heating body components is not permitted.

Fig. 45-III: Coolant tapping in front of the H-valve of the cab heating system



T_779_000001_0002_G

1 – H-valve
2 – Heating supply line
3 – Heating return line
4 – T-pieces
5 – Shut-off valves
6 – Pressure-limiting valve
7 – Heat exchanger (optional)
8 – Temperature-controlled valve / Thermostat (>70°C)
9 – Throttle valve or flow regulator valve (max. 8l/min)

The following aspects must be observed for coolant tapping:

- Coolant tapping must take place in front of the H-valve (pressure-limiting valve) of the cab heating system using a T-piece
- The return line of the body circuit using a T-piece in the heating return line.
- Inner diameter of the lines for body heating 16 mm, the same as cab heating lines
- Do not use materials containing copper
- Hoses in accordance with MAN company standard 334 -1, material version 8
- Coolant tapping via the body circuit max. 8l/min
- Pressure limited to max. 2bar (pressure-limiting valve)
- Coolant tapping only at coolant temperature of >70°C (establish using thermostat or temperature-controlled valve)
- In the case of maintenance works on the cooling circuit, shut-off valves must be provided for the body circuit
- Without external evidence of filling capacity, the heat exchanger must not be positioned higher than the coolant expansion tank.
- The whole circuit must be ventilated prior to use.

6.3.4 Modifications to engine encapsulation, noise insulation

Interference with and changes to engine capsulation in place ex works are not permitted. If a vehicle comes ready defined as “low-noise” it will lose its status as a result of subsequent changes or retrofits. The company that has carried out the modification will then be responsible for re-obtaining the previous status.

6.3.5 Compressed-air supply

The compressed-air system includes components such as:

- Air compressor
- Compressed-air dryer
- Compressed-air tank
- External compressed-air connections

The compressed air system supplies, among other things:

- The compressed-air brake system
- The cab suspension
- The chassis suspension
- Consumers requiring compressed air for operation.

6.3.5.1 Basic principles

Warning notice

Improperly executed work on the compressed-air system can impair the function of the brake system.
This can lead to the failure of components or parts relevant to safety.

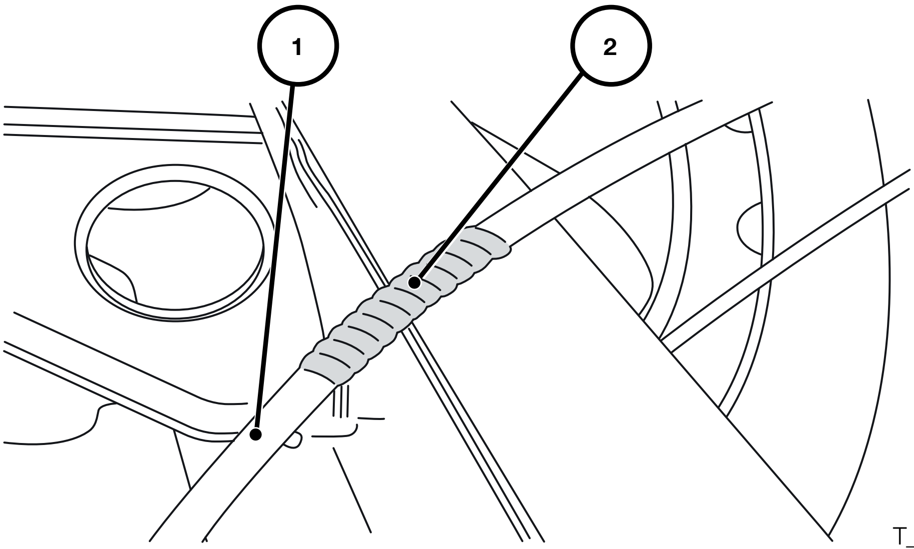
6.3.5.2 Routing lines

Principles of laying lines:

- Do not lay lines loose, use existing means of attachment and/or conduits.
- Do not heat plastic pipes to install them, even if they are to be laid in a curve.
- When attaching PA pipes make sure they cannot become twisted.
- Fit a tube clip or, in the case of a cluster of pipes, a cable tie at the beginning and end in each case.
- Attach corrugated wiring harness pipes to plastic consoles in the frame and in the engine area to prepared cable routes using cable ties or clips.
- Never attach more than one line to the same hose clip.
- Only polyamide pipes as per DIN74324 Part 1 or MAN standard M3230 Part 1 (extension of DIN74324 Part 1) may be employed (MAN portal for technical documentation: www.ptd.man.eu, registration required).
- The cross-section of lines may not be changed.
- Add 1% to the length of the polyamide pipe (corresponding to 10 mm for each metre), because plastic pipes contract in the cold and the vehicles must be capable of working at temperatures down to -40°C.
- Do not heat pipes to lay them.
- When cutting plastic pipes to length, use plastic pipe cutters because sawing them creates ridges on the cut faces and chippings can get into the pipe.
- PA pipes may rest on the edges of a frame or in frame openings. A minimal amount of flattening on the PA pipe at the points of contact is tolerated (maximum depth 0.3 mm). However, notched abrasions are not permitted.

- PA lines may touch one another. There should be minimal flattening at the points where they touch one another.
- PA lines can be bundled together with a cable tie but in parallel and must not cross each other. PA and corrugated pipes should only be bundled together with pipes of the same type. The restriction in movement caused by the pipes becoming stiffer when bundled together must be taken into account.
- Covering frame edges with a cut open corrugated pipe causes damage; the PA pipe is worn at the point where it contacts the corrugated pipe.
- Points of contact between the compressed-air line (Position 1, Fig. 46-III) and edges of the frame can be protected with a protective spiral (Position 2, Fig. 46-III). Such a protective spiral must grip the pipe it is guarding tightly and fully in its windings. (Exception: Polyamide pipes ≤ 6 mm.)

Fig. 46-III: Protective spiral on PA pipe



T_510_000001_0001_G

1) Compressed-air line
2) Protective spiral

- Do not let PA pipes/corrugated pipes come into contact with aluminium alloys (e.g. aluminium tank, fuel filter housing). Aluminium alloys are subject to mechanical wear (fire risk).
- Pipes that cross over and pulsate (e.g. for fuel) must not be joined by a cable tie where they cross (risk of chafing).
- Do not fix leads rigidly to injection lines and steel fuel feeding pipes for the flame starting system (risk of chafing, fire risk).
- Accompanying central lubricating cables and ABS sensor cables may only be attached to air hoses if a rubber spacer is fitted.
- Do not attach anything to coolant hoses and hydraulic hoses (e.g. steering) by cable ties (risk of chafing).
- Under no circumstances bundle starter cables together with lines carrying fuel or oil because it is a must that the cable from the plus terminal does not chafe.
- Effects of heat: Pay attention to the possibility of heat build-up in encapsulated areas. Resting leads against heat shields is not permitted (minimum distance from heat shields ≥ 100 mm, from the exhaust ≥ 200 mm).
- Metal leads are prestrengthened and may not be bent or fitted such that they can bend by themselves during operation.

If subassemblies/components are seated to move in relation to one another, the following basic rules must be followed when routing leads:

- A lead must be able to follow the movement of a subassembly without hindrance; ensure that there is sufficient spacing between moving parts (rebound/compression, steering angle, tilting of cab). Lines must not be stretched.
- Precisely define the respective beginning and end of the movement as a fixed clamping point. The polyamide pipe or corrugated tube is gripped tightly at the clamping point using the widest cable tie possible or a clip suitable for the diameter of the pipe.
- If polyamide pipes and corrugated tubes are laid at the same junction, the stiffer polyamide pipe is laid first. The softer corrugated tube is then attached to the polyamide pipe.
- A line tolerates movement at right angles to the direction in which it is laid, so ensure sufficient spacing between the clamping points (rule of thumb: spacing of clamping points ≥ 5 x amplitude of movement to be sustained).
- Large amplitude of movement is best withstood by laying a pipe U-shaped and allowing movement along the arms of the U.

Rule of thumb for minimum length of slack loop:
Minimum length of slack loop = ½ • amplitude of movement • minimum radius • π

- Observe the following minimum radii for PA pipes (define the respective start and end of the movement precisely as the fixed clamping point).

Table 14-III: Minimum radius for PA pipes

Nominal diameter - Ø [mm]	4	6	9	12	14	16
Radius [mm]	20	30	40	60	80	95

- Use plastic clips to secure the lines and comply with the maximum clip spacing stated in Table 15-III.

Table 15-III: Maximum space between clips used to secure pipes in relation to pipe size

Pipe size	4x1	6x1	8x1	9x1,5	11x1,5	12x1,5	14x2	14x2,5	16x2
Clamp spacing [mm]	500	500	600	600	700	700	800	800	800

6.3.5.3 Connecting auxiliary consumers

The compressed-air system pipework for connecting auxiliary consumers uses Voss Systems 203 (for small pipes of nominal size [NG] 6), 230,232 and special connectors such as double mandrel.
With regard to the assembly of the various systems, the MAN standards M3061-2, M3061-3 and M3298 must be observed.
The mandatory standards referred to, contain detailed binding instructions for assembling pneumatic lines and units.

MAN recommends using the Voss System 232.

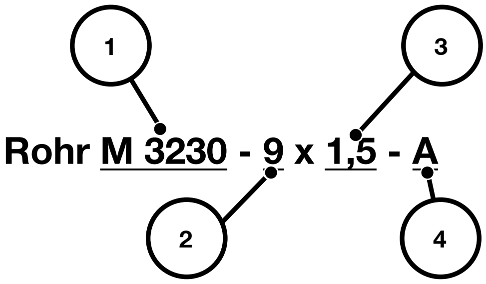
Additional loads may not be connected:

- to the service and parking brake circuits or trailer control,
- to the test connections,
- directly to the four-circuit protection valve.

Designation example: 9 x 1.5 (NG 6) polyamide pipe:

The designation of a polyamide pipe with an external diameter d_1 = 9 mm and section thickness of pipe wall s = 1.5 mm is explained below.

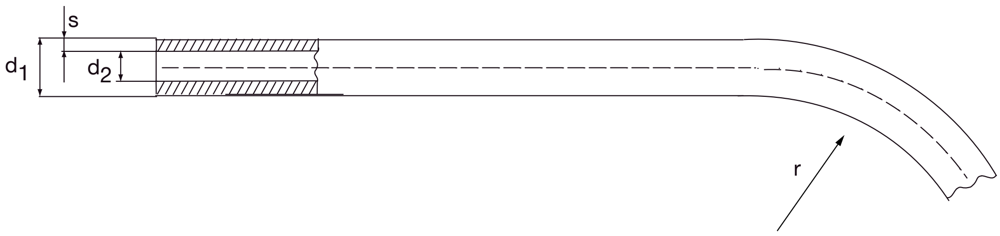
Fig. 47-III: Apportionment of MAN works standard M3230



T_511_000002_0001_G

1) MAN works standard
2) External diameter of pipe
3) Section thickness of wall
4) Type of material

Fig. 48-III: Dimensioning Air pipe



T_511_000001_0001_G

d_1 External diameter of pipe
d_2 Internal diameter of pipe
S Section thickness of wall
r Radius of curvature

The radii of curvature set down in MAN standard M 3230-1 must be complied with. Can be found in Chapter III - 1.2 Standards, guidelines, regulations, tolerances.

MAN uses a distribution rail on the solenoid-valve block to connect its own compressed-air consumers.

This is installed

- on the K-cross member in the frame bend,
- in a few exceptional cases on the side, on the cross-member junction plate,
- on the frame side member on the right in the area of the K-cross member,
- on the cross member – rear shock absorber,
- or on the right in the direction of travel (for vehicles with wheel configurations 8x6 and 8x8).

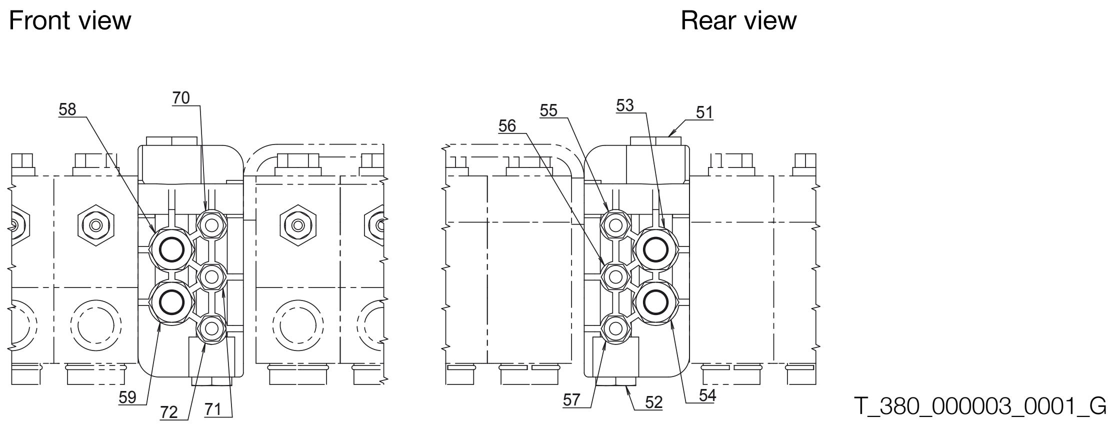
The connections on the distribution rail (see Fig. 49-III) are occupied by lines, depending on the equipment fitted ex works.

Bodybuilders have the following connection options:

- Compressed-air consumers can be connected to an unused connection on the distribution rail.
- Unused connections 52, 53, 54, 58 or 59 with VOSS System 232 NG8 can be used to tap compressed air for auxiliary consumers.
- Unused connections 55, 56, 57, 70, 71 or 72 with VOSS System 203 NG6 can be used to tap compressed air for auxiliary consumers.
- The existing distribution rail can be extended by means of the corresponding solenoid valves.
- Disconnect the supply line from distribution rail connection 51, fit a Voss connecting part L or T SN12 KN12 KN12 (MAN item nos. 81.98183-6101 or 81.98183-6158), for example.
  The branch connection for the auxiliary consumer is fitted to the unused connection.

When a greater volume of compressed air is tapped (e.g. when an auxiliary compressed-air tank > 40 litres is installed), a separate overflow and check valve with an overflow pressure of $7{,}3^{\circ}_{-0{,}3}$ bar (MAN item no. 81.52110-6049) is necessary.

Fig. 49-III: Connecting auxiliary consumers



6.3.5.4 Loss of compressed-air pressure

Compressed-air systems cannot achieve one hundred percent efficiency and slight leakage is often unavoidable despite the most careful installation work. So the question is how much loss of air pressure is unavoidable, and when does the loss become too high. In simple terms, any loss of air pressure is to be avoided that would result in not being able to drive a vehicle immediately after starting it within 12 hours of shutting it down/parking it. Based on this there are two different methods of determining whether air loss is unavoidable or not:

- Within 12 hours of the system being charged to its cut-off pressure, the pressure must not be below < 6 bar in any circuit. The check must be made with depressurised spring-loaded brake release units, in other words with the parking brake applied.
- The pressure in the tested circuit must not have fallen by more than 2 % within ten minutes of charging the system to its cut-off pressure.

If the air loss is greater than described here, an unacceptable leak is present and must be eliminated.

6.3.5.5 External air supply

When a connection is retrofitted by a bodybuilder for continual external air supply (e.g. on fire-fighting vehicles), it is mandatory to employ one of the connection options shown below for compressed-air feed.

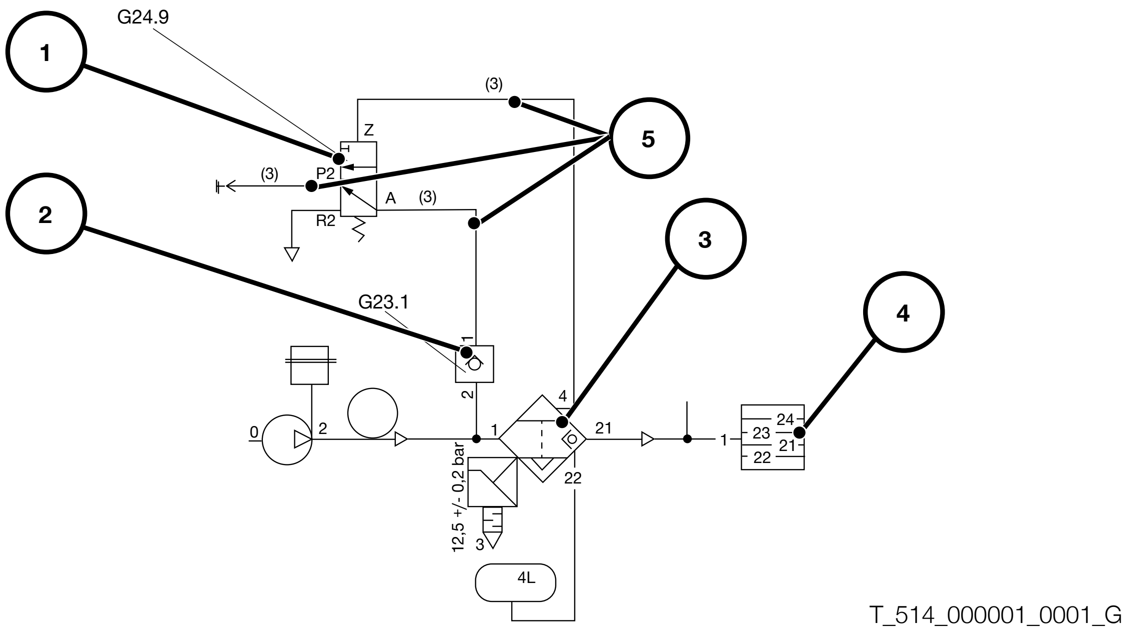
The corresponding variant is to be selected in dependence on the available feed pressure:

- Variant 1: Feed pressure of at least 13 bar
- Variant 2: Feed pressure of between 9 and 10 bar

Variant 1:

This version is possible only with a heated air dryer.
Positions (1, 2) in Fig. 50-III and the external filler coupling have to be retrofitted to the vehicle.
The external filler coupling is connected to P2 (3/2-way valve that has to be retrofitted) in Fig. 50-III.

Fig. 50-III: Variant 1



1) 3/2-way valve (switching valve)
2) Check valve
3) Air dryer (in scope of vehicle ex works)
4) Multi-circuit protection valve (in scope of vehicle ex works)
5) Compressed-air pipe with minimum diameter of 9 x 1.5 PA11/12 PHLY

Table 16-III: Spare parts required for retrofitting

Pos. no.	Part	Designation	MAN item no.
1	3/2-way valve	G24.9	81.52170-6157
2	Check valve	G23.1	81.52120-6004

Pipes must be installed as per MAN standard M3061.

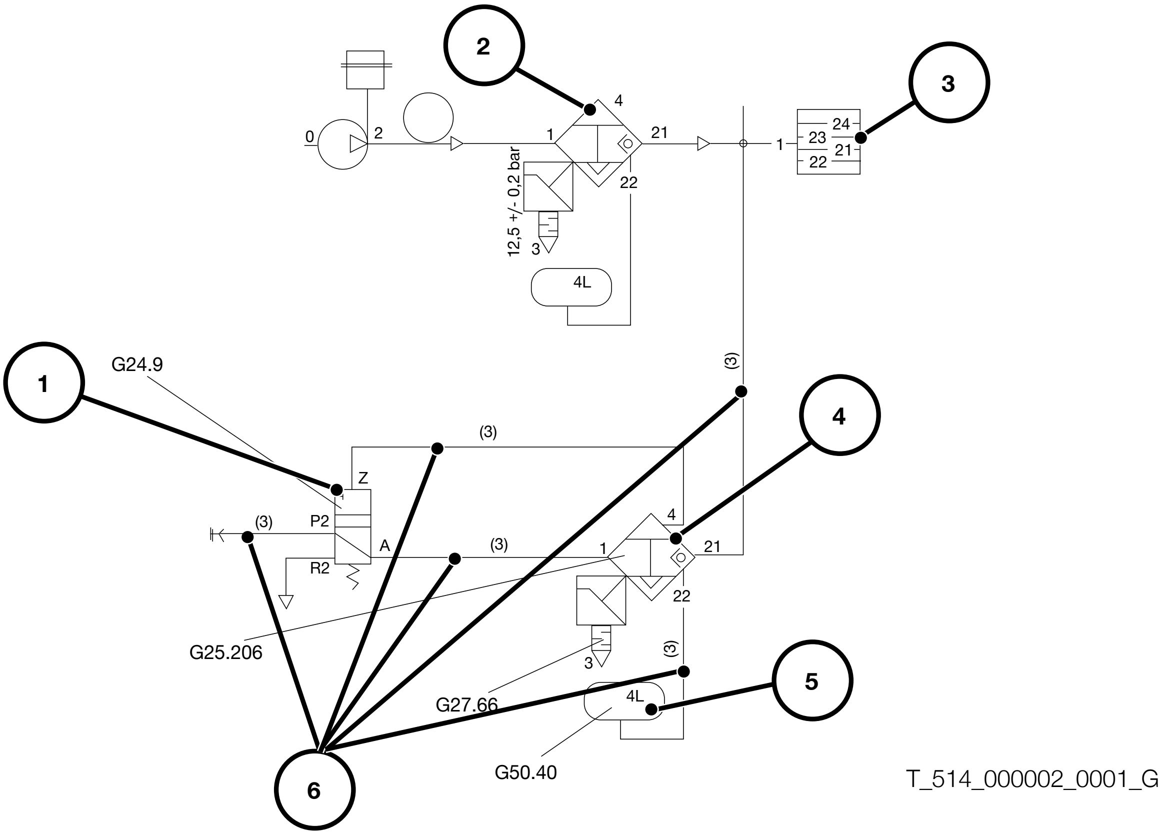
Important notice

For design reasons, feed pressure must be at least 13 bar to enable regeneration of the air dryer (Pos.3 in Fig. 50-III). If the feed pressure is lower than the air dryer‘s cut-off pressure, regeneration of the air dryer is not possible and moist air will enter the compressed-air braking system.

Variant 2 must be used on vehicles in the TGS/TGX model range equipped with engageable compressor. There is a risk of damage to the compressor.

Variant 2:
Positions (1, 4, 5 and noise damper G27.66) in Fig. 51-III and the external filler coupling have to be retrofitted to the vehicle. The external filler coupling is connected to P2 in Fig. 51-III.

Fig. 51-III: Variant 2



1) 3/2-way valve (switching valve) (supplementary scope)
2) Air dryer (in scope of vehicle)
3) Multi-circuit protection valve (in scope of vehicle)
4) Air dryer (supplementary scope)
5) Compressed-air tank (supplementary scope)
6) Compressed-air pipe with minimum diameter of 9 x 1.5 PA11

Table 17-III: Spare parts required for retrofitting

Pos. no.	Part	Designation	MAN item no.
1	3/2-way valve	G24.9	81.52170-6157
2	Air dryer (8.5 bar cut-off pressure)	G25.206	81.52102-6117
5	Compressed-air tank	G50.40	81.51401-0194
	Noise damper	G27.66	81.52101-6264

Pipes must be installed as per MAN standard M3061.

Important notice

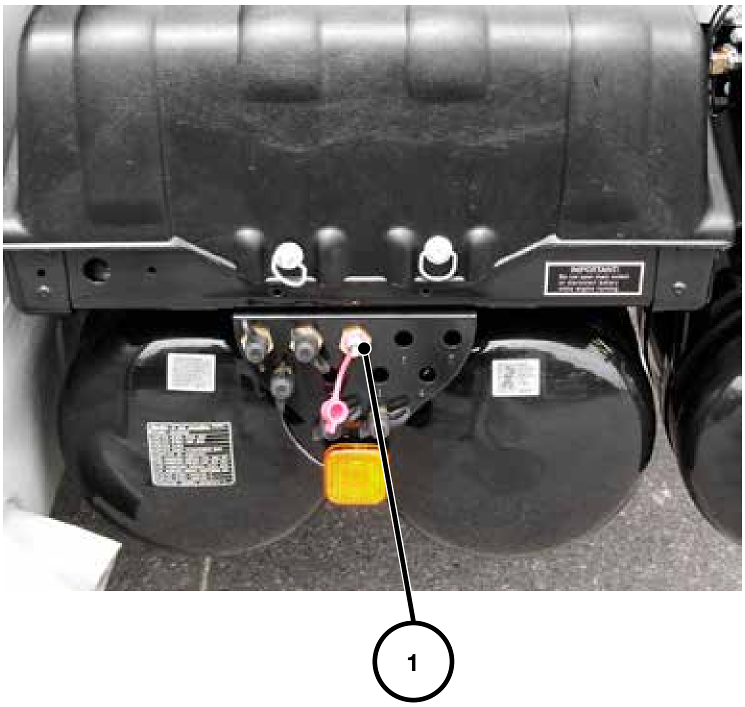
For design reasons, feed pressure must be at least 9 to 10 bar to enable regeneration of the air dryer (Pos.4 in Fig. 51-III). The air dryer that has to be retrofitted in addition must have a cut-off pressure of at least 8.5 bar.

If the feed pressure is lower than the air dryer‘s cut-off pressure, regeneration of the air dryer is not possible and moist air will enter the compressed-air braking system.

On vehicles of the TGS/TGX model range, the external filler connection (Pos. 1, Fig. 52-III) is located on a connecting plate on the chassis together with the test connections. Fig. 52-III shows an example of the location on a Euro 5 vehicle.

Further information can be found in the vehicle‘s operating instructions.

Fig. 52-III: External filler connection located on a connection plate on the frame



T_514_000004_0001_G

This compressed-air connection (Pos. 1 in Fig. 52-III) may only be used for

- filling the compressed-air system in the case of a lack of reservoir pressure or
- emergency release of the combination brake cylinder

This connection must not be used for continual external air supply.

The compressed air that is fed to this connection fills all the braking circuits but is no longer filtered and dried by the vehicle‘s air dryer.
Consequently, soiling and condensation can enter the compressed-air system.

Compressed air fed via this connection must meet the requirements set down in ISO 8573 - 1 : 2010 [7:7:4].
In the event of this quality class not being achieved, increased wear and leakage from the compressed-air components must be reckoned with.

6.4 Exhaust system

6.4.1 Modifications to the exhaust routing

Information

In general, modifications to the exhaust system are to be avoided. Various factory options are available for the TGS/ TGS and body builders must check to see if these can be used. Information on availability for the corresponding vehicle can be obtained from your closest MAN sales branch.

If it is still not possible to avoid making modifications the following requirements must be met:

- The outflow of exhaust gases must not be inhibited in any way.
- The backpressure in the exhaust must not be allowed to vary.
- All statutory regulations relevant to noise and emissions must be fulfilled.
- When modifications are made to the exhaust system and routing, care must be taken to ensure that the exhaust-gas stream is not directed at any part of the vehicle. The direction of the exhaust outlet must point away from the vehicle (observe regulations in the respective country - in Germany, these are the Road Traffic Licensing Regulations (StVZO)).
- All regulations pertaining to the components in question issued by professional associations or similar bodies must also be fulfilled (e.g. surface temperature in the vicinity of handles/grips)
- In the case of modified exhaust systems, MAN cannot
  - guarantee compliance with the above-mentioned and other regulations. Responsibility for this remains with the company performing the modification. This also applies to regulations pertaining to on-board diagnosis systems (OBD).
  - provide any information about changes in fuel consumption or noise characteristics. In some circumstances, new noise-emission approval will be required. Components that have an effect on acoustics may not be modified. Non-compliance with noise limits voids type approval!
  - make any statement of compliance about prescribed exhaust-gas limits. An expertise on emissions may be necessary. Non-compliance with emission limits voids type approval!

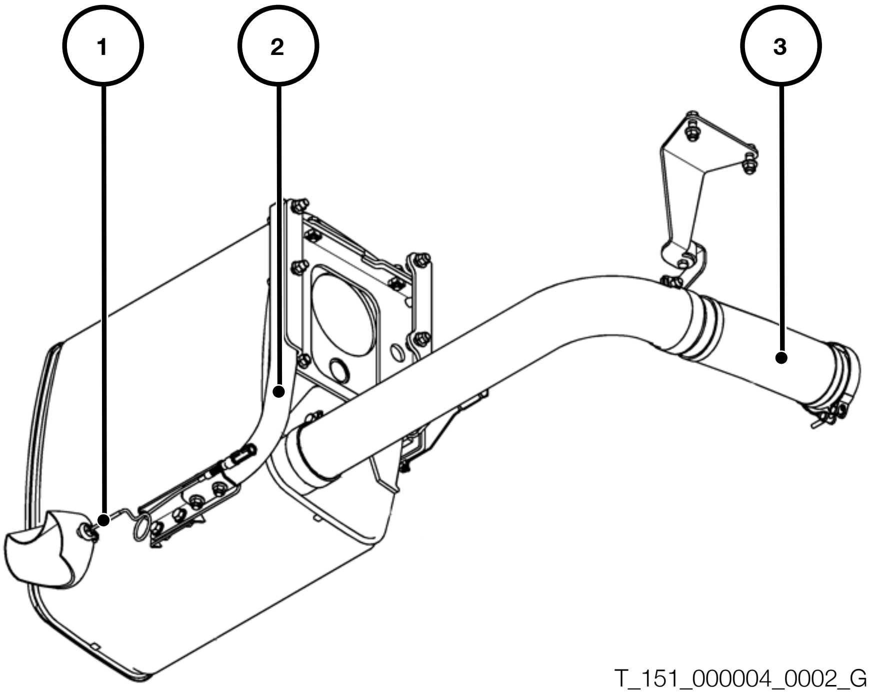
Depending on the emission class, modifications to the exhaust system are possible. In this regard, the following instructions must be observed.

For vehicles up to and including the Euro 4 exhaust standard, the following apply in addition to the general specifications:

- When relocating the exhaust silencer it must be ensured that the original MAN bracket is re-used and that the basic installation position of components is unchanged. (See Fig. 53-III: Exhaust-silencer bracket)
- The location of the temperature and the NO_x sensors (with OBD) on the exhaust silencer may not be changed.
- Modifications to the factory-fitted MAN cable harness to the sensors are not permitted. If other cable harness lengths are required, order Genuine MAN cable harnesses from the MAN Spare-parts Service.
- For EMC reasons, CAN cables may not be untwisted.
- Conversion work or modifications to the exhaust-gas routing from the exhaust manifold to the metal hose (the flexible metal pipe between parts attached to the body and those attached to the frame) are not permitted.
- No blowing-out of cargo (e.g. bitumen) using exhaust gas - **danger of damage to the exhaust system and engine**.
- Never change the shape or area of pipework cross-sections. The original type of material must be used for pipes.
- Do not modify silencers (including the silencer housing): this voids type approval.
- Bending radii must be at least twice the pipe diameter; creases are not allowed.
- Only continuous bends are permitted, i.e. no mitre cuts.
- The function of components relevant to OBD may not be impaired. Manipulation of components relevant to OBD voids type approval!

- The connection of the pressure-sensor line on the silencer must always face the top, the following steel pipe must be installed so that it rises continuously to connect with the sensor and it must have a minimum length of 300 mm and a maximum length of 400 mm (including the flexible section). The measurement line must be made from M01-942-X6CrNiTi1810-K3-8x1 D4-T3. In general, the installation position of the pressure sensor must be retained (connection at bottom).
- The notes and requirements set down in Chapter 1.4 “Fire protection” must be observed.

Fig. 53-III: Exhaust-silencer bracket

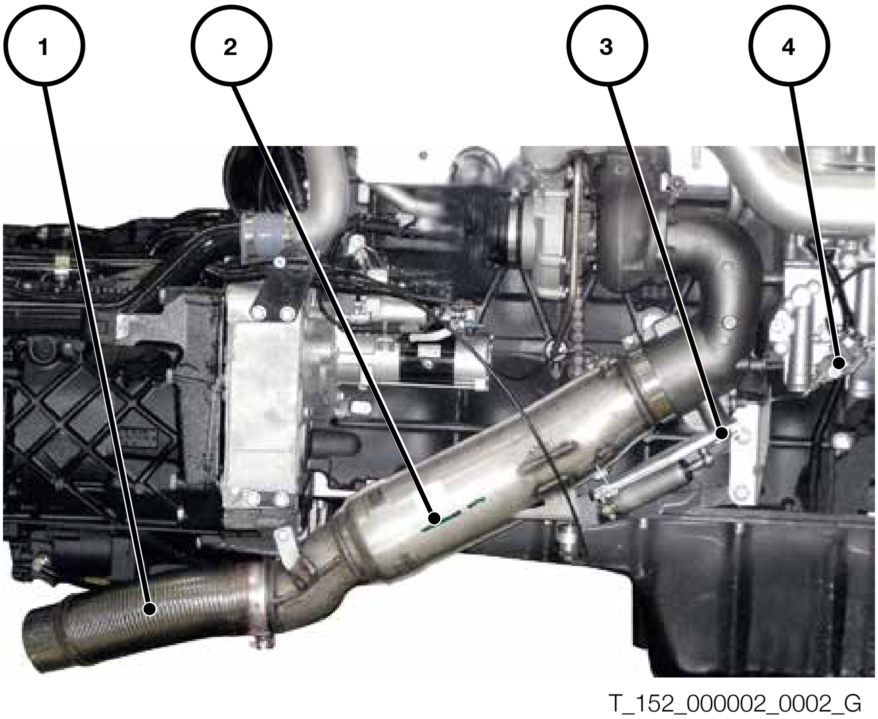


1) Temperature sensor
2) Bracket
3) Metal hose

For vehicles up to and including Euro 5, the following apply in addition to the requirements of the lower exhaust standards:

- Extension of the exhaust routing by 1000 mm is permissible from the metal pipe to the exhaust silencer without fitting high temperature insulation.
- Extension of the exhaust routing by > 1000 mm to max. 2000 mm is permissible from the metal pipe to the exhaust silencer if suitable high temperature insulation is fitted.

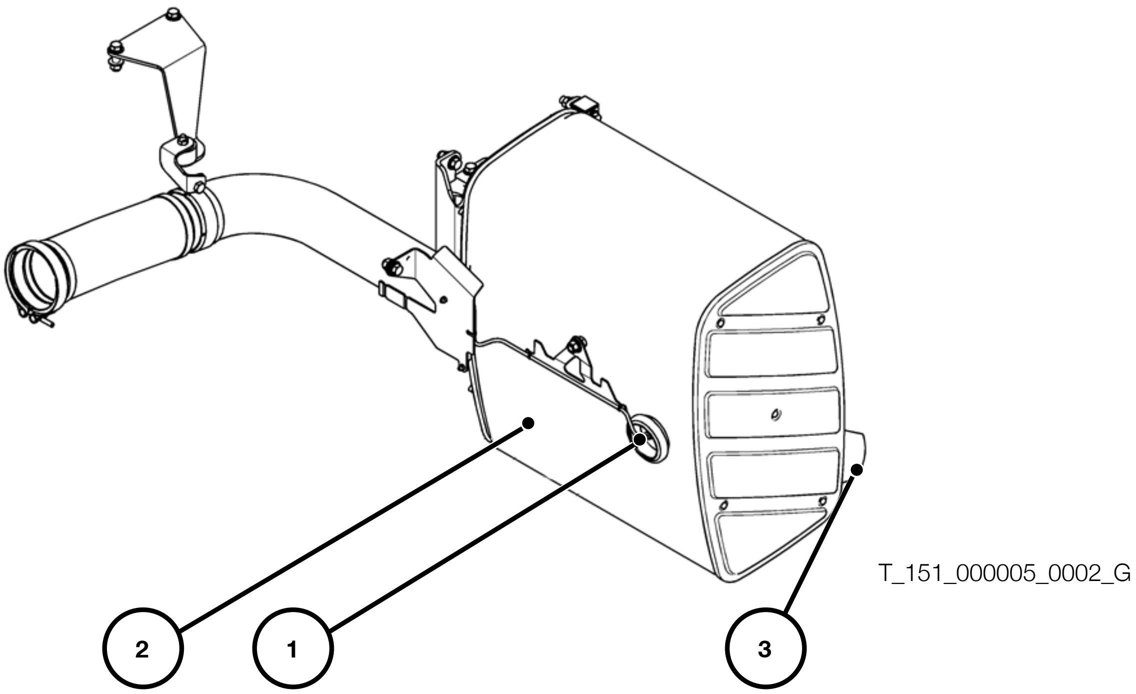
Fig. 54-III: Exhaust-gas tract from mixer to metal hose



1) Metal hose
2) Mixer
3) Injection nozzle
4) Dosing modul

- Only austenitic stainless steels may be used for manufacturing exhaust system piping.
  Reason: if the otherwise commonly-used ferritic steels are used, the ammonia in the exhaust tract (reaction product from AdBlue) will cause corrosion.
- Stainless steel pipes must be welded using inert gas shielded arc welding (observe the steel manufacturer’s instructions) with the work carried out by qualified and authorised personnel.

Fig. 55-III: Position of the NO_x sensor (only OBD with NO_x control, statutory requirement with effect from 10/2007) on exhaust silencer



1) NO_x-sensor
2) Exhaust silencer
3) Temperature sensor

Table 18-III: Overview of the austenitic stainless steels as per DIN 17440 to be employed

Materials:

Designation	Material number
X 5 CrNi 18 10	1.4301
X 2 CrNi 19 11	1.4306
X 2 CrNiN 18 10	1.4311
X 6 CrNiTi 18 10	1.4541
X 6 CrNiNb 18 10	1.4550
X 5 CrNiMo 17 12 2	1.4401
X 2 CrNiMo 17 13 2	1.4404
X 6 CrNiMoTi 17 12 2	1.4571
X 2 CrNiMoN 17 13 3	1.4429
X 2 CrNiMo 18 14 3	1.4435
X 5 CrNiMo 17 13 3	1.4436
X 2 CrNiMoN 17 13 5	1.4439

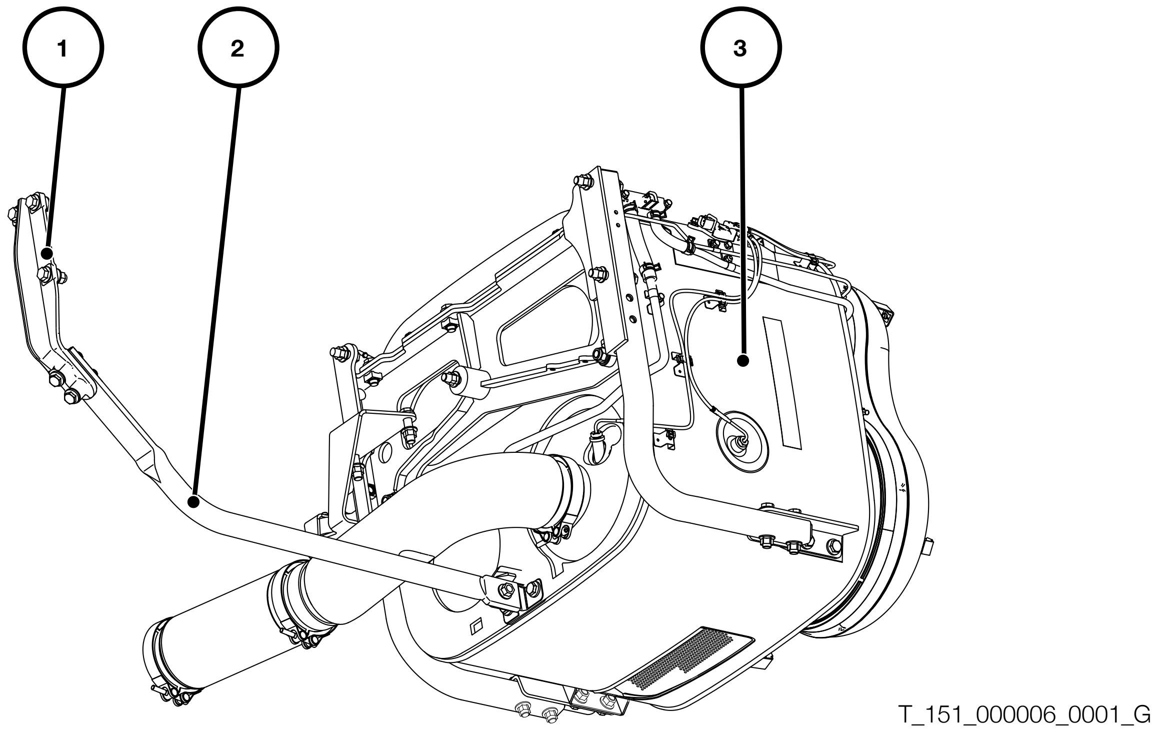
For vehicles up to and including Euro 6, the following apply in addition to the requirements of the lower exhaust standards:

Important notice

Due to the fact that exhaust-gas aftertreatment sensing is highly sensitive, all work must be carried out with the greatest care. The instructions in this section and in all other relevant sections must be strictly adhered to.

- When the exhaust silencer is relocated, the factory-fitted fastening must be retained, if necessary adapted (see Fig. 56-III: Exhaust silencer on right side with separate bracket for cross strut)
- When the exhaust silencer is relocated to the frame bend, it must be fitted parallel to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle (e.g. by means of shims).
- If the silencer is moved to a location reinforced by a cross member, the cross strut on the silencer can be dispensed with.
- If only the AdBlue tank is relocated, a separate bracket may be necessary for the silencer cross strut (obtainable from MAN Spare-parts Service).

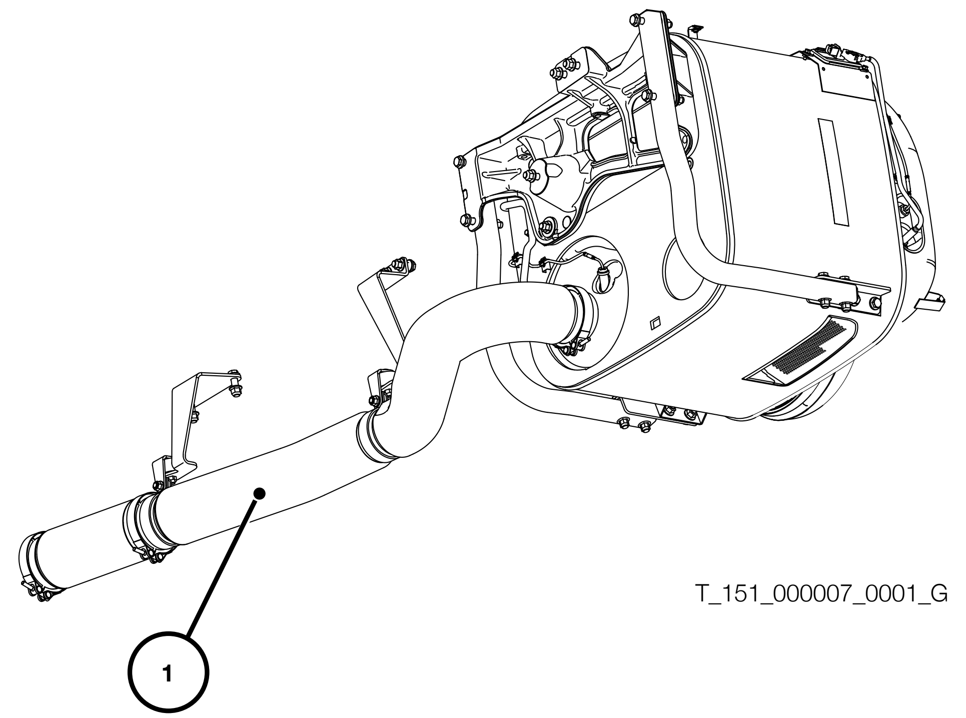
Fig. 56-III: Exhaust silencer on right side with separate bracket for cross strut



1) Bracket for cross strut
2) Cross strut
3) Exhaust silencer

The exhaust pipe may be lengthened in the section between the flexible metal hose and the silencer (see Fig. 57-III: Exhaust silencer relocated towards rear).

Fig. 57-III: Exhaust silencer relocated towards rear

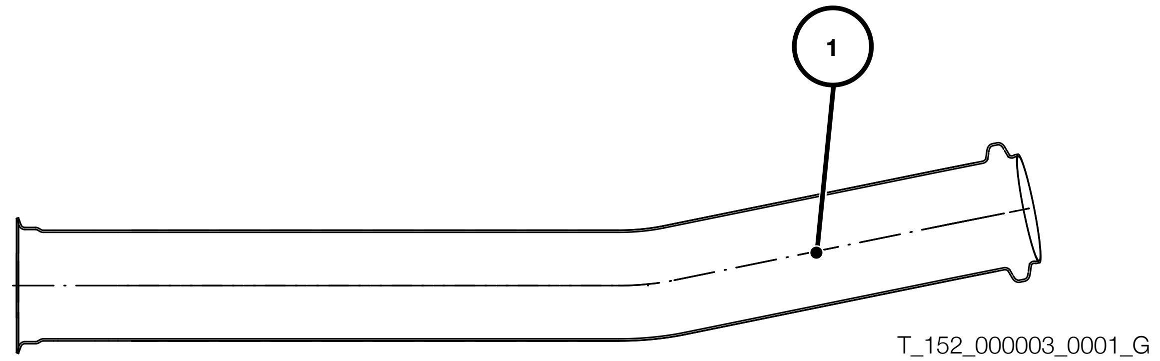


1) Exhaust pipe

In this regard, the exhaust pipe between the flexible metal hose and the silencer may not exceed the following lengths (neutral axis), see Fig. 58-III: Neutral axis).

- TGS/TGX: 3200 mm

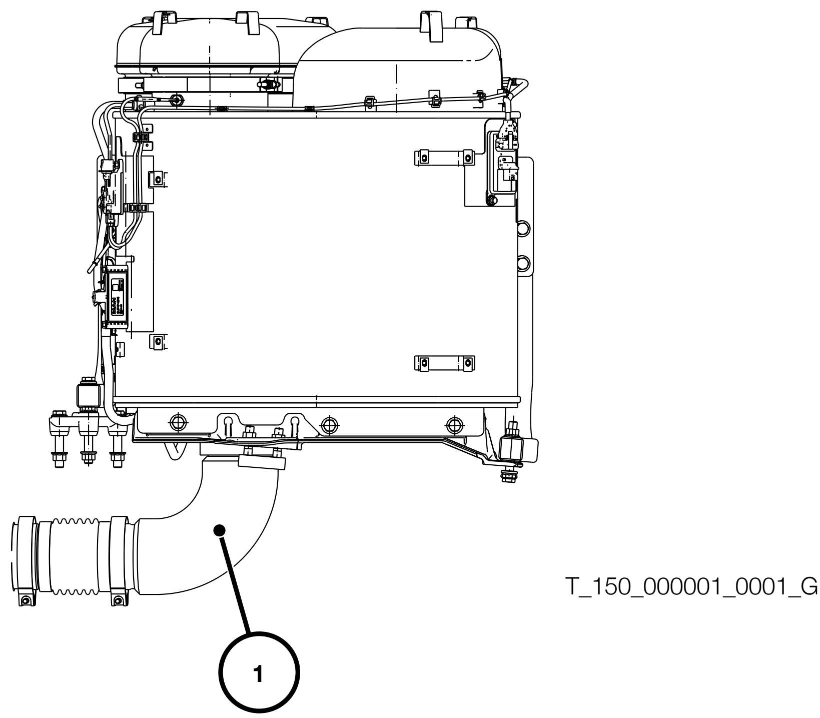
Fig. 58-III: Neutral axis



1) Neutral axis

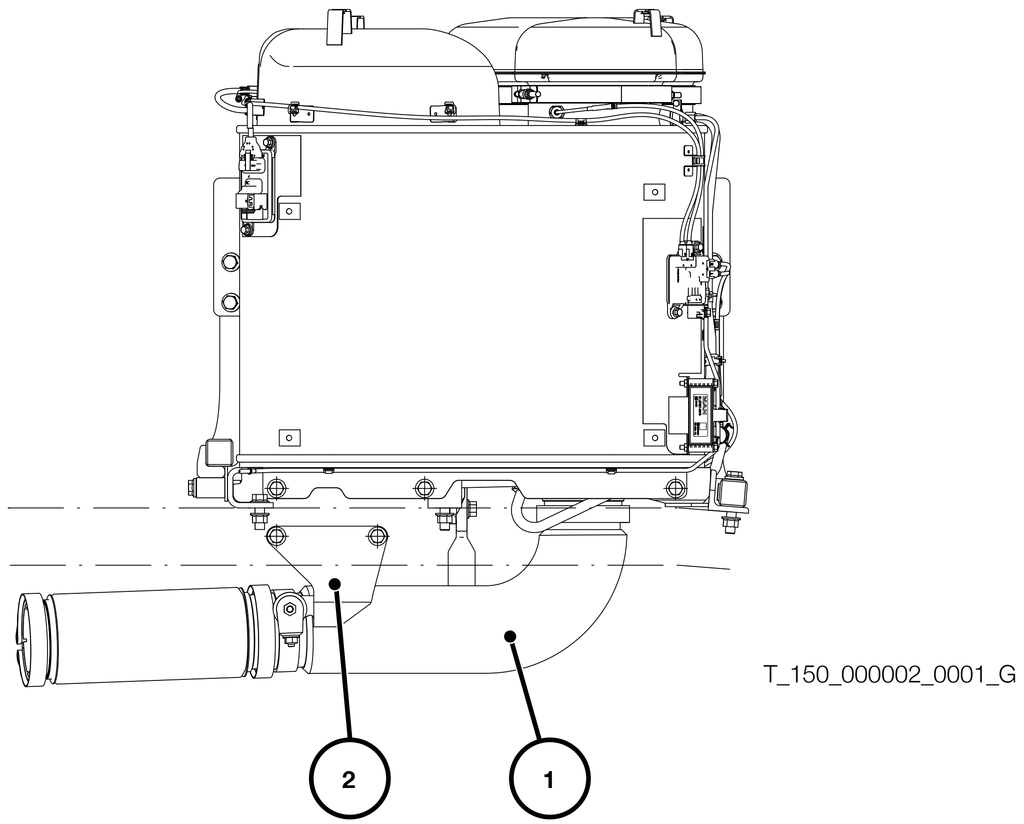
When the exhaust pipe is extended, a flexible pipe (MAN part no. 81.15210.5017) must be installed between the exhaust pipe and the silencer. A supplementary attachment point must be provided at the end of the extended pipe. In the case of vehicles with a short connection elbow (see Fig. 59-III: Exhaust silencer with short connection elbow) to the silencer, no supplementary bracket is necessary. In the case of vehicles with a long connection elbow (see Fig. 60-III: Exhaust silencer with long connection elbow) to the silencer, the factory-fitted bracket is to be retained.

Fig. 59-III: Exhaust silencer with short connection elbow



1) Short connection elbow

Fig. 60-III: Exhaust silencer with long connection elbow

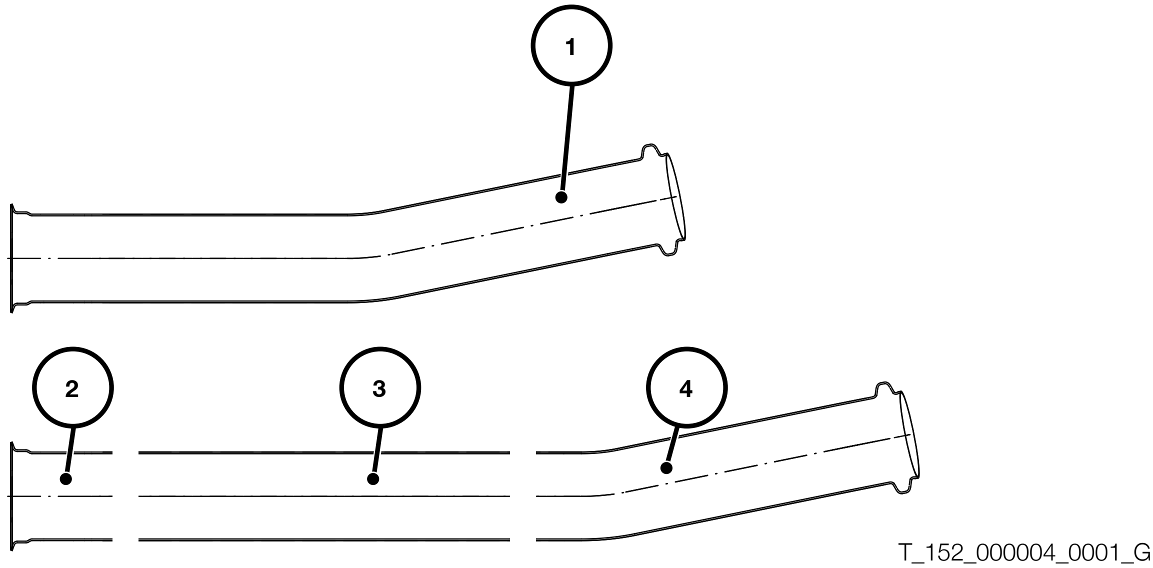


1) Long connection elbow
2) Bracket

In order to ensure that the exhaust system is leaktight, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- The connections at the ends of the exhaust pipe must be retained.
- In order to avoid welding distortion to the exhaust-pipe connections, a distance of approx. 100 mm between the connection and the joint must be maintained.
- Joints in the area of bends are not permitted.
- Joints in the area of changes to the cross-section are not permitted.
- Exhaust seals are not suitable for re-use. The seals must be replaced with new ones whenever the exhaust pipe is disassembled. (TGS/X: 81.15901.0042).
- Exhaust-pipe clamps may not be bent open.

Fig. 61-III: Exhaust-pipe extension



1) Standard exhaust pipe
2) Exhaust-pipe connection - must be retained
3) Section of pipe for exhaust-pipe extension
4) Exhaust-pipe connection - must be retained

The factory-fitted exhaust system employs stainless steel, material no. 1.4301. Only austenitic stainless steels may be used for exhaust-system piping (see Table 18-III).

Reason: if the otherwise commonly-used ferritic steels are used, the ammonia in the exhaust tract (reaction product from AdBlue) will cause corrosion.

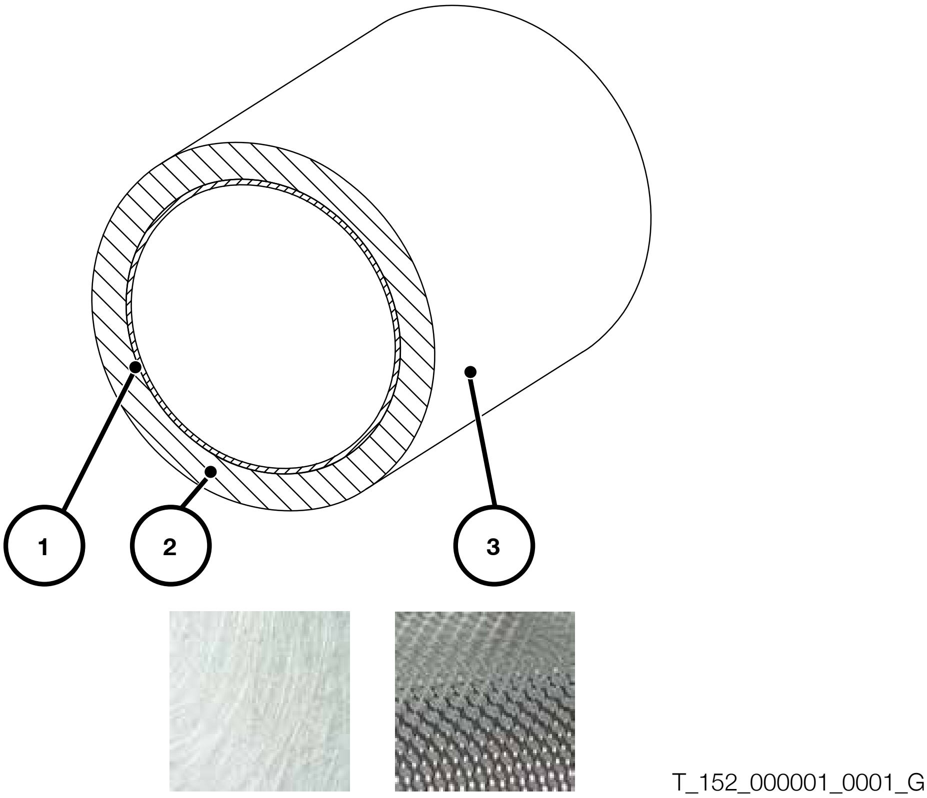
Stainless steel pipes must be welded using inert gas shielded arc welding (observe the steel manufacturer’s instructions) with the work carried out by qualified and authorised personnel.

The exhaust pipe must be completely insulated up to the silencer. The insulation consists of a fibreglass needle mat and stainless-steel foil, which have to meet the following requirements.

- Fibreglass needle mat
  - Type of glass: 100 % E-glass
  - Temperature resistance: up to 600 degrees
  - Non-flammable (DIN 4102)
  - Weight: 1500 g/m² (ISO 3374)
  - Thickness: 10 mm (DIN EN ISO 5084, test area = 25 cm², test pressure = 10 g/cm²)
  - Width: 1000 mm (DIN EN 1773)

- Macrostructured nubbed steel (“NOSTAL”)
  - Stainless steel 1.4301
  - Material thickness 0.3 mm
  - Structure thickness 1.5 mm

Fig. 62-III: Exhaust pipe with insulation



1) Exhaust pipe
2) Fibreglass needle mat
3) Macrostructured nubbed steel

Damage to the exhaust-pipe insulation is to be avoided In the event of major damage, it may be necessary to replace the exhaust pipe.

Important notice
• Sensors and measuring instruments in the silencer may not be modified. • When the exhaust silencer has been relocated it must be ensured that no units are warmed by exhaust gas and that exhaust gas is not discharged in the direction of any units. • When relocating the exhaust silencer it is necessary to adapt the piping and cable harnesses (see Section 6.4.2 “Modifications to the AdBlue system”).

Bodies must be built in such a manner that the service apertures on the exhaust silencer are accessible. It must be possible to remove and replace the filter element.

6.4.2 AdBlue system

In the TGS and TGX model ranges, AdBlue is employed for exhaust-gas aftertreatment for the first time from the Euro 5 exhaust-emission class on. The main components of the system for Euro 5 vehicles are the AdBlue tank and the combined supply and metering module (see Fig. 63-III: Schematic structure of the AdBlue system in Euro 5 vehicles). In Euro 6 vehicles, the supply and metering modules form a single unit - the combined supply and metering module (see Fig. 64-III: Schematic structure of the AdBlue system in Euro 6 vehicles).

The specifications applying to Euro 5 vehicles apply analogously to TGS-WW vehicles with Euro 4 SCR and Conama P7.

6.4.2.1 Basic principles and structure of the AdBlue system

AdBlue from the supply and metering module is sprayed into the exhaust silencer by means of an injection nozzle. The AdBlue reacts with the exhaust gases, reducing the amount of pollutants they contain.

Fig. 63-III: Schematic structure of the AdBlue system in Euro 5 vehicles

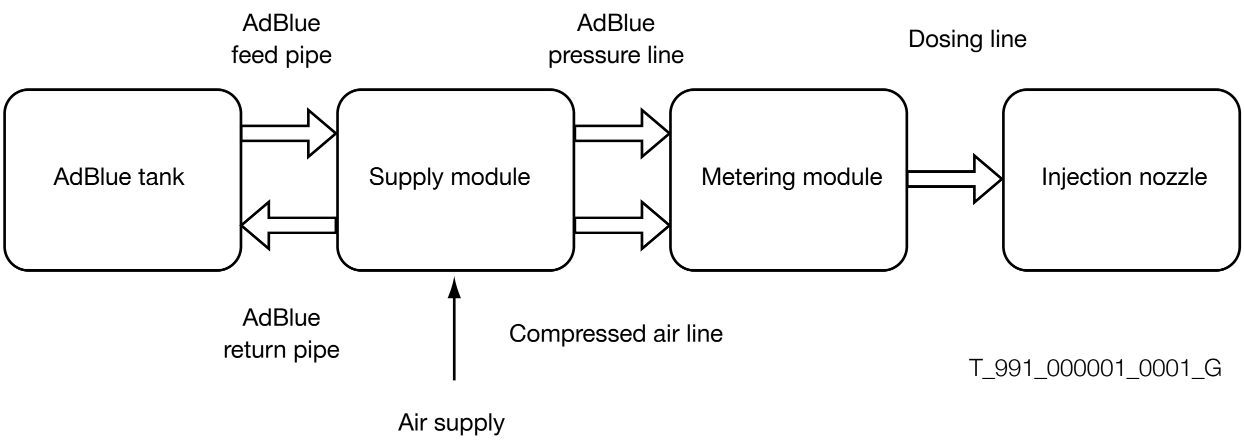
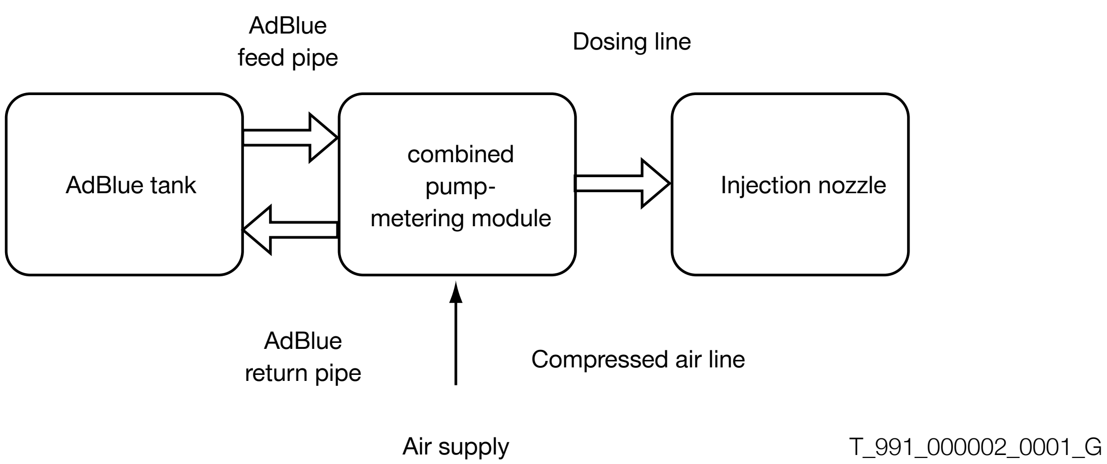
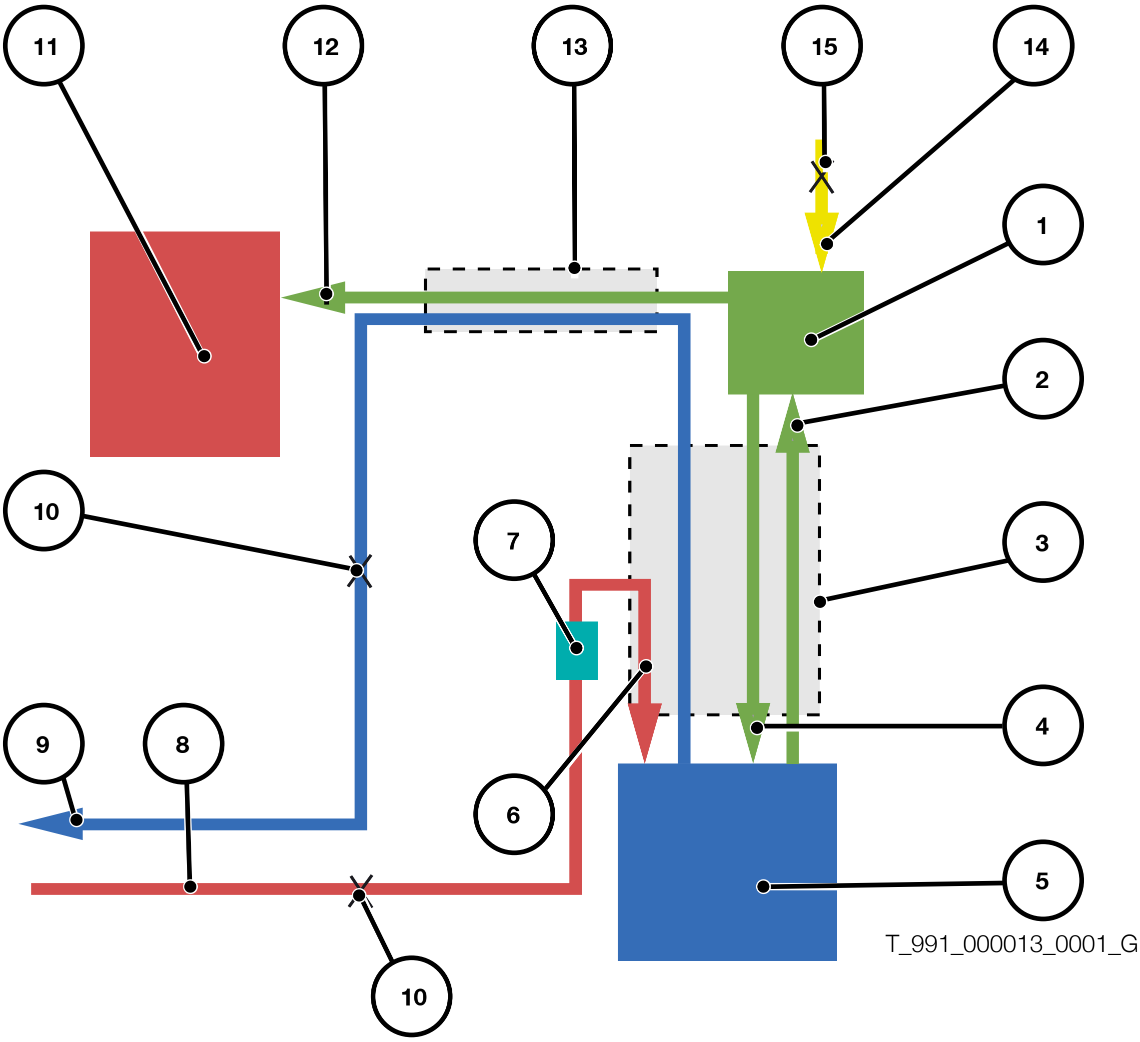


Fig. 64-III: Schematic structure of the AdBlue system in Euro 6 vehicles



The components of the AdBlue system are connected to one another by a line set. This line set contains AdBlue lines as well as heating-water lines. The lines are partly surrounded with insulation to protect those lines carrying AdBlue from the cold. In addition, warm coolant from the engine is tapped to the heating-water lines so that the system remains operational even at low temperatures (see Fig. 65-III: Schematic diagram of line routing in Euro 6 AdBlue system).

Fig. 65-III: Schematic diagram of line routing in Euro 6 AdBlue system



1) AdBlue supply module
2) AdBlue supply line from AdBlue tank to supply module
3) Insulation of line set
4) AdBlue return line from supply module to AdBlue tank
5) AdBlue tank
6) Heating-water supply line from water shut-off valve to AdBlue tank
7) Water shut-off valve near AdBlue tank
8) Heating-water supply line from cab heating connection to water shut-off valve
9) Heating-water return line from AdBlue tank to engine
10) Point of separation at which it is permissible to separate the heating-water line
11) Exhaust silencer
12) Metering line from supply module to Exhaust silencer
13) Insulation of line set
14) Compressed-air line
15) Point of separation in compressed-air line

Notes on the AdBlue system

AdBlue (DIN 70070) is the trade name for an aqueous, synthetically manufactured 32.5% urea solution that is used for exhaust gas after treatment in an SCR (selective catalytic reduction) catalytic converter.

AdBlue is non-poisonous but has a highly corrosive effect on non-stainless steels and non-ferrous metals (e.g. copper seals or electrical contacts). Similarly, plastics not resistant to AdBlue are negatively affected (e.g. electric leads or tubing). Any AdBlue that escapes must therefore be soaked up immediately and the affected area cleaned with warm tap water.

Important notice
Risk of component damage from ingress of dirt. If contaminants find their way into the AdBlue tank, components of the exhaust gas cleaning system and injection system could fail (e.g. injector nozzles could become blocked). When working on the AdBlue tank, observe strict rules of cleanliness. Cover or seal all the openings on the AdBlue system. MAN recommends using plugs for the AdBlue system (MAN item no.: 80.99607-6092) The stipulations in the repair manuals of MAN Truck & Bus AG on the MAN After Sales Portal (ASP*): www.asp.mantruckandbus.com must be considered. Registration is required.

Important notice
Under all circumstances, AdBlue must be prevented from entering the coolant circuit - for example through transposing the lines - as engine damage results.

Modifications to the AdBlue system

Due to the very sensitive sensing of the exhaust gas aftertreatment, all work must be completed with great care and strict adherence to the points that follow in this and all other relevant chapters is required.

A check must be made in advance to establish whether existing MAN variants of the AdBlue system can be used.

The following points must be observed when working on AdBlue systems:

- All conversion measures must be performed by personnel with appropriate training.
- Subsequent to all work on the supply module, the necessity of starting up the module in accordance with the repair manual must be determined, particularly in cases where the module has been relocated or replaced.
- The supply module on Euro 5 vehicles may only be relocated within the limits set down in the supply module installation overview (see Fig. 68-III: Euro 5 supply module installation overview).
- The supply module on Euro 6 vehicles may not be relocated. When relocating the AdBlue tank and exhaust silencer, the limits set down in the supply module installation overview (see Fig. 69-III Euro 6 supply module installation overview) must be adhered to.
- It is imperative to ensure that the lines are correctly connected. If AdBlue enters the cooling system there is a risk of damage to the engine.
- The heating-water supply line to the AdBlue tank may not be bundled together with the other lines.
- Lines may not be kinked and must be routed with adequately sized radii. Routing may not lead to the formation of syphons.
- Plugs on the lines may not be re-used. As a basic principle, new MAN-approved plugs must be used and tightened with the approved clamps.
- The fir-tree may not be greased when pressed into the line.
- AdBlue freezes at -11°C. If the insulation is removed - even only partially - from the line set, insulation against the cold as effective as the standard insulation must be fitted.
- Existing heating lines may not be removed.
- As a basic principle, the routing of the heating lines, in particular the heating of the metering line up to the metering module (in Euro 5 vehicles) or up to the steel pipe on the exhaust silencer (in Euro 6 vehicles), must be retained.
- The ends of the insulation must be closed off by means of suitable adhesive tape.
- The AdBlue system, in particular any plugs that have just been pressed in, must be checked to ensure that it is leaktight.

6.4.2.2 AdBlue line set

The AdBlue line set carries heating water (tapped from the engine-coolant circuit) and AdBlue. This section describes the points to be observed when adapting the line set. The maximum permissible lengths of the individual lines define the limits to which components of the AdBlue system may be relocated.

If components of the AdBlue system are relocated, it may be necessary to adapt individual lines in the AdBlue line set. Below is a description of line implementation and of which lines are affected.

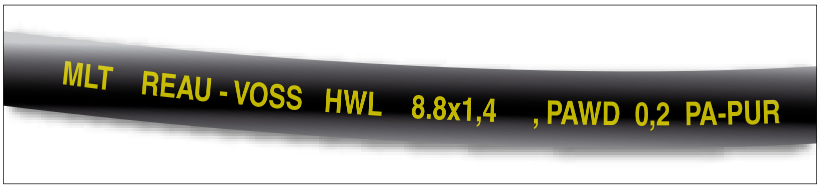
A description of line adaptation can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set”.

Vehicles complying with the Euro 5 exhaust standard

Description of the lines:

- AdBlue supply and return lines Dimensions 8.8 x 1.4 mm, made from polyamide-polyurethane, pipe col our black, lettering yellow (see Fig. 66-III: Identification of AdBlue line)
- Heating-water supply and return lines for heating the AdBlue system, dimensions: 9 x 1.5 mm, made from PH12-PHL-Y, pipe colour black, lettering white (see Fig. 67-III: Identification of heating-water line).

Fig. 66-III: Identification of AdBlue line



T_154_000001_0001_G

Fig. 67-III: Identification of heating-water line

T_154_000002_0001_G

Maximum lengths of hose pipes in AdBlue line sets:

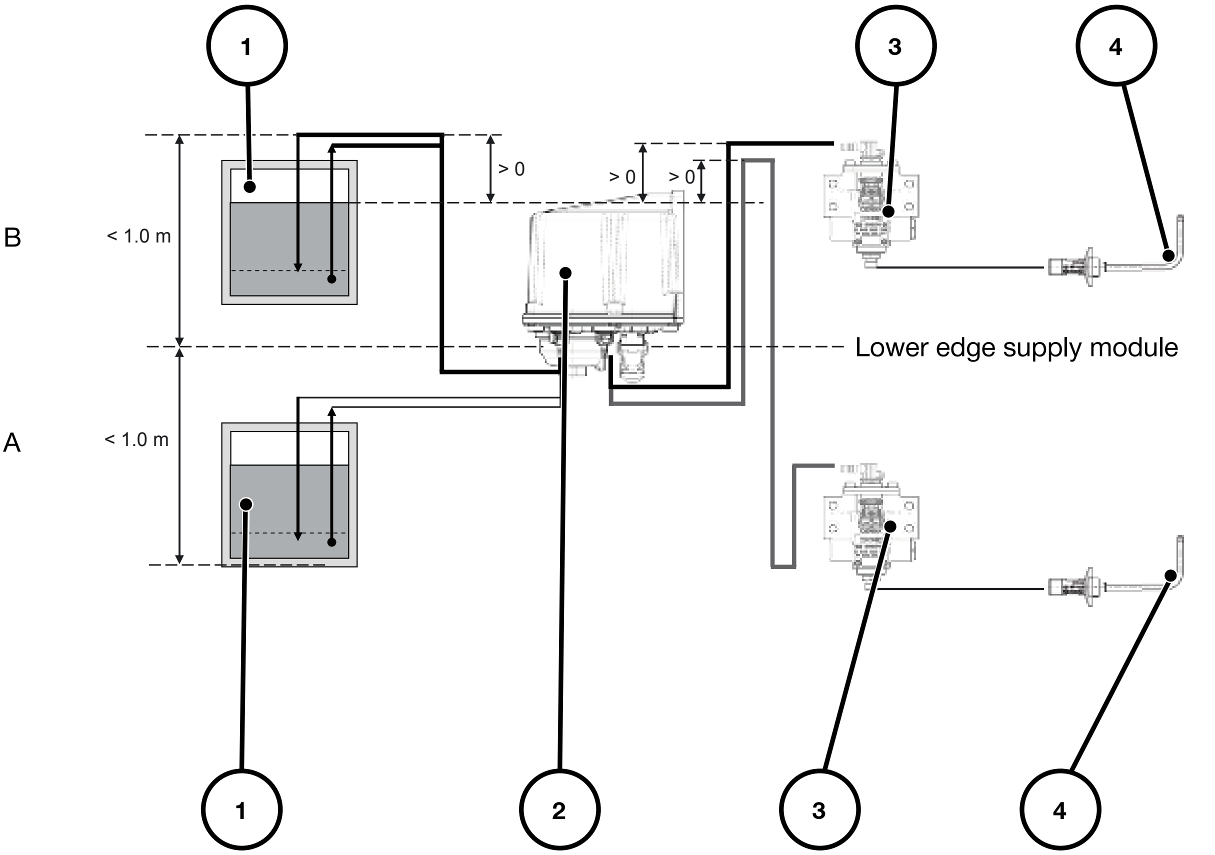
Metering line (between supply module and metering module):

- maximum 3000 mm

Lines between supply module and AdBlue tank:

- max. 6000 mm
- A difference in height of up to +1000 mm / -1000 mm is permissible for shorter lines (see Fig. 68-III: Supply module installation overview Euro 5)

Fig. 68-III: Supply module installation overview Euro 5



Quelle: Bosch - installation guidelines

T_991_000004_0001_G

1) AdBlue tank
2) Supply module
3) Metering module
4) Urea nozzle

Vehicles complying with the Euro 6 exhaust standard

Description of the lines:

- AdBlue supply and return lines, metering line
- Dimensions 3.2 x 2.65 mm, made from EPDM, hose colour black, lettering white
- Heating-water return line from water shut-off valve to AdBlue tank and heating water return line
- Dimensions 6 x 3 mm, made from EPDM, hose colour black, lettering white
- Heating-water supply line to water shut-off valve
- Dimensions 9 x 1.5 mm, made from polyamide, pipe colour black, lettering white

Minimum bending radii

- Heating-water line made from polyamide: minimum 40 mm
- Heating-water line made from EPDM: minimum 35 mm
- AdBlue line made from EPDM: minimum 17 mm
- Bundled line sets: minimum 35 mm

Maximum lengths of hose pipes in AdBlue line sets:

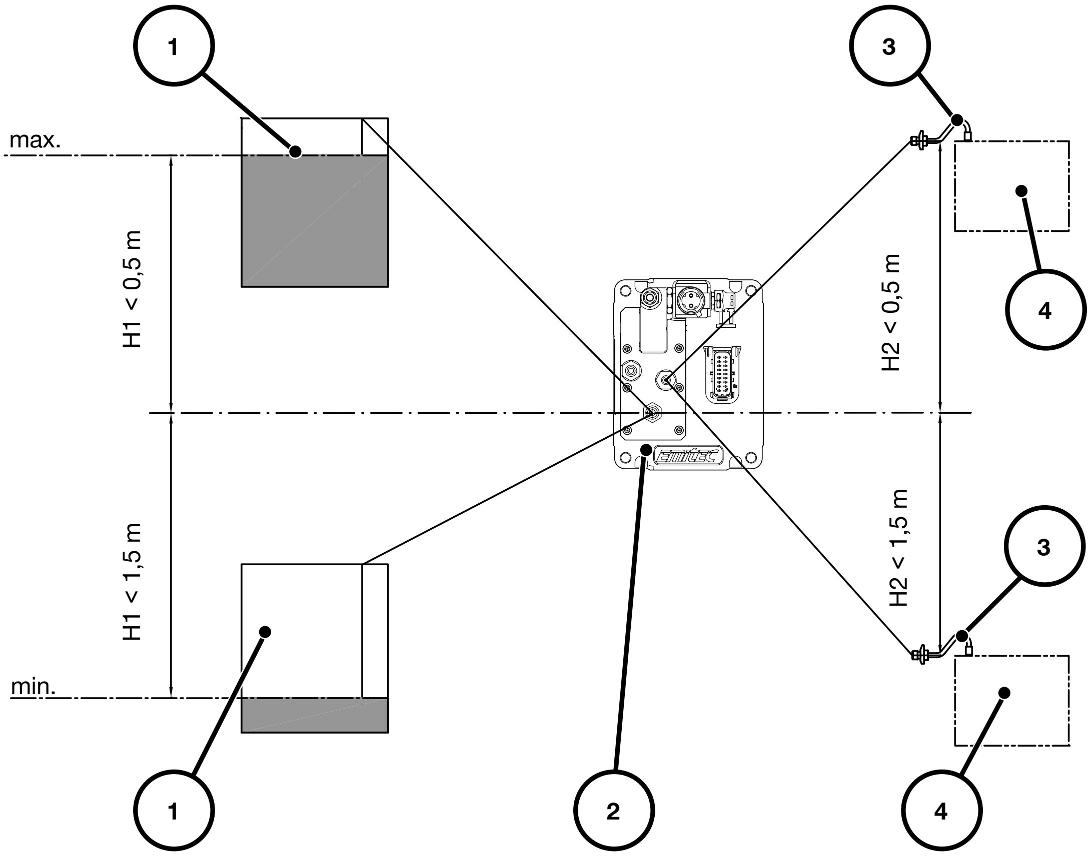
Metering line (between supply module and exhaust silencer):

- Maximum 3000 mm.
- It is recommended that the line descends towards the exhaust silencer along its entire length.
- Deposits may form in the line if it rises.

Lines between supply module and AdBlue tank:

- Maximum 4550 mm (currently the longest variant installed ex works)
- A difference of + 500 mm / - 1500 mm in height is permissible (see Fig. 69-III: Euro 6 supply module, overview of installation)

Fig. 69-III: Euro 6 supply module, overview of installation



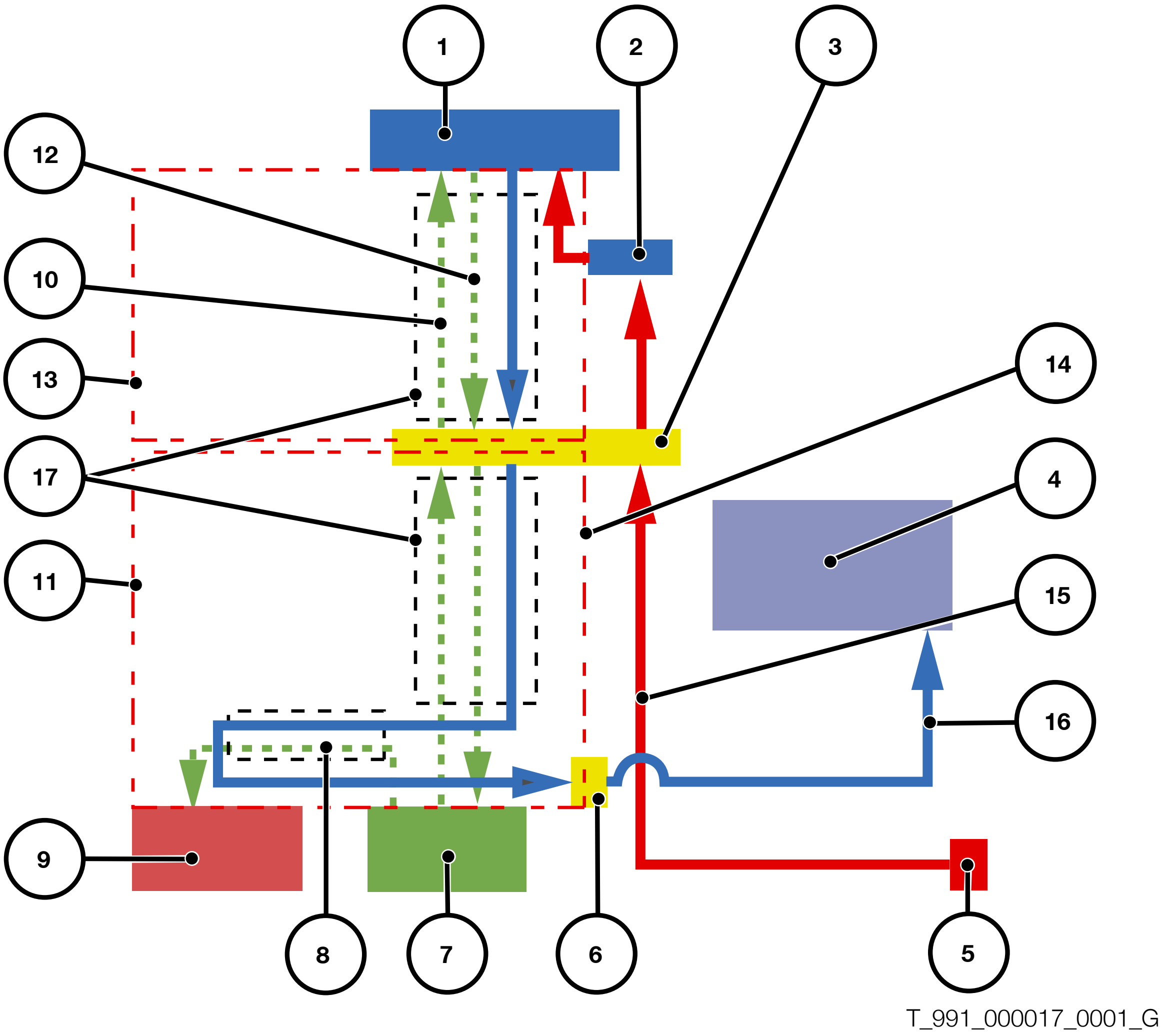
T_991_000005_0001_G

1) AdBlue tank
2) Supply module
3) Urea nozzle
4) Exhaust silencer
H1 Height of suction line between AdBlue tank and supply module
H2 Height of pressure line between supply module and urea nozzle

Relocating the AdBlue supply module, AdBlue tank and exhaust silencer

Non-all-wheel-drive vehicles (this covers all vehicles without a transfer case) are equipped with a point of separation for the lines to the AdBlue tank. The line set can be extended / shortened at this point.

Fig. 70-III: Functional diagram for Euro 6 with point of separation



1) AdBlue tank
2) Water shut-off valve
3) Point of separation between AdBlue and heating water
4) Engine
5) Connection of heating-water line to cab heating
6) Heating-water transfer point
7) Supply module
8) AdBlue metering line
9) Exhaust silencer
10) AdBlue return line
11) Supply module line set
12) AdBlue supply line
13) Tank line set
14) Line-set limit
15) Heating-water supply line
16) Heating-water return line
17) Sheathing

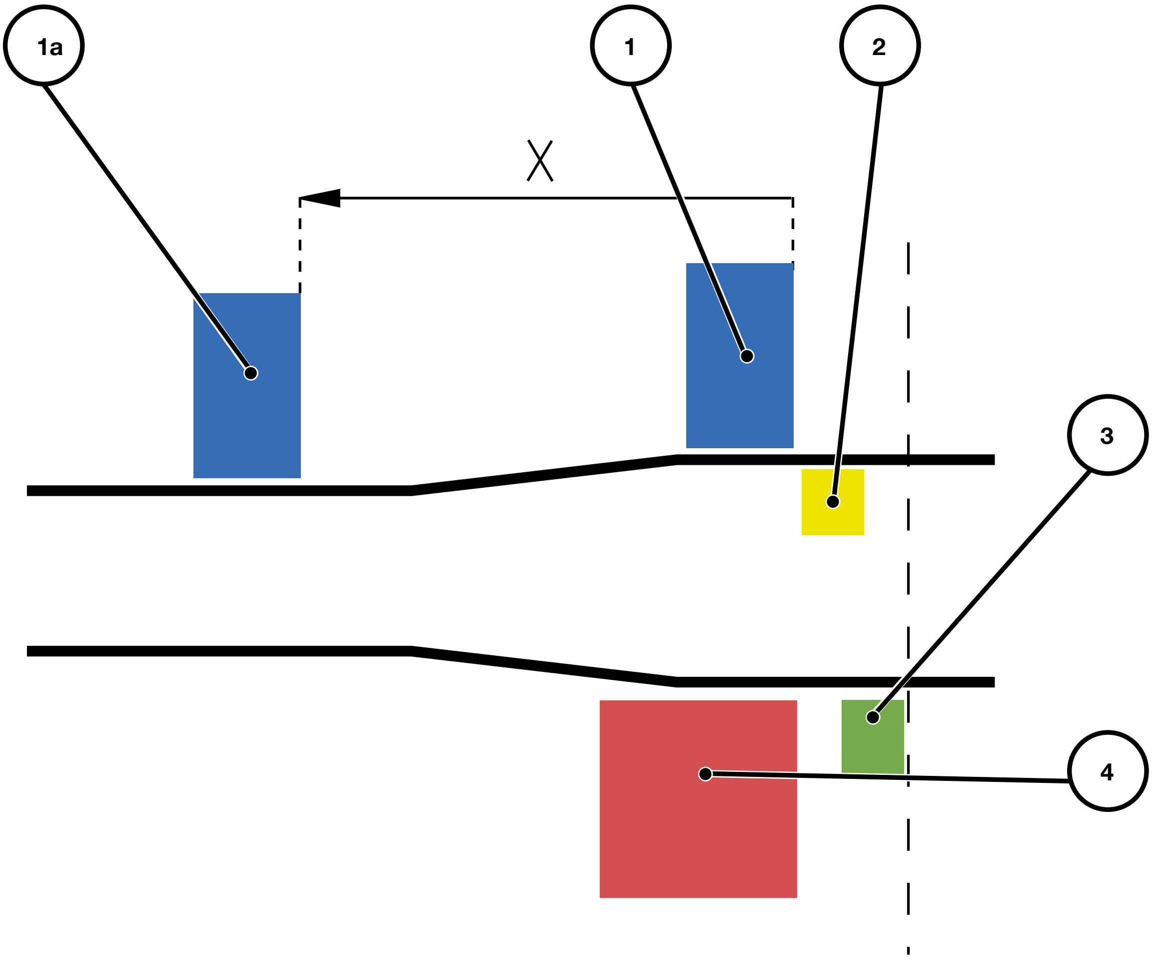
The location of the point of separation on the left frame side member on the inner side of the gearbox cross member (see Fig. 71-III: Relocating the AdBlue tank on non-all-wheel-drive vehicles) is not permitted.

Notes on adapting the line set when relocating the AdBlue tank

1.) In non-all-wheel drive vehicles (vehicles without a transfer case, AdBlue tank installed on the left side), the AdBlue tank is relocated as follows:

- Relocating the AdBlue tank as described in Section 6.4.2.3 “AdBlue tank”
- Necessary adaptations to the line set
  - When relocating the AdBlue tank towards the rear of the vehicle,
    - the factory fitted line set must be replaced with the longest MAN line set available, which must then be shortened.
    - (Obtainable from the MAN Spare-parts Service; MAN item no: 81.15400.6116)
    - The heating-water supply line to the water shut-off valve must be replaced with the longest MAN line available, which must then be shortened if necessary.
    - (Obtainable from the MAN Spare-parts Service; MAN item no: 81.15407.6027)
  - When relocating the AdBlue tank towards the cab,
    - the factory fitted line set may be shortened,
    - the factory fitted heating-water supply line may be shortened.
  - Lines here may only be shortened at the point of separation.
  - When relocating the AdBlue tank to the right side, the description in Point 2 of this sub-section must be observed.
- A description of line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set”.
- Information on adapting the electrical wiring can be found in Section 6.4.2.5, “AdBlue cable harness”.

Fig. 71-III: Relocating the AdBlue tank on non-all-wheel-drive vehicles



1)	AdBlue tank in standard location
1a)	Relocated AdBlue tank
2)	Point of separation
3)	Supply module
4)	Exhaust silencer
X	Distance by which unit is moved; maximum lengths must be observed

Fig. 72-III: Connections at the point of separation

T_152_000005_0001_G

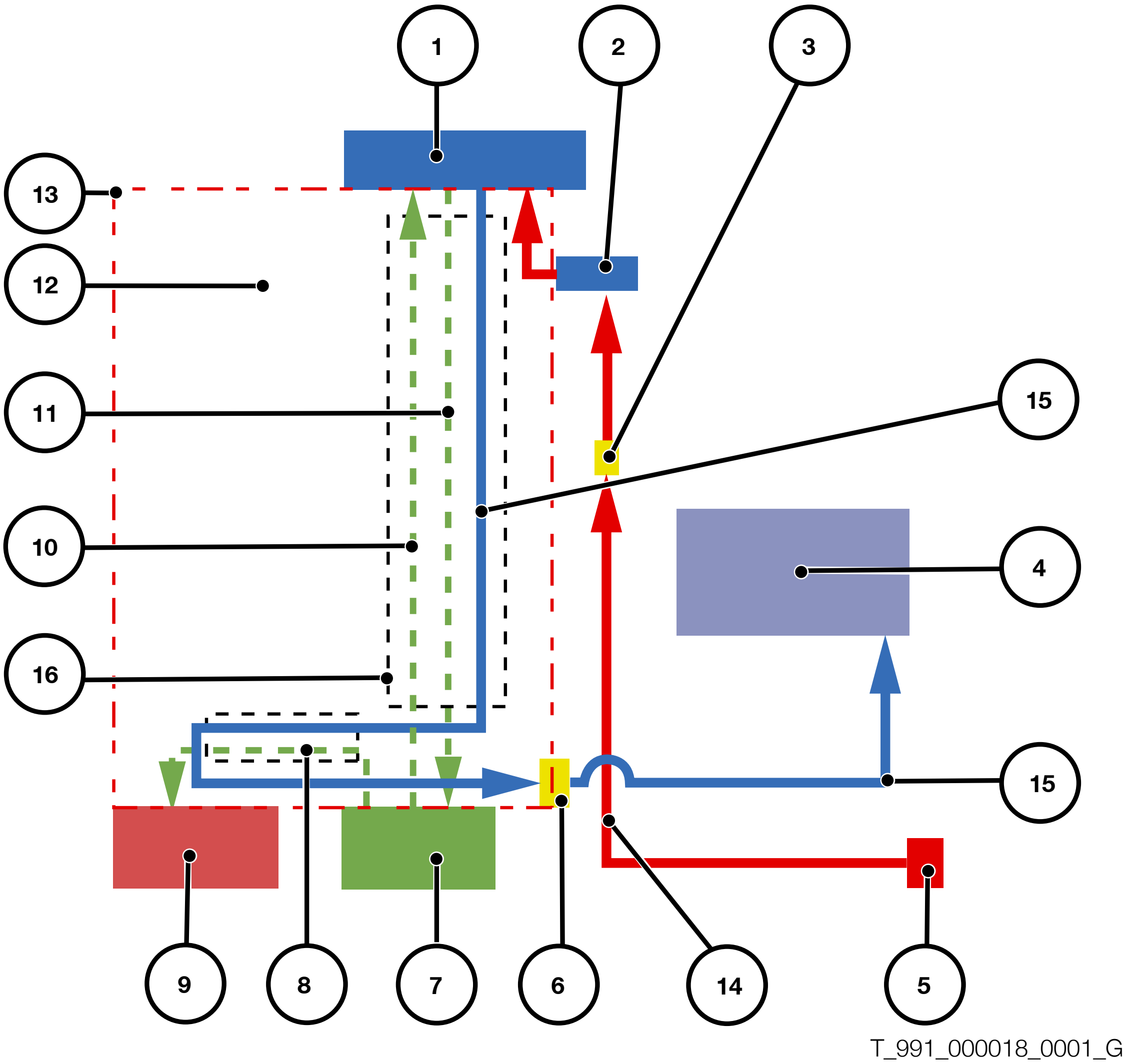
2.) All-wheel-drive vehicles (this covers all vehicles with transfer case) are not equipped with points of separation on the AdBlue line set (see Fig. 73-III Functional diagram for Euro 6 without point of separation). The only permissible standard location of the AdBlue tank is on the left side of the vehicle.

In both all-wheel- and non-all-wheel-drive vehicles it is possible to relocate the AdBlue tank to the right side (see Fig. 74-III: Relocating the AdBlue tank on all-wheel and non-all-wheel-drive vehicles).

The longest MAN line set available is to be used and adapted for this purpose (obtainable from the MAN Spare-parts Service, MAN item nos. can be found in Table 19-III: Longest AdBlue cable harness in dependence on cab and exhaust).

Any shortening of lines that may be necessary is to be carried out on the AdBlue tank connection.
The heating-water line from the water-shut-off valve to the AdBlue tank must be retained.

Fig. 73-III: Functional diagram for Euro 6 without point of separation

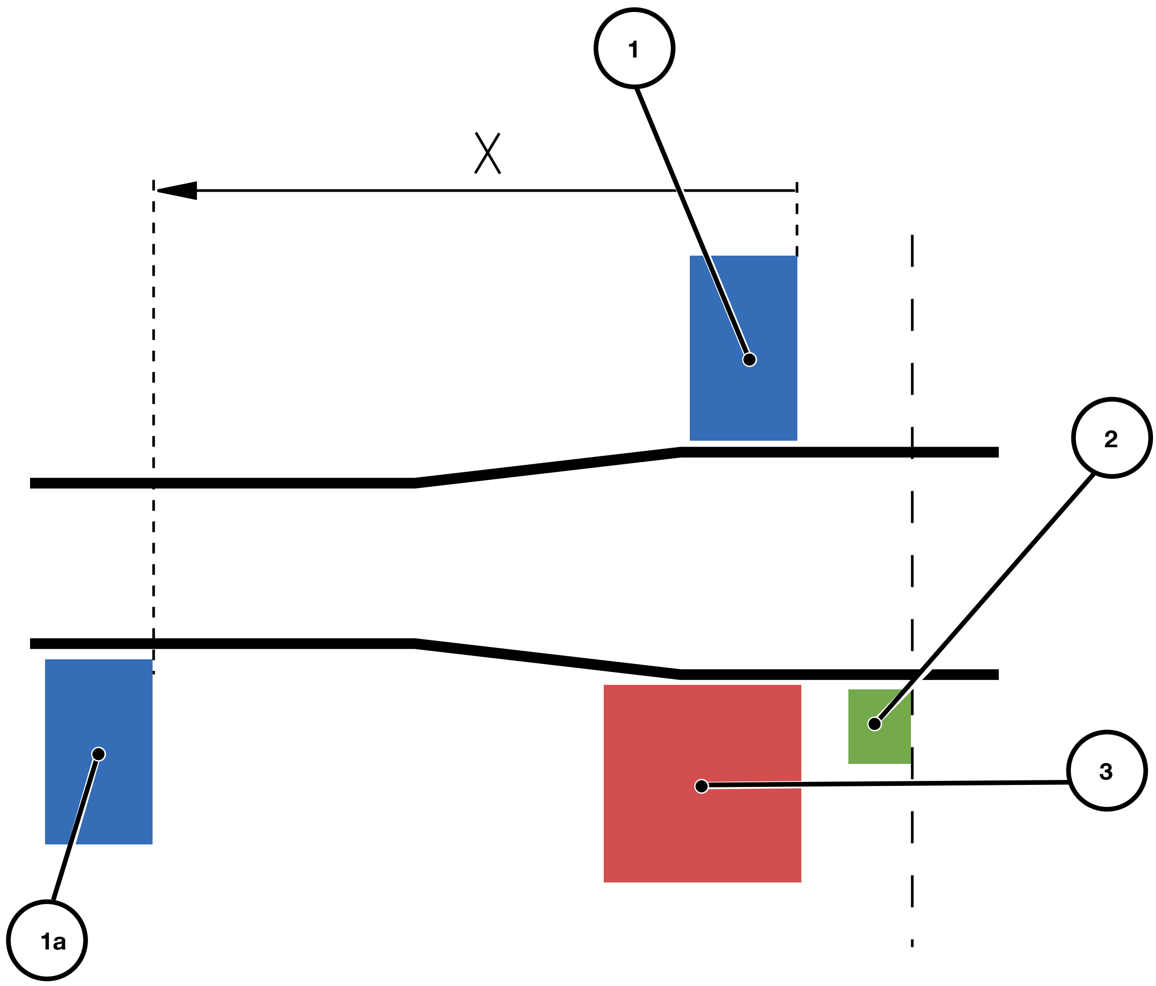


1) AdBlue tank
2) Water shut-off valve
3) Heating-water point of separation (can be dispensed with for own construction)
4) Engine
5) Connection of heating-water line to cab heating
6) Heating-water transfer point
7) Supply module
8) AdBlue metering line
9) Exhaust silencer
10) AdBlue return line
11) AdBlue supply line
12) Tank line set
13) Line-set limit
14) Heating-water supply line
15) Heating-water return line
16) Sheathing

Table 19-III: Longest AdBlue cable harness in dependence on cab and exhaust

MAN part no.	Cab variant	Exhaust variant	Distance between supply module and tank
81.15400.6121	M cab	Ground-directed discharge	Approx. 2500 mm
81.15400.6123	M cab	Directed upwards	Approx. 2500 mm
81.15400.6120	L cab LX cab XL cab XLX cab XXL cab	Ground-directed discharge	Approx. 2300 mm
81.15400.6142	L cab LX cab XL cab XLX cab XXL cab	Directed upwards	Approx. 2300 mm

Fig. 74-III: Relocating the AdBlue tank on all-wheel and non-all-wheel-drive vehicles



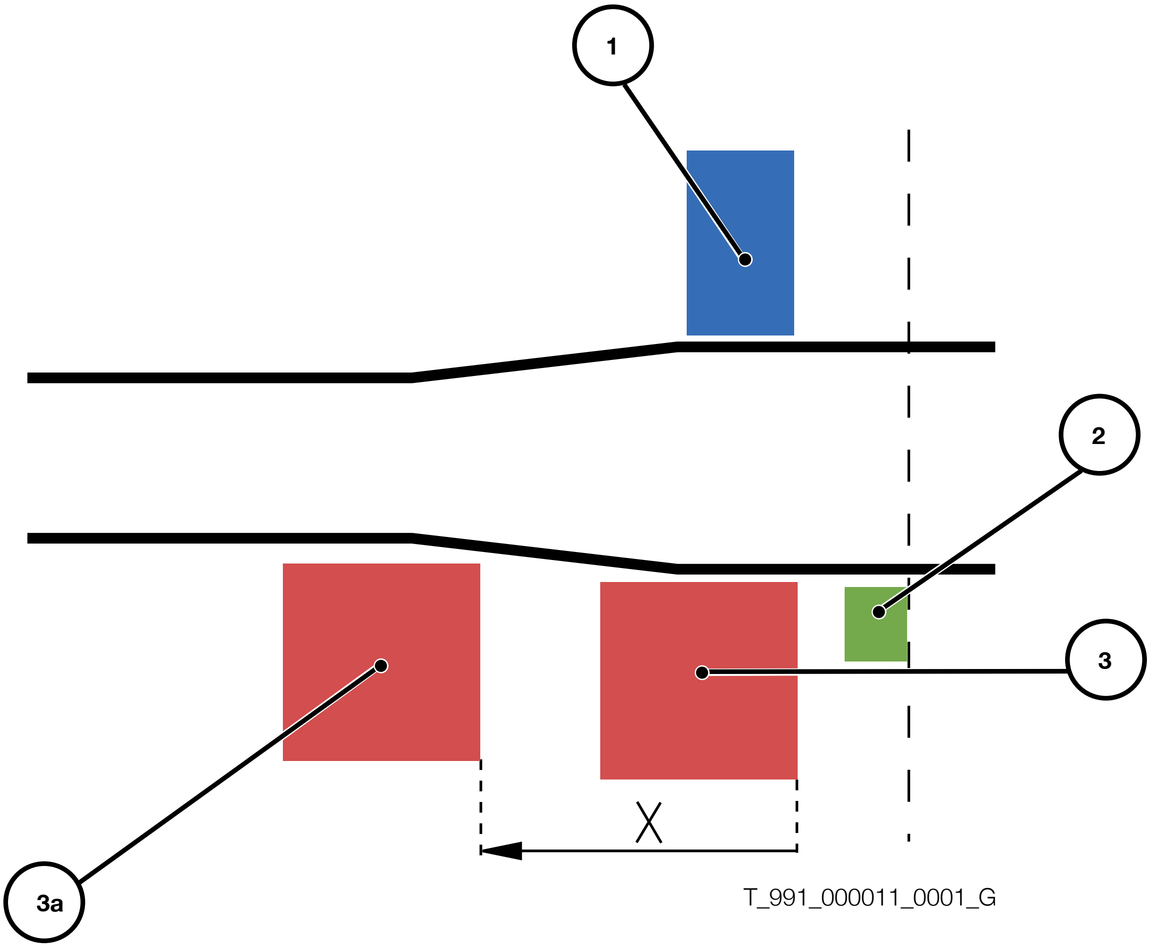
T_991_000010_0001_G

1) AdBlue tank in standard location
1a) Relocated AdBlue tank
2) Supply module
3) Exhaust silencer
X Distance by which unit is moved; maximum lengths must be observed

Notes on adapting the line set when relocating the exhaust silencer

- Relocating the exhaust silencer as described in Section 6.4.2
- Necessary adaptations to the line set:
  - Shorten or construct a new metering line from supply module to exhaust silencer.
  - Shorten or construct a new heating-water line to heat the metering line.
  - Bundle and sheathe the above-mentioned lines up to the steel pipe on the exhaust silencer with Co-flex double-walled corrugated tubing system.
  - Shorten or construct a new heating-water return line to the engine.
- A description of line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set”.
- Information on adapting the electrical cable harness can be found in Section 6.4.2.5, “AdBlue cable harness”.

Fig. 75-III: Relocating the exhaust silencer on all-wheel and non-all-wheel-drive vehicles



1) AdBlue tank
2) Supply module
3) Exhaust silencer in standard location
3a) Relocated exhaust silencer
X Distance by which unit is moved; maximum lengths must be observed

Extending / shortening the AdBlue and heating-water lines:

As a basic principle, the longest line sets described above in the sub-section “Relocating the AdBlue supply module, AdBlue tank and exhaust silencer” shall be employed and adapted if necessary. If the line sets available ex works are inadequate, consult MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

Below is a description of which parts are necessary in order to construct individual lines from the AdBlue line set. The parts can be ordered from the MAN Spare-parts Service. The individual parts are listed in Section 6.4.2.6 “Parts list”. When constructing individual lines, the maximum line lengths specified above must be adhered to.

Vehicles complying with the Euro 5 exhaust standard

Extensions for relocating the AdBlue tank or the combi tank can be achieved by procuring the longest line set or one suitable for installation. These can be procured from the MAN Spare-parts Service. The line set may be shortened by shortening at the interface to the AdBlue supply module. Alternatively, it may be routed so that covers a longer distance. Under no circumstances may the lines from the tank to the supply module be longer than 6000 mm.

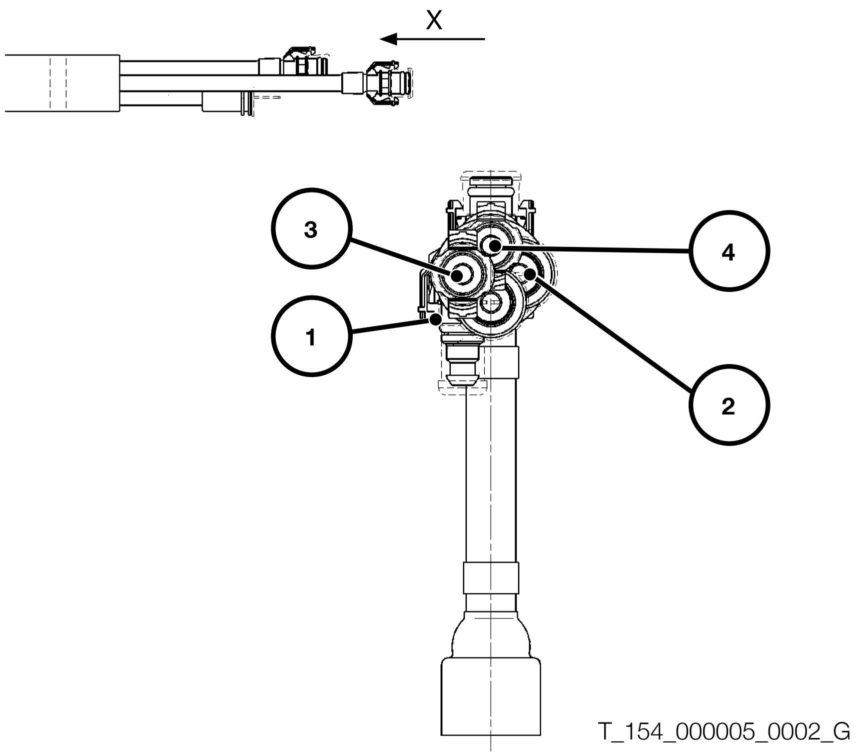
- Generally only pipe-to-pipe unions with pipe connectors manufactured by VOSS are permitted
- (obtainable from the MAN Spare-parts Service).
- Inserting the pipe connector is only permitted using a special tool from Voss (crimping pliers MAN no.80.99625.0023).
- In order to minimise pressure losses a maximum of only one extension is permissible for each corresponding heating-water/AdBlue supply or return line.

Fig. 76-III: VOSS connector for extending/shortening the AdBlue and heating-water lines

T_154_000004_0001_G

- Only pre-fitted plastic plugs with 1000 mm of line from VOSS are permitted for pressing onto the AdBlue lines (obtainable from the MAN Spare-parts Service).
- It is imperative to avoid kinking the lines.
- It is imperative that the lines are insulated against cold in as effective a manner as the original lines.

Fig. 77-III: View of a line bundle showing heating-water and AdBlue lines



1) Heating pipe - feed
2) Heating pipe - return
3) AdBlue return line
4) AdBlue feed line

Vehicles complying with the Euro 6 exhaust standard

Additional notes on adapting line sets.

- Additional points of separation in the lines of the AdBlue line set are not permitted.
- Only non-all-wheel-drive vehicles (vehicles without transfer case) are equipped with points of separation in the lines.
- AdBlue lines must be constructed in a single piece from plug to plug.
- Lines can be obtained by the metre from the MAN Spare-parts Service.
- Do not disassemble the heating-water supply-line plug to the water shut-off valve (Fig. 78-III: Connection of heating-water supply line to water shut-off valve). Extension of heating-water supply line only in the area of the polyamide pipe from engine to water shut-off valve.

Fig. 78-III: Connection of heating-water supply line to water shut-off valve

T_154_000023_0001_G

- Parts kit for constructing an AdBlue metering line
  - Metering line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0092)
  - VOSS straight plug (on supply module) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6036)
  - VOSS elbow plug (on exhaust silencer) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6037)
  - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700004)

- Parts kit for constructing an AdBlue supply line
  - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6042)
  - VOSS connector pin (at the point of separation) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6039)
  - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700004)

- Parts kit for constructing an AdBlue return line
  - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6041)
  - VOSS straight plug (at the point of separation) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6036)
  - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700004)

- Parts kit for constructing a heating-water supply line
  - Heating-water line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0090)
  - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6027)
  - VOSS elbow plug (on water shut-off valve) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6015) or
  - VOSS straight plug (on water shut-off valve) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6004)
  - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 167000014)

- Parts kit for constructing a heating-water return line
  - Heating-water line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0090)
  - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6035)
  - VOSS straight plug (at the point of separation) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6044)
  - VOSS connector pin (at the point of separation) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6038)
  - VOSS straight plug – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6044)
  - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700014)

- Parts kit for constructing heating lines from the water shut-off valve
  - Heating line – polyamide pipe, dimensions 9 x 1.5 - (MAN item no.: 04.35160.9709)
  - Straight connector – (MAN item no.: 81.98181.0201)

- Parts kit for constructing a compressed-air line to the water shut-off valve
  - Compressed-air line – polyamide pipe as per DIN 74324 Part 1 or MAN standard M 3230 Part 1
  - Straight connector – (MAN item no.: 81.98181.6043)

- Parts kit for constructing sheathing / insulation
  - Double-walled Co-flex corrugated tubing
  - or zip material (special pliers must be used for this)

6.4.2.3 AdBlue tank

This section describes the points to be observed when modifying the AdBlue tank. When relocating AdBlue tanks, the line lengths specified in Section 6.4.2.2 “AdBlue line set” must be adhered to.

Installing a larger AdBlue tank

MAN offers variously sized AdBlue tanks for every model range as equipment variants ex works. Retrofitting a larger AdBlue tank is possible if MAN has approved it for the respective model range. In such cases, professional and correct modification by trained personnel is assumed.

It there is a change in volume to the AdBlue tank, then parameterisation via a MAN service outlet is necessary.

Comply with the MAN repair guidelines.

Relocating the AdBlue tank

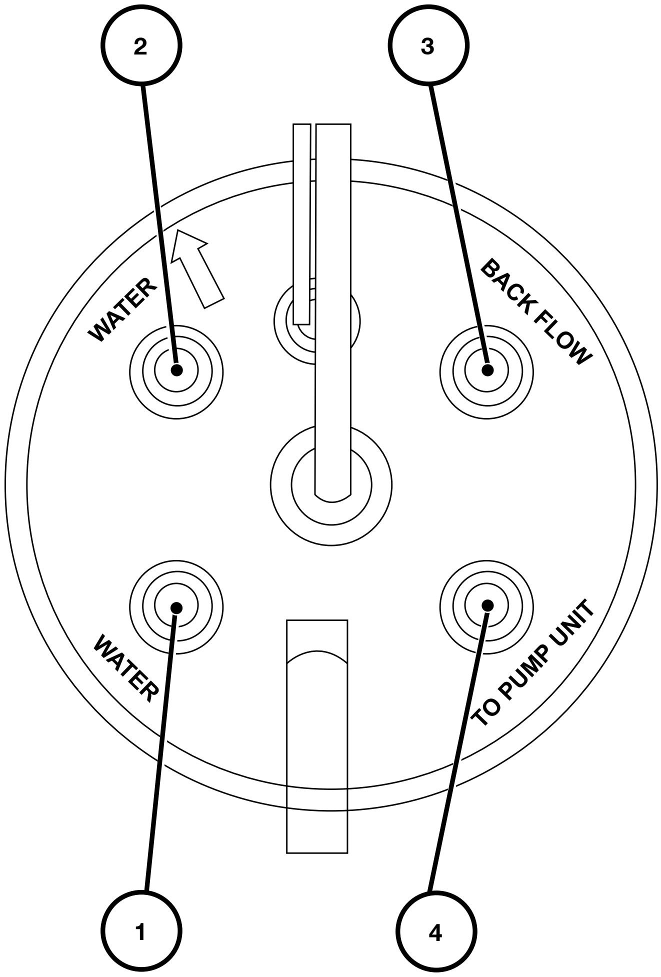
Depending on the body concept it may be necessary to relocate the AdBlue tank. The section below describes the points to be observed in this regard.

When the AdBlue tank is relocated the original bracket must be employed. If the AdBlue tank is relocated to the frame bend, any possible tilt must be compensated for by spacer sleeves, for example.

AdBlue tanks are equipped with four connections for lines: two (supply and return) for heating water and two (supply and return) for AdBlue. The lines are individually identified as described in the sub-sections below.

Before the vehicle is commissioned it is imperative to make sure that all the lines are correctly connected. If AdBlue enters the coolant it will cause damage to the engine (Fig. 79-III: Line connections on the AdBlue tank).

Fig. 79-III: Line connections on the AdBlue tank



T_991_000014_0001_G

1) Heating-water supply
2) Heating-water return
3) AdBlue return
4) AdBlue supply

A description of line adaptation can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set”.

Vehicles complying with the Euro 5 exhaust standard

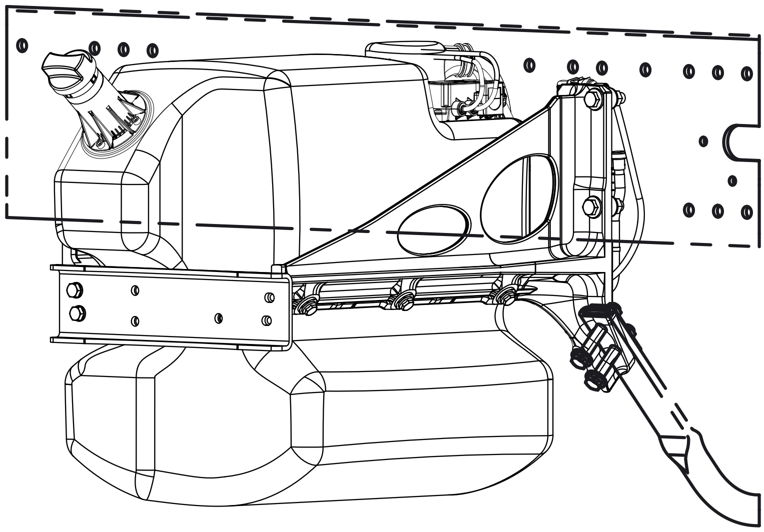
In addition, the following must be observed:

- Relocation of combination/single tanks may only be carried out using the original MAN tanks.
- Routing of electrical and CAN wiring (e.g. for fill-level sensor, supply module, OBD sensors) is permitted only with Genuine MAN cable harnesses (obtainable from the MAN Spare-parts Service).

Vehicles complying with the Euro 6 exhaust standard

The vehicle's exhaust silencer is supported by a cross strut on the AdBlue tank bracket (see Fig. 80-III: AdBlue tank with bracket and exhaust-silencer cross strut).

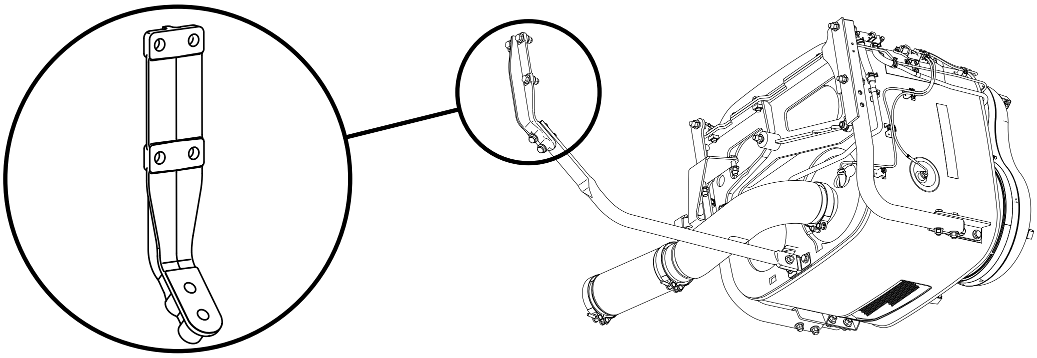
Fig. 80-III: AdBlue tank with bracket and exhaust-silencer cross strut



T_122_000001_0001_G

If only the AdBlue tank is relocated, the cross strut must be supported by means of a special bracket. This bracket can be obtained from the MAN Spare-parts Service (MAN item no.: 81.15502.0288). (See Fig. 81-III: Bracket for exhaust-silencer cross strut for relocated AdBlue tank.)

Fig. 81-III: Bracket for exhaust-silencer cross strut for relocated AdBlue tank



T_151_000008_0001_G

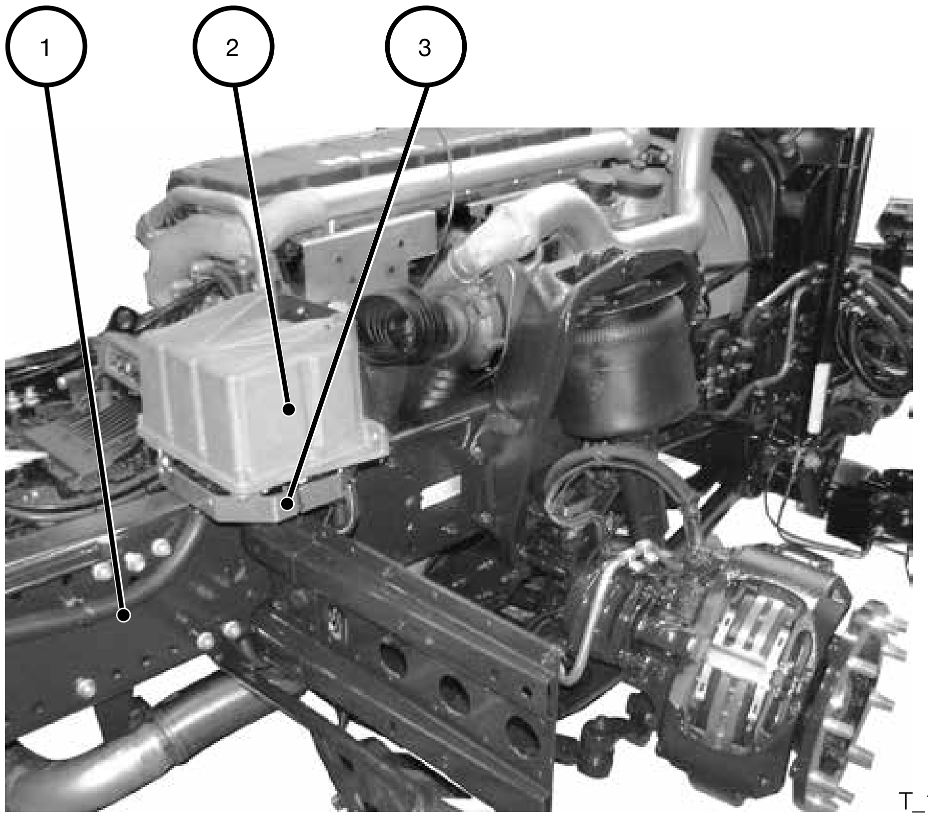
6.4.2.4 AdBlue supply module

This section describes the positions in which the supply module is fitted by the factory and what points must be observed when relocating the supply module.
The supply module on the TGS and TGX model ranges is assembled separately from the AdBlue tank. In vehicles complying with the Euro 5 exhaust standard, the supply and metering modules are two separate parts. In vehicles complying with the Euro 6 exhaust standard, the supply and metering modules are combined to form a single part.

Vehicles complying with the Euro 5 exhaust standard

Important notice
The supply module may only be relocated to original MAN installation locations using the associated Genuine MAN brackets. Reason: strength / vibrations

Fig. 82-III: Supply module and Genuine MAN bracket



T_151_000030_0001_G

1) AdBlue cable harness to AdBlue- Tank
2) Supply module
3) Genuine MAN bracket

In addition, the following must be observed:

- When relocating the supply module, Genuine MAN lines sets must be used to connect the metering module.
- The maximum possible difference in height (head) between the bottom edge of the supply module and the bottom edge of the tank is 1000 mm (see Fig. 68-III: Installation overview).
- The maximum possible difference in height (head) between the bottom edge of the supply module and the upper edge of the tank (or location of uppermost line) is 1000 mm (see Fig. 68-III: Installation overview).
- Non-compliance with specifications voids any claims under guarantee.
- Access for service as per the respectively applicable MAN specifications on service and consumables must be possible.

The chassis drawing shows the series-production status of a base vehicle without special equipment. Where special equipment is fitted, such as other tanks, auxiliary compressed-air tanks for air suspension or for adapting to ramps / engaging with swap bodies or exhaust-silencer variants with upswept tailpipe, from case to case the location of the supply module will possibly deviate from the standard location.

Table 20-III and Table 21-III define the respective location of the supply module on trucks and semitrailer tractors depending on wheel configuration, cab and optional equipment.

The supply module position assigned to the variant is shown in Fig. 83-III to Fig. 93-III.

Table 20-III: Possible locations for the AdBlue supply module on trucks:

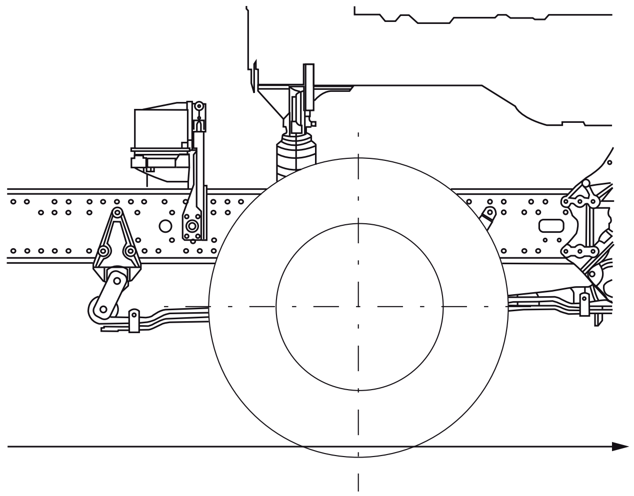
Wheel configuration	Cab	Fuel tank	Exhaust	Variant	Supplementary information
4x2, 4x4H, 6x2/2, 6x2/4, 6x2-2, 6x2-4, 6x4H-2, 6x4H-4, 6x4, 6x6H	L - XXL	AdBlue single tank	Exhaust on left side, standard	1	Important! Also for M cab when equipped with auxiliary tank for air suspension for matching to ramps / engaging with swap bodies
4x2, 4x4H, 6x2/2, 6x2/4, 6x2-2, 6x2-4, 6x4H-2, 6x4H-4, 6x4, 6x6H 6X4H/2, 6X4H/4	M - XXL	AdBlue / diesel combination tank	Exhaust on left side, standard	2	Important! Change to Variant 1 when equipped with auxiliary tank for air suspension for matching to ramps / engaging with swap bodies 6x4, 6x6H, 6x4H-4 (71S) since June 2010
6x4, 6x6H, 6X4H-4	M	AdBlue / diesel combination tank	Exhaust on left side, standard	3	6x4, 6x6H, 6x4H-4 (71S) up to May 2010
4x2, 4x4H, 6x2/2, 6x2/4, 6x2-2, 6x2-4, 6x4H-2, 6x4H-4, 6x4, 6x6H		AdBlue / diesel combination tank	Exhaust with upswept tailpipe		
8x4-4		All variants	All variants		
4x2, 4x4H, 6x4, 6x6H, 6x2-2, 6x2-4, 6x4H-2, 6x4H-4, 6x2/2, 6x2/4 4x4, 6x4-4, 6x6		AdBlue single tank	All variants		
8x2-4, 8x2-6, 8x4, 8x4H-6, 8x6, 8x6H, 8x8	M	AdBlue single tank	All variants	4	Only possible with AdBlue single tank
4x2, 4x4H, 6x2/2, 6x2/4, 6x2-2, 6x2-4, 6x4H-2, 6x4H-4, 6x4, 6x6H	L - XXL	All variants	Exhaust with upswept tailpipe	5	
8x2-4, 8x2-6, 8x4, 8x4H-6, 8x6, 8x6H, 8x8	L - LX	AdBlue single tank	All variants	6	Only possible with AdBlue single tank

Table 21-III: Possible locations for the AdBlue supply module on semitrailer tractors

Wheel configuration	Cab	Fuel tank	Exhaust	Variant	Supplementary information
4x2, 4x4H, 6x2-2, 6x2-4, 6x4, 6x6H	M - XXL	All variants	Exhaust on left side, standard	1	Body restriction possible with M cab, e.g.: Crane behind cab or swap-body semitrailer tractor/truck
6x2/2, 6x2/4, 6x2-4, 6x4H-2, 6x4H-4		Single tank			
4x2, 4x4H, 6x2/2, 6x2/4, 6x2-2, 6x2-4, 6x4H-2, 6x4H-4, 6x4, 6x6H	M	Combination tank	Exhaust with upswept tailpipe	3	Body restriction possible For example: crane behind cab or swap-body semitrailer tractor/truck
4x2, 4x4H, 6x4, 6x6H, 4x4, 6x6		Single tank			
4x4, 6x4-4, 6x6			Exhaust on left side, standard		
4x2, 4x4H, 6x2-2, 6x4, 6x6H	L - LX	All variants	Exhaust with upswept tailpipe	5	Body restriction possible For example: crane behind cab or swap-body semitrailer tractor/truck
6x2/2, 6x2/4, 6x2-4					
4x4, 6x4-4, 6x6					

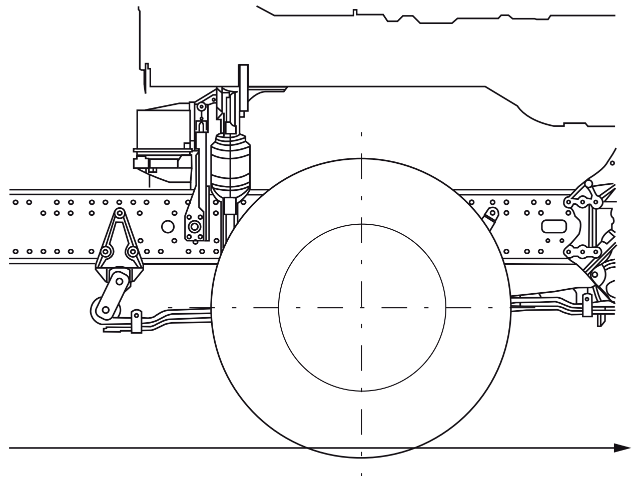
Variant 1

Fig. 83-III: Transverse above frame top edge, M cab



T_154_000009_0001_G

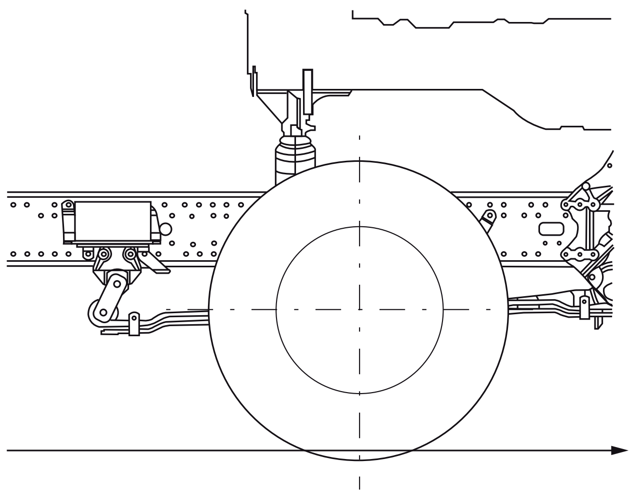
Fig. 84-III: Transverse above frame top edge, L-XXL cab



T_154_000010_0001_G

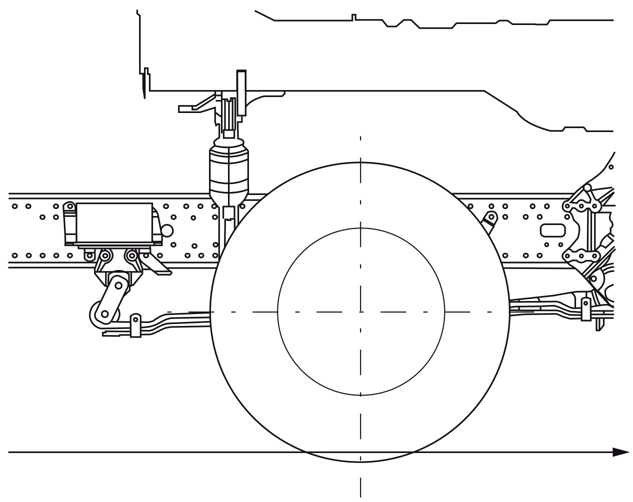
Variant 2

Fig. 85-III: Longitudinal on frame, M cab



T_154_000011_0001_G

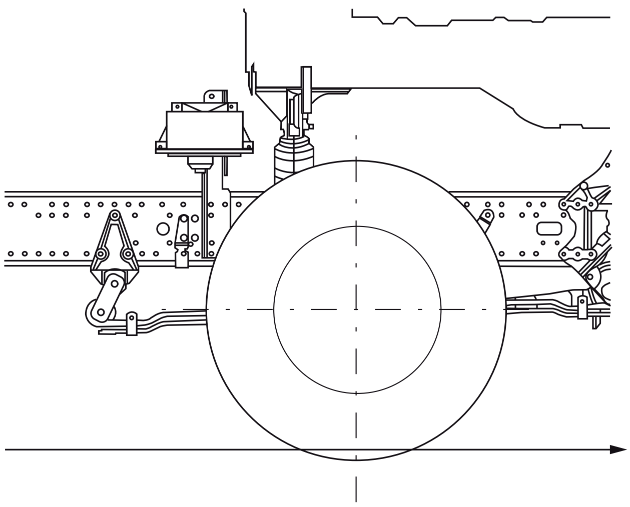
Fig. 86-III: Longitudinal on frame, L-XXL cab



T_154_000012_0001_G

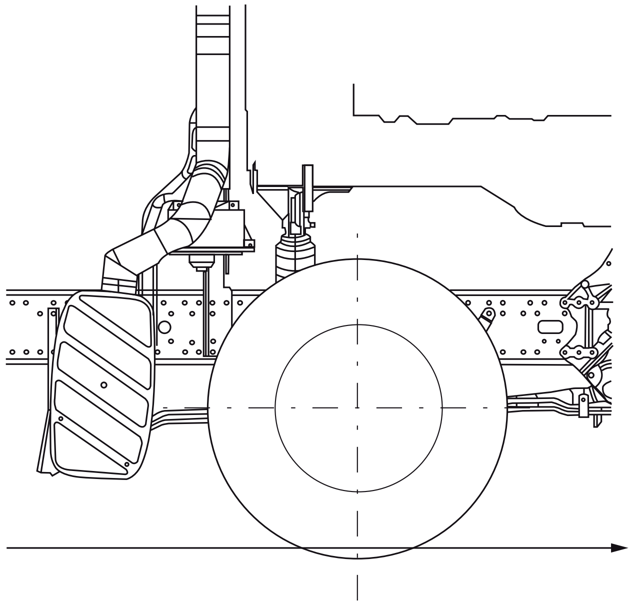
Variant 3

Fig. 87-III: Longitudinal above frame top edge, M cab on left side as standard



T_154_000013_0001_G

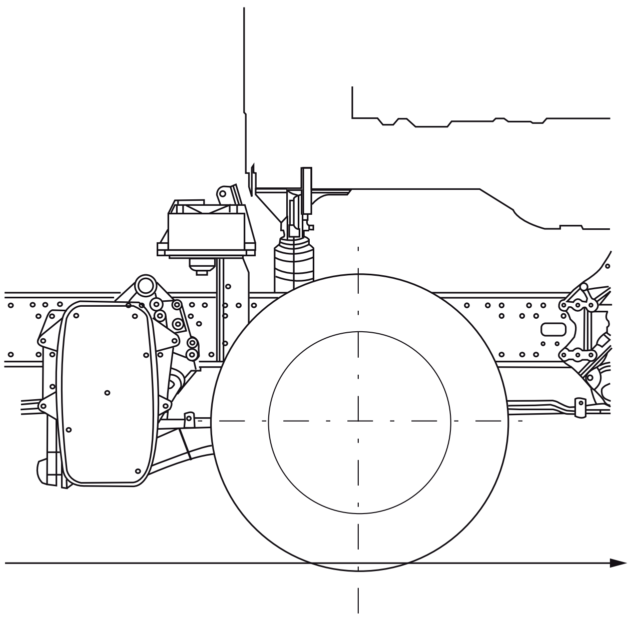
Fig. 88-III: Longitudinal above frame top edge, M cab, exhaust with upswept tailpipe



T_154_000014_0001_G

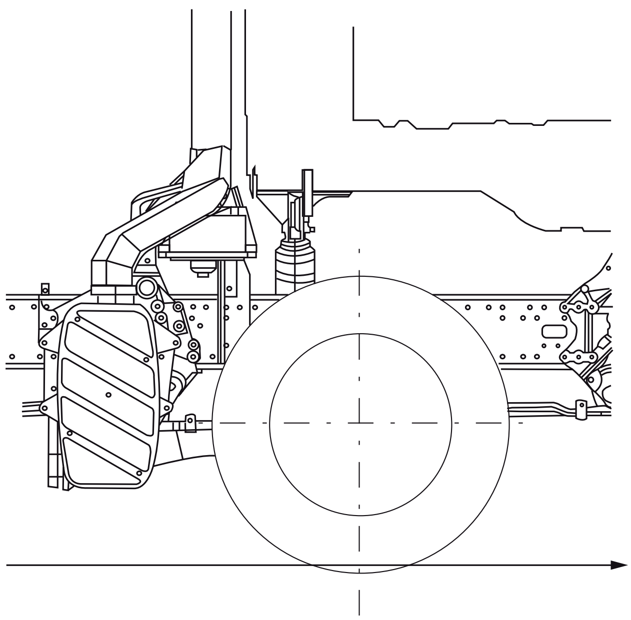
Variant 4

Fig. 89-III: Longitudinal above frame, exhaust on right side exhaust on right side, C cab



T_154_000015_0001_G

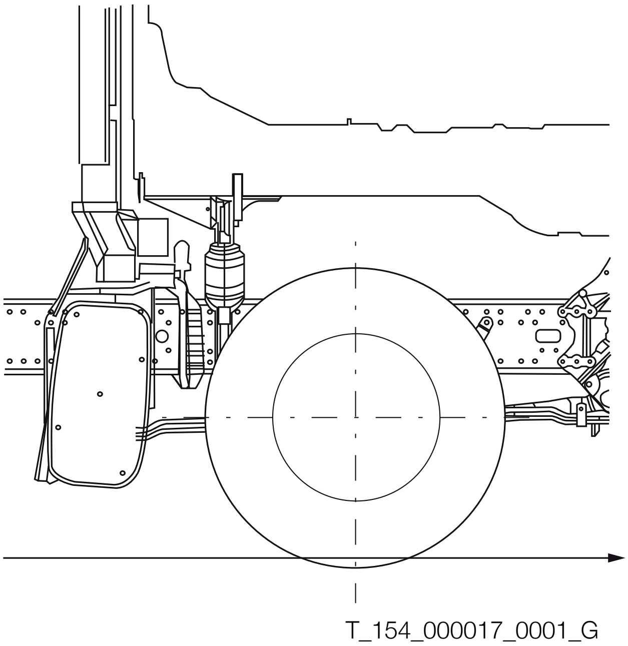
Fig. 90-III: Longitudinal above frame, exhaust with upswept tailpipe, C cab



T_154_000016_0001_G

Variant 5

Fig. 91-III: L-XXL cab, exhaust with upswept tailpipe



Variant 6

Fig. 92-III: L-LX cab, transverse above frame top edge, rotated 180°, exhaust on right side

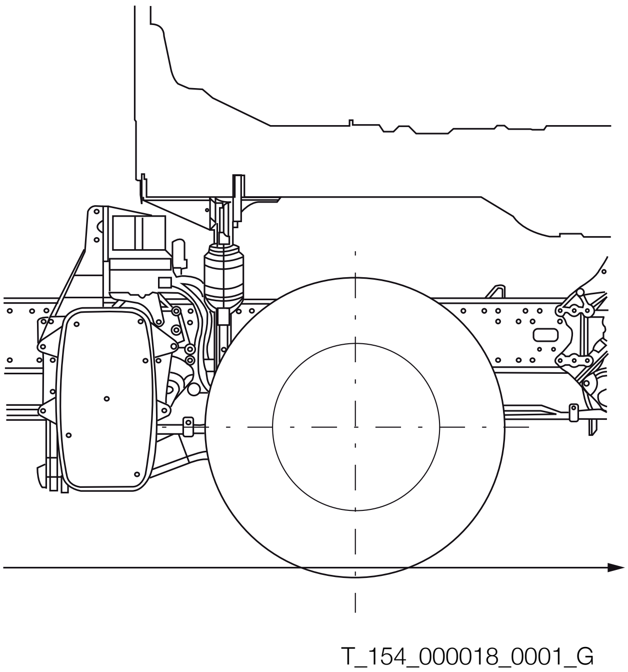
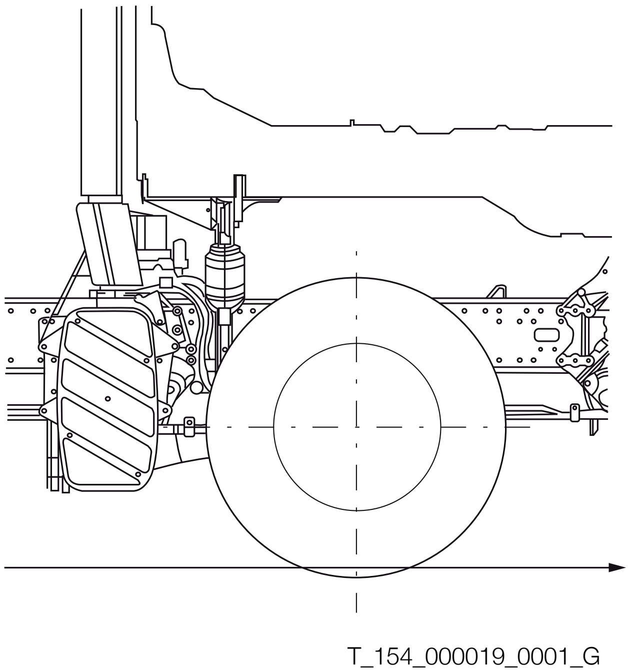


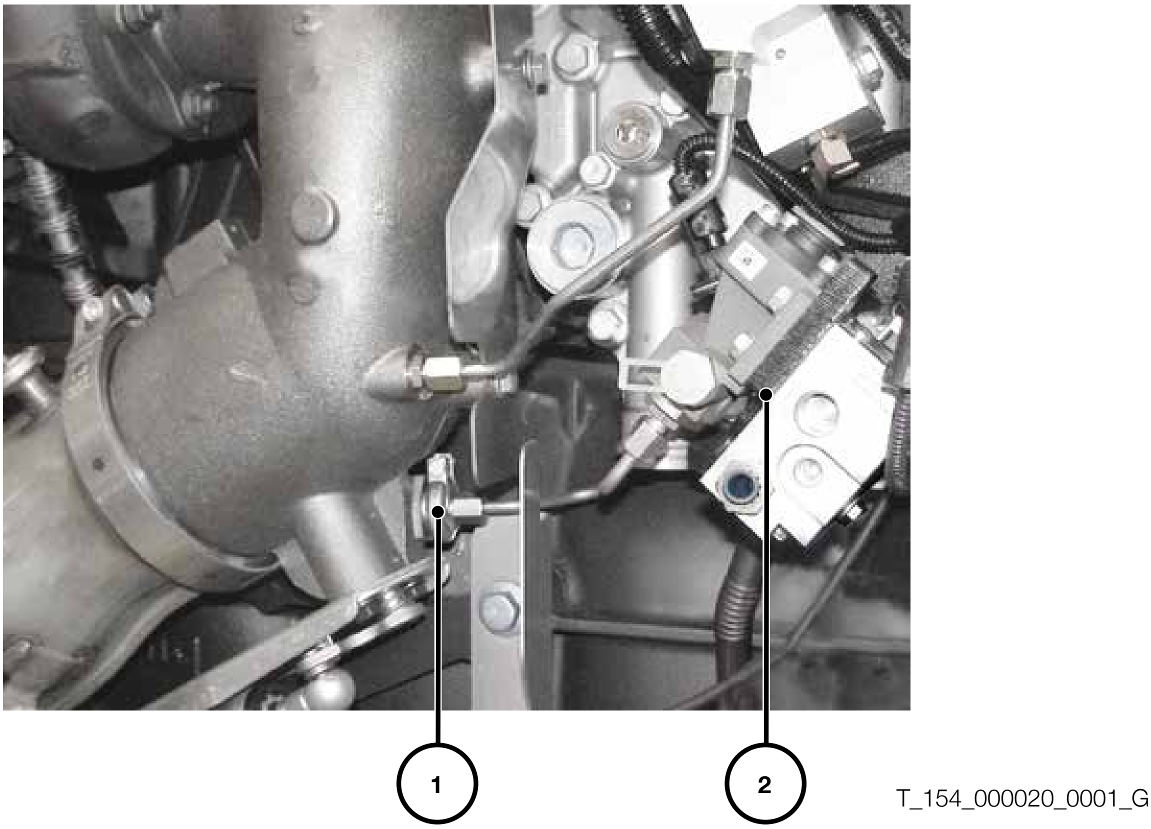
Fig. 93-III: L-LX cab, transverse above frame top edge, rotated 180°, exhaust with upswept tailpipe



Metering module

- The location of the metering module may not be changed
- (see Fig. 94-III: Temperature sensor, injection nozzle, metering module).
- Extending the pipe between the metering module and the supply module is possible up to an overall length of 3000 mm.

Fig. 94-III: Temperature sensor, injection nozzle, metering module



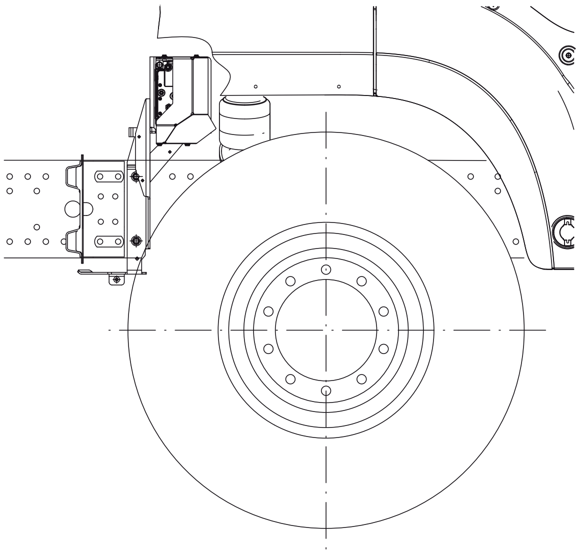
1) Injection nozzle
2) Metering module

Vehicles complying with the Euro 6 exhaust standard

There are currently two - cab-dependent - installation locations, which may not be changed.

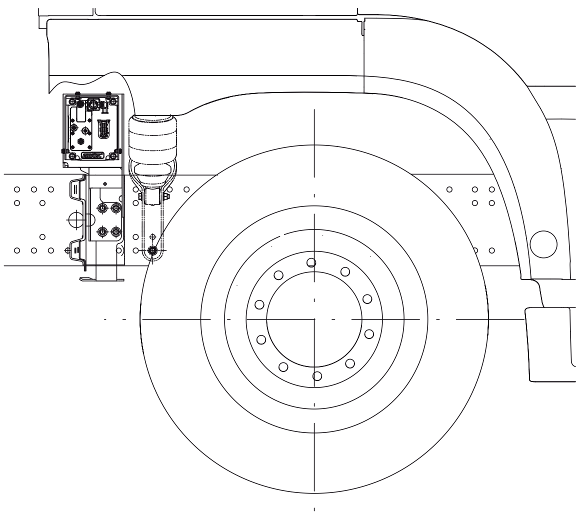
The supply and metering modules are combines to form a single unit. The supply module is located in an easy to build manner behind the cab.

Fig. 95-III: : Location on vehicles with M cab



T_154_000021_0001_G

Fig. 96-III: Location on vehicles with L, LX, XL, XLX and XXL cab



T_154_000022_0001_G

6.4.2.5 AdBlue cable harness

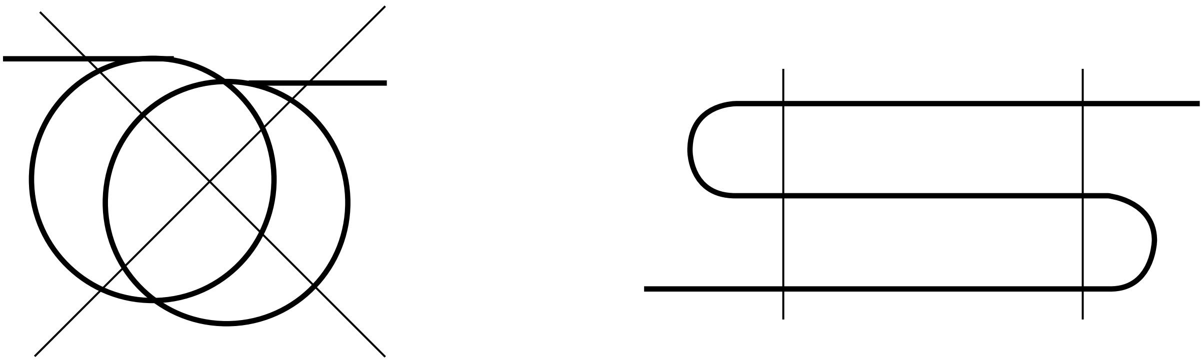
When modifications are made to the AdBlue system it may be necessary to adapt the cable harness.

This section describes the cable harness, possible points of separation and the plug connectors to be used.

The following must be observed for all cable routing:

- Overlengths must not be laid in coil-like rings but only in loops to the side of the cable harness (see Fig. 97-III: Cable routings).

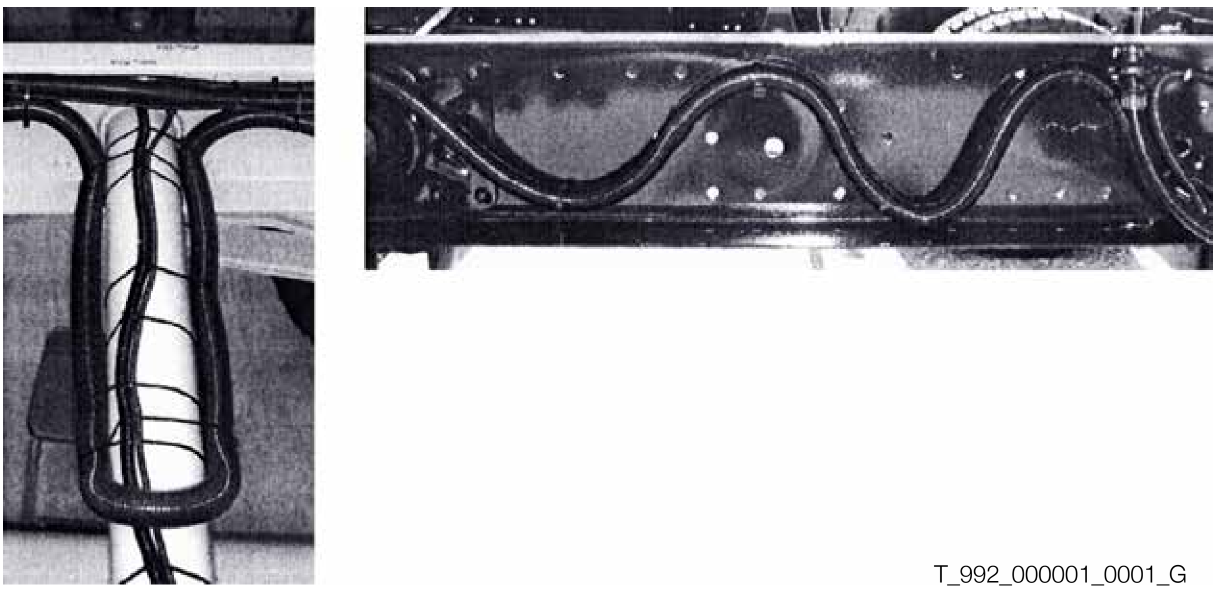
Fig. 97-III: Cable routings



T_998_000003_0001_G

- The cable harness must be secured in such a manner that no movement relative to the frame can occur (danger of chafing), see Fig. 98-III: Routing examples.

Fig. 98-III: Routing examples

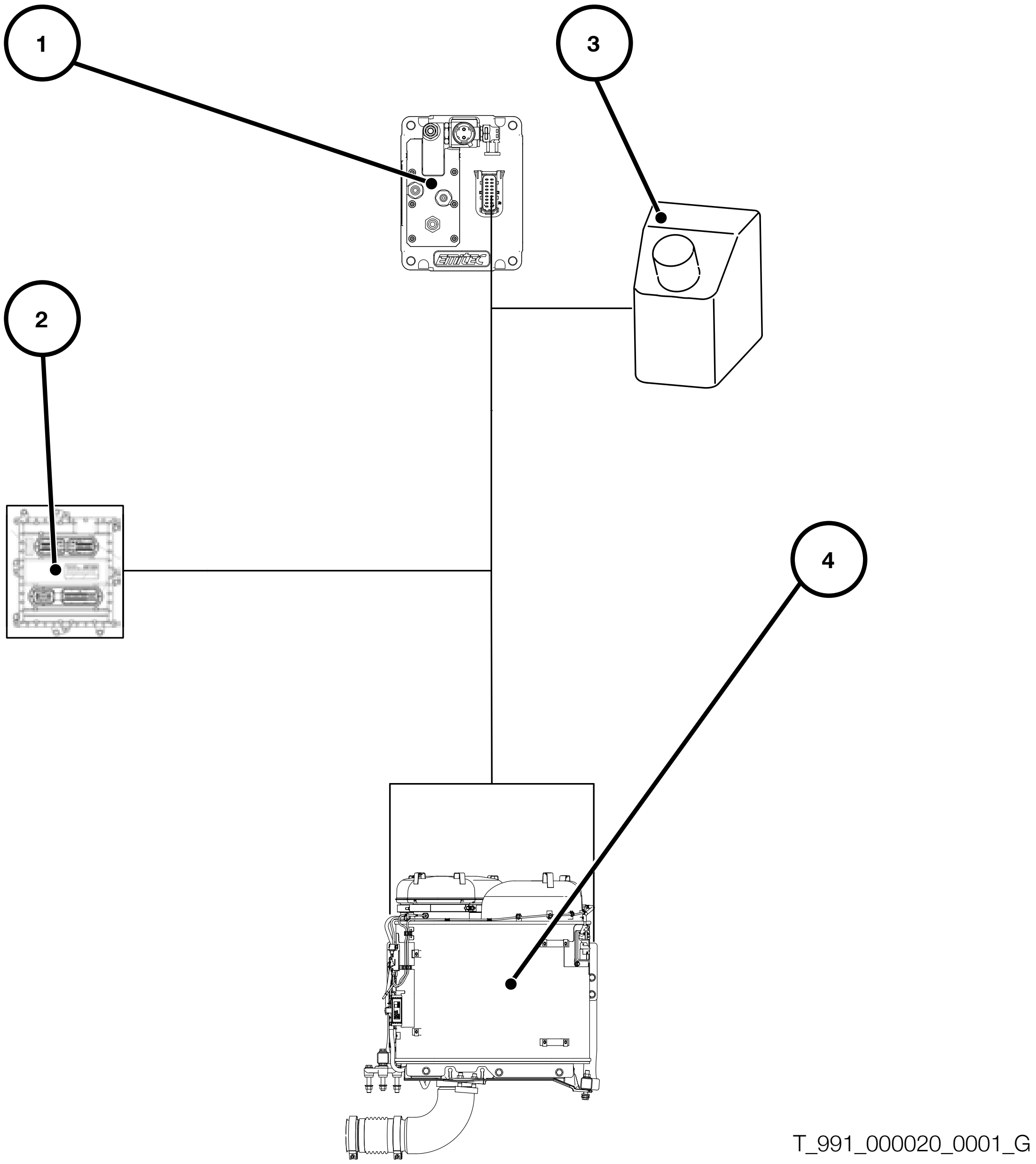


T_992_000001_0001_G

Vehicles complying with the Euro 6 exhaust standard

Below is a schematic diagram of the original MAN cable harness (Fig. 99-III: Schematic diagram of cable harness).

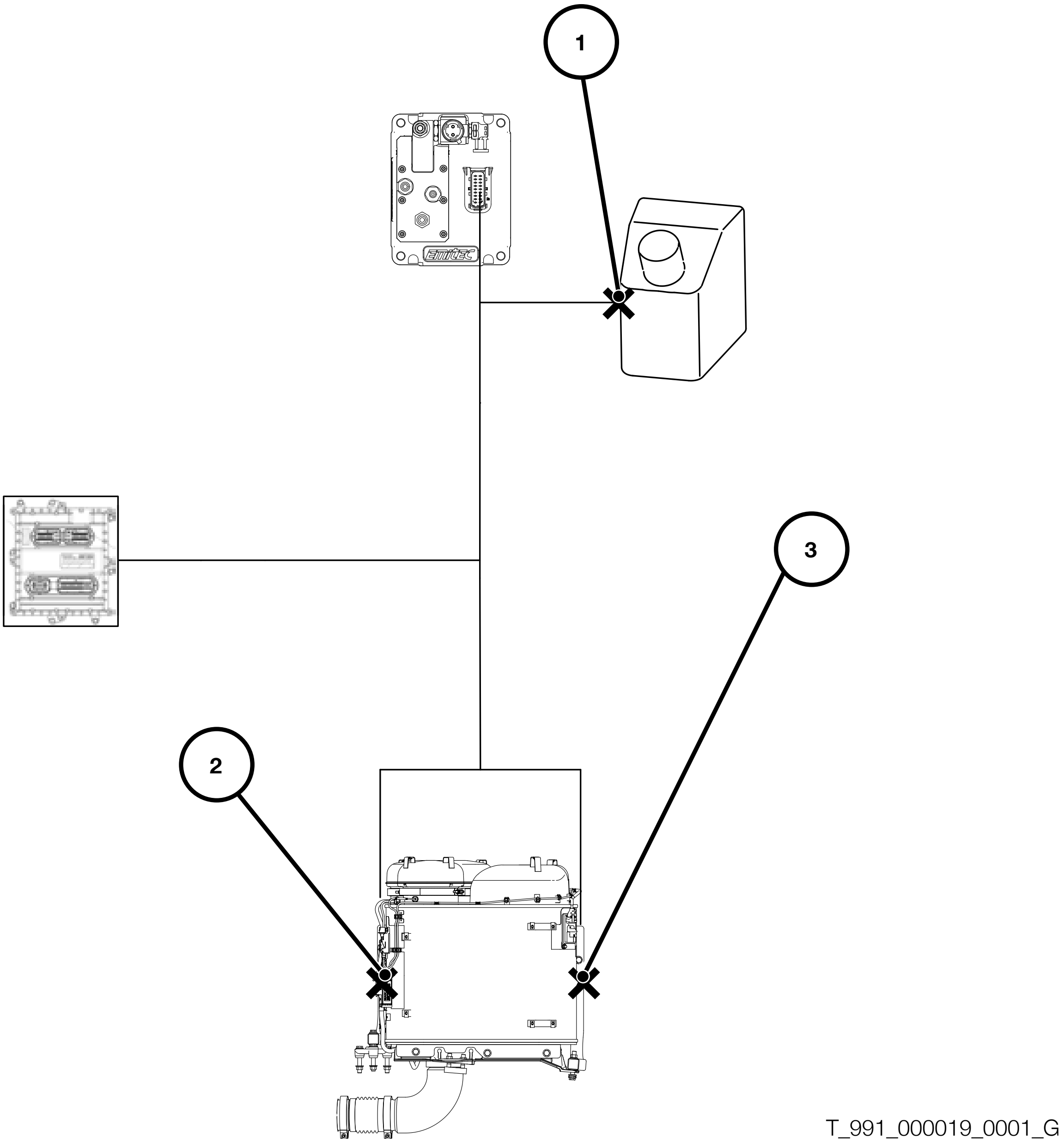
Fig. 99-III: Schematic diagram of cable harness



1) Supply module
2) EDC control unit
3) AdBlue tank
4) Exhaust silencer

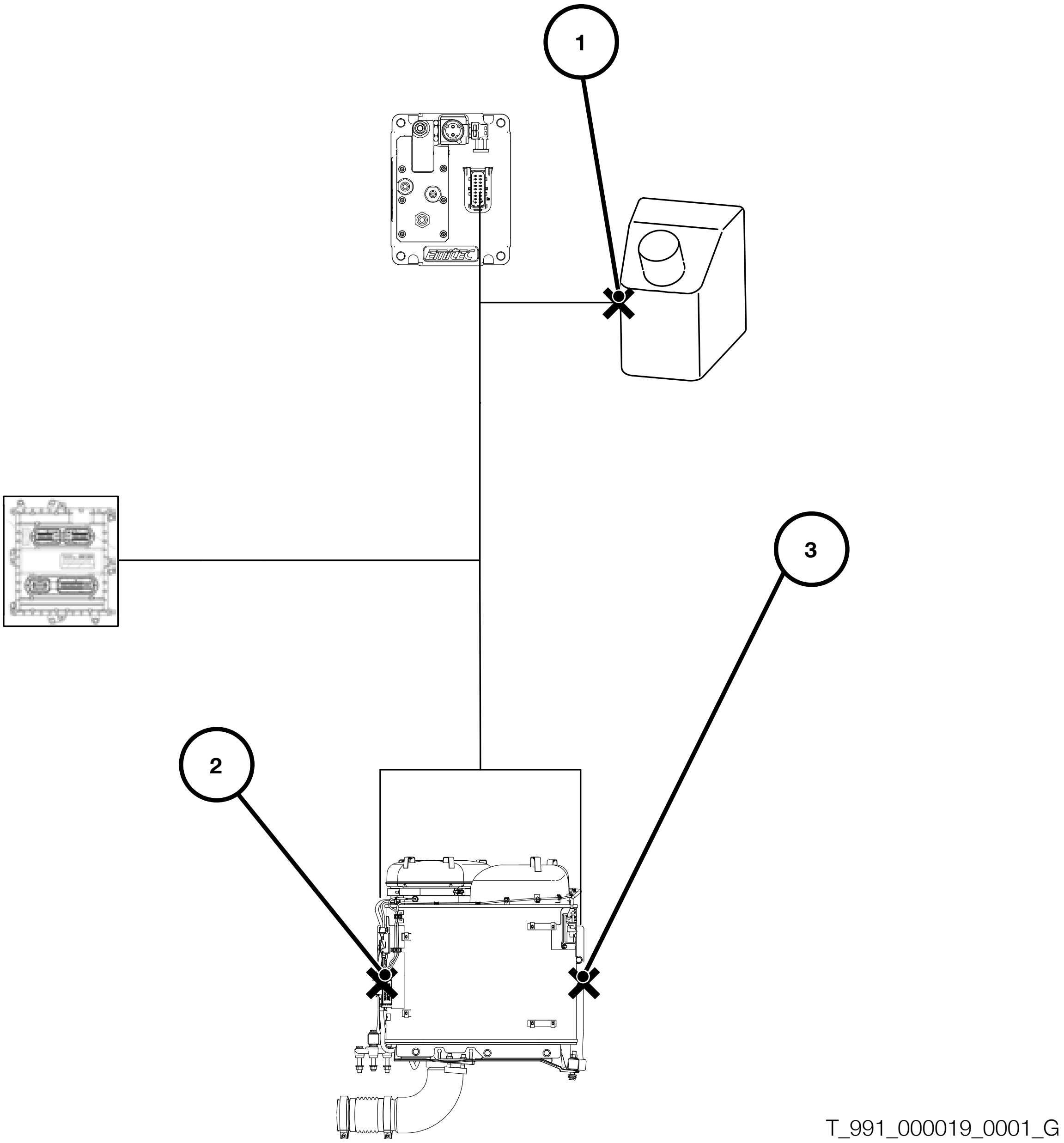
The cable harness can separated for extension purposes at the points shown below. Suitable plugs are available from the MAN Spare-parts Service for adapting the lengths of the cable harnesses.

Fig. 100-III: Points of separation at 2- and 3-Axlevehicles and Types 92S,92X, 8x4-4)



1) Point of separation a) on AdBlue-Tank
2) Point of separation b2) on NO_x sensor
3) Point of separation b1) on thermocouple with evaluation electronics and exhaust differential/relative pressure sensor

Fig. 101-III: Points of separation at 4-Axlevehicles without Types 92S, 92X, 8x4-4



1) Point of separation a) on AdBlue-Tank
2) Point of separation b1) on thermocouple with evaluation electronics and exhaust differential/relative pressure sensor
3) Point of separation b2) on NO_x sensor

A list of the respective plug connectors with the requisite parts and pin-outs can be found below.

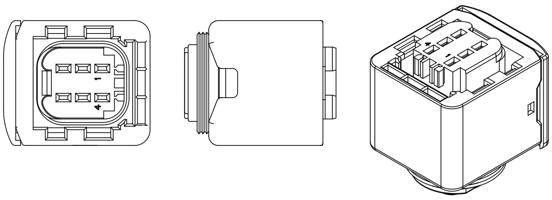
Point of separation a):

- Extension of cable harness to AdBlue tank
  - Construct the extension by means of the following cables, plug and socket.
  - Not all vehicles are equipped with a point of separation. If there is no point of separation, proceed as follows.
    - Separate the cable harness at the interface described and construct a cable using the plug and socket described below.
    - Insert the extension in the cable harness.

Table 22-III: Plug connector for cable harness to AdBlue tank

Point of separation between exhaust cable harness X5508 (point of separation ahead of AdBlue tank) and bodybuilder‘s solution 6-pole BF13 - SF13 with pinning.

Socket housing BF13 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0280

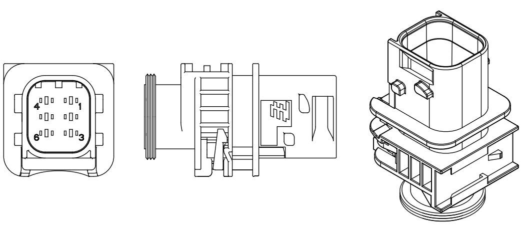


Material for BF13 socket housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	BF13	81.25475-0280	Socket housing
1	AW95	81.25433-0289	Adapter HDSCS D-180° - NW8.5
6	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Contact (individual goods)
6	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element

BF13 socket housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm^2	Contact	Sealing element
1	90008	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
5	90311	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
6	90321	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11

Material for cable set		
Qty.	MAN part no.	Material / line
1	07.08302-0191	CAN lines 2x0.75-A-RS-191-192
5	07.08131-0302	Lines FLRY-0,75-A-RS
1	07.08131-0354	Lines FLRY-0,75-A-BRWS
1	04.37135-9938	Corrugated tube 8.5 dia.

Pin housing SF13 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0281



Material for SF13 pin housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	SF13	81.25475-0281	Pin housing
1	AW95	81.25433-0289	Adapter HDSCS D-180° - NW8.5
6	XG60-1<0	07.91201-0216	Contact (volume goods)
6	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
1	GV53	81.25475-0287	Locking slide size: "B" yellow

SF13 pin housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90008	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
2	191	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
3	192	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL26
5	90311	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL25
6	90321	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11

Points of separation b):

The cable harness to the exhaust silencer divides in a “Y”. For this reason, two cable harnesses have to be extended. The individual interfaces are described below.

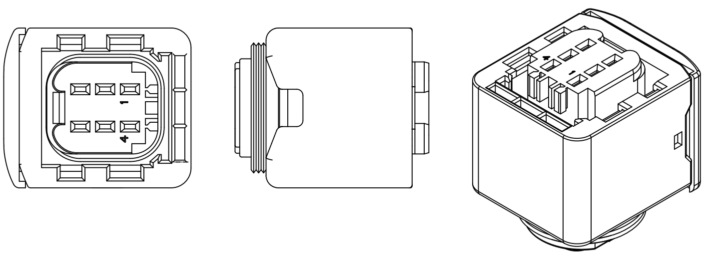
Point of separation b1):

- Extension of cable harness to NO_x sensor
    - Construct the extension by means of the following cables, plug and socket.
    - Separate the cable harness at the interface described and construct a cable using the plug and socket described below.
    - Insert the extension in the cable harness.

Table 23-III: Plug connector on NO_x sensor

Point of separation between exhaust cable-harness B994 (plug connector on NO_x sensor on exhaust silencer) and bodybuilder’s solution 6-pole BF13 - SF13 with pinning.

Socket housing BF13 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0280



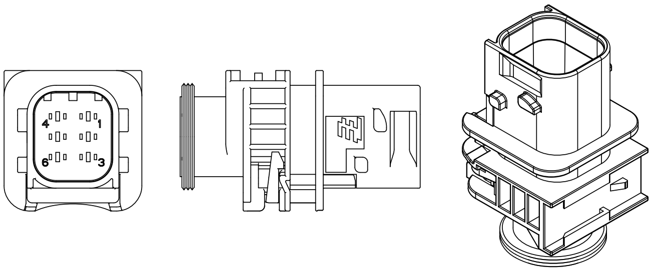
Material for BF13 socket housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	BF13	81.25475-0280	Socket housing
1	AW97	81.25433-0295	Adapter HDSCS D-90° - NW8.5
6	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Contact (individual goods)
6	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element

BF13 socket housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
5	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
6	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11

Material for cable set		
Qty.	MAN part no.	Material / line
2	07.08302-0191	CAN lines 2x0.75-A-RS-191-192
1	07.08131-0302	Lines FLRY-0,75-A-RS
1	07.08131-0354	Lines FLRY-0,75-A-BRWS
1	04.37135-9938	Corrugated tube 8.5 dia.

Table 23-III: Plug connector on NO_x sensor - continued

Pin housing SF13 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0281



Material for SF13 pin housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	SF13	81.25475-0281	Pin housing
1	AW95	81.25433-0289	Adapter HDSCS D-180° - NW8.5
6	XG60-1<0	07.91201-0216	Contact (volume goods)
6	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
1	GV53	81.25475-0287	Locking slide size: "B" yellow

SF13 pin housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm^2	Contact	Sealing element
1	90008	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
2	191	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
3	191	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL26
5	192	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL25
6	192	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11

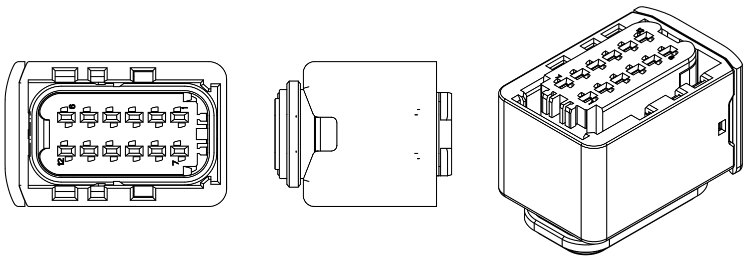
Point of separation b2):

- Extension of cable harness to thermocouple with evaluation electronics and exhaust differential/relative pressure sensor
  - Construct the extension by means of the following cables, plug and socket.
  - Separate the cable harness at the interface described and construct a cable using the plug and socket described below.
  - Insert the extension in the cable harness.

Table 24-III: Plug connector to thermocouple with evaluation electronics and exhaust differential/relative pressure sensor

Point of separation between exhaust cable harness A1191 + B695 body builder‘s solution (exhaust silencer) 12-pole BF15 - SF15 with pinning.

Socket housing BF15 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0283



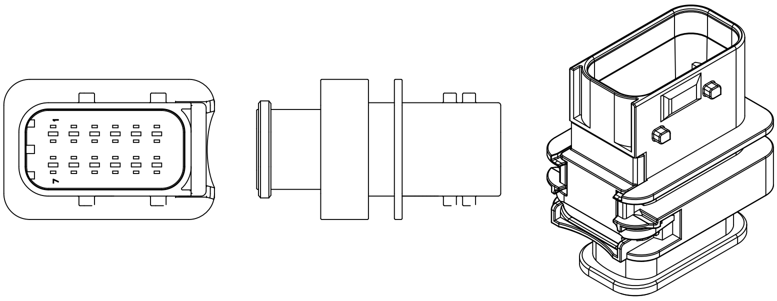
Material for BF15 socket housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	BF15	81.25475-0283	Socket housing
1	AW94	81.25433-0292	Adapter HDSCS D-180° - NW13
10	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Contact (individual goods)
10	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
2	DL10	07.91163-0068	Blanking seal
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Reducer 13-10

BF15 socket housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm^2	Contact	Sealing element
1	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
5	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
6	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
7	90126	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
8	90127	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
9	90128	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
10	90147	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
11	not used	-	-	DL10 (blanking plug)
12	not used	-	-	DL10 (blanking plug)

Material for cable set		
Qty.	MAN part no.	Material / line
2	07.08302-0191	CAN lines 2x0.75-A-RS-191-192
5	07.08131-0302	Lines FLRY-0,75-A-RS
1	07.08131-0354	Lines FLRY-0,75-A-BRWS
1	04.37135-9940	Corrugated tube 10 dia.

Table 24-III: Plug connector to thermocouple with evaluation electronics and exhaust differential/relative pressure sensor - continued

Pin housing SF15 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0285



Material for SF15 pin housing			
Qty.	**MAN code**	**MAN part no.**	**Part designation**
1	SF15	81.25475-0285	Pin housing
1	AW95	81.25433-0292	Adapter HDSCS D-180° - NW13
10	XG60-1<0	07.61201-0255	Contact (volume goods)
10	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
2	DL10	07.91163-0068	Blanking seal
1	GV59	81.25475-0338	Locking slide size: "D" yellow
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Reducer 13-10

SF15 pin housing pin-out				
PIN	**Manager**	**Cross-section mm²**	**Contact**	**Sealing element**
1	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
5	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
6	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
7	90126	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
8	90127	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
9	90128	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
10	90147	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
11	not used	-	-	DL10 (blanking plug)
12	not used	-	-	DL10 (blanking plug)

6.4.2.6 Parts list

Table 25-III: Overview of individual parts for extending lines

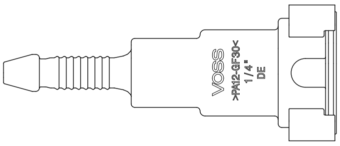
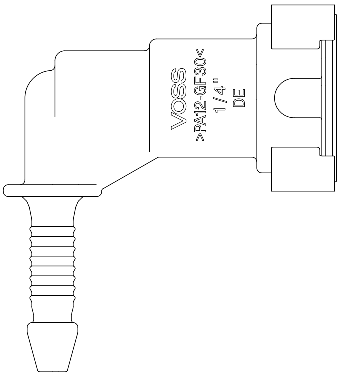
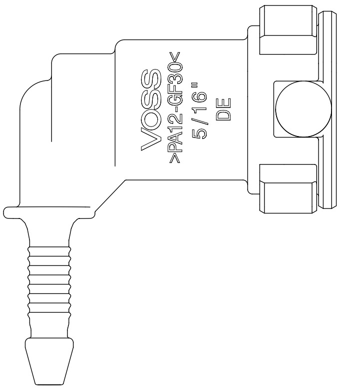
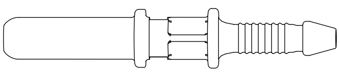
Illustration	MAN part no.	Series	Designation	Use
	81.98180.6036	TGS TGX	Voss straight plug SAE 1/4“ NW3	AdBlue lines
	81.98180.6037	TGS TGX	Voss elbow plug SAE 1/4“ NW3	AdBlue lines
	81.98180.6042	TGS TGX	Voss elbow plug SAE J 2044 5/16“ NW3	AdBlue lines
	81.98180.6039	TGS TGX	Voss connector pin SAE J 2044 1/4“ NW3	AdBlue lines

Table 25-III: Overview of individual parts for extending lines - continued

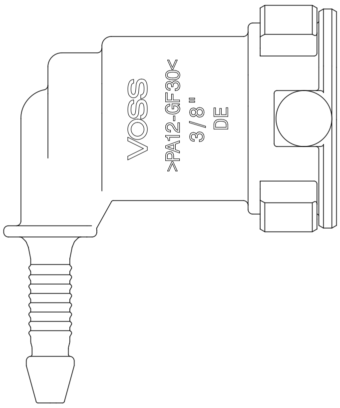
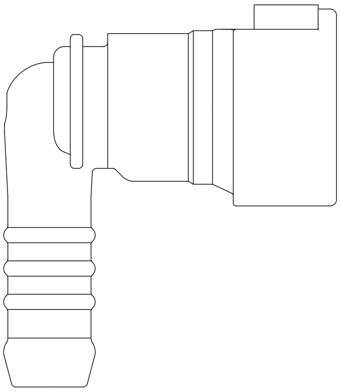
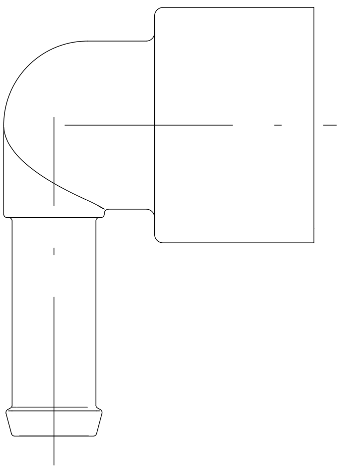
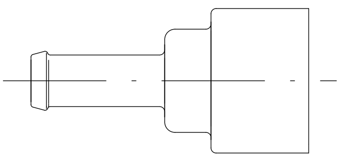
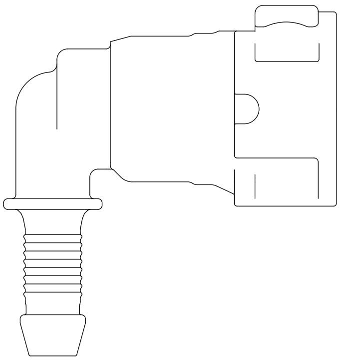
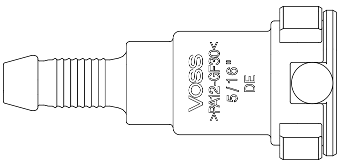
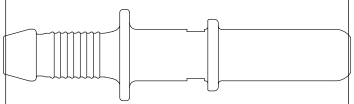
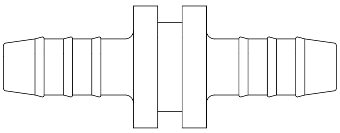
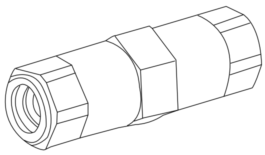
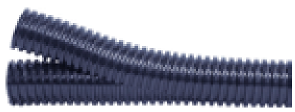
Illustration	MAN part no.	Series	Designation	Use
	81.98180.6041	TGS TGX	Voss elbow plug SAE J 2044 3/8“ NW3	AdBlue lines
	81.98180.6027	TGS TGX	Elbow plug	Heating-water lines
	81.98180.6015	TGS TGX	Elbow plug PS3 NW 12	Heating-water lines
	81.98180.6004	TGS TGX	Straight connector PS3 NW 12	Heating-water lines

Table 25-III: Overview of individual parts for extending lines - continued

Illustration	MAN part no.	Series	Designation	Use
	81.98180.6035	TGS TGX	Voss elbow plug SAE 9,89 NW6	Heating-water lines
	81.98180.6044	TGS TGX	Voss straight plug SAE J 2044 5/16“ NW6	Heating-water lines
	81.98180.6038	TGS TGX	Voss straight plug SAE J 2044 5/16“ NW6	Heating-water lines
	81.98181.0201	TGS TGX	Connector for polyamide pipe 9 x 1,5	Heating-water lines
	81.98181.6043	TGS TGX	Voss plug connector for polyamide pipe 6 x 1	Compressed-air line to supply module
	OETIKER-Nr. 16700004	TGS TGX	Stepless ear clamp	AdBlue lines
	51.97440-0171	TGS TGX	Stepless ear clamp	Heating-water lines
			Sheathing, Co-flex Type 26/32	Insulation of line sets
	04.27405.0090	TGS TGX	Hose 6 x 3 EPDM	Heating-water lines

6.5 Gearbox and propshafts

6.5.1 Basic principles

The gearbox converts the engine torque and speed to meet the momentary demand for tractive force. Propshafts are installed to transmit the engine output from the gearbox to the transfer case and/or the final drives.
Their movable splines compensate for vertical movements of the axles.

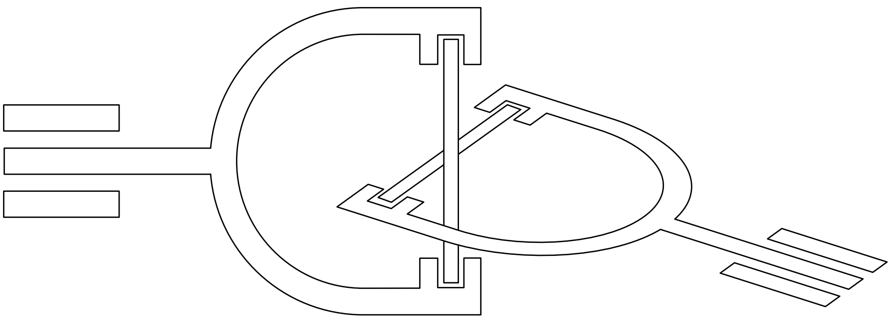
Warning notice

Propeller shafts close to where persons move or work must be encased or covered.
Depending on the local legislation in the country of assignment the assembly of a safety attachment or arrester bracket can be necessary for the shaft.

Propshafts are implemented in various ways.

Single joint
When a single cardan joint, universal joint or ball joint (see Fig. 102-III) is rotated uniformly whilst bent it results in a non-uniform movement on the output side. This non-uniformity is often referred to as cardan error. Cardan error causes sinusoidal-like fluctuations in rotational speed on the output side. The output shaft leads and lags the input shaft. Despite constant input torque and input power, the output torque of the propshaft fluctuates according to the lead or lag.

Fig. 102-III: Single joint



The acceleration and delay occurring twice for each rotation mean that this kind of propeller shaft cannot be used for attachment to a power take-off.

A single joint is feasible only if it can be proven without doubt that because of the:

- mass moment of inertia,
- Speed
- angle of deflection,

the oscillations and loads are of minor significance.

Propeller shaft with two joints
The non-uniformity of a single joint can be compensated by joining two single joints to produce a propeller shaft. However, full compensation of the movement can be achieved only if the following conditions are met.

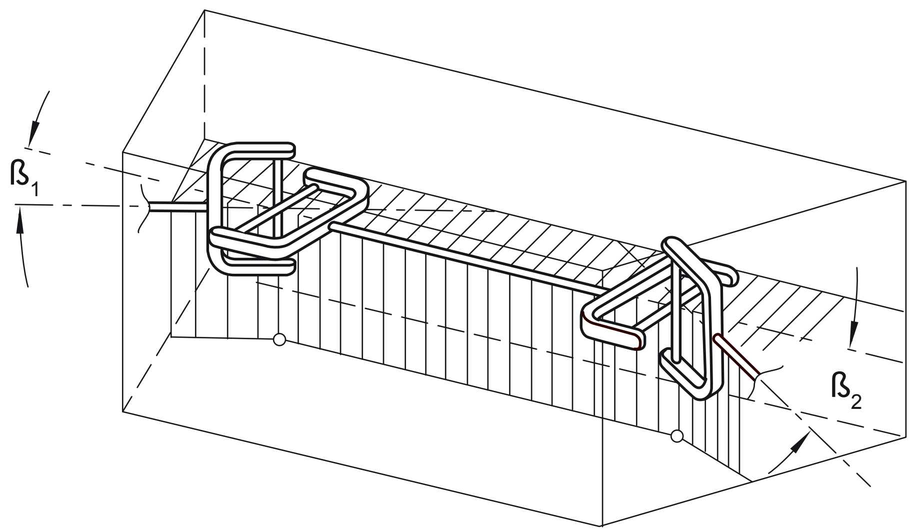
- Both joints must have the same angle of deflection, i.e. $ß_1 = ß_2$
- The two inner joint forks must be on the same plane.
- The input and output shafts must also be in the same plane, see Fig. 103-III und Fig. 104-III.

All three conditions must always be met simultaneously to compensate cardan error.
These conditions are met in dependence on the propshaft configuration. Possible propshaft configurations are described in Chapter III, Section 6.5.2.

6.5.2 Propshaft configurations

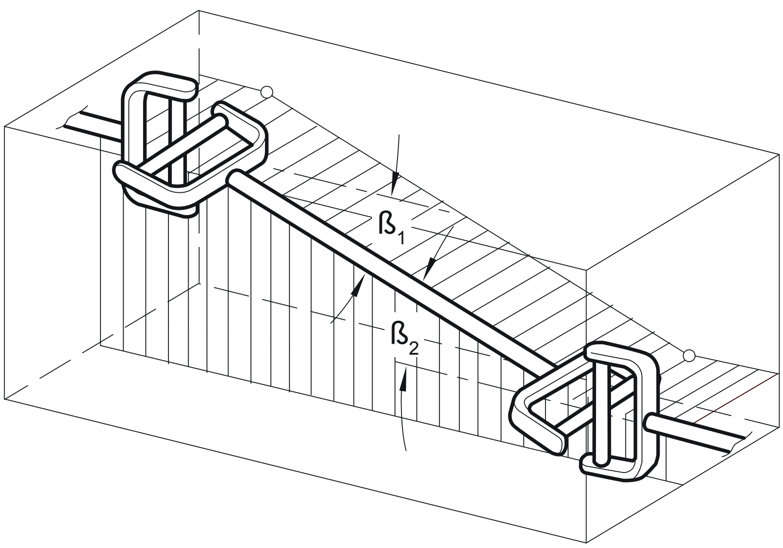
Well-known propshaft configurations are the so-called Z and W configurations (see Fig. 103-III and Fig. 104-III) as well as the three-dimensional configuration (see Fig. 105-III).

Fig. 103-III: W configuration of propeller shaft



T_364_000002_0001_G

Fig. 104-III: Z configuration of propeller shaft



T_364_000003_0001_G

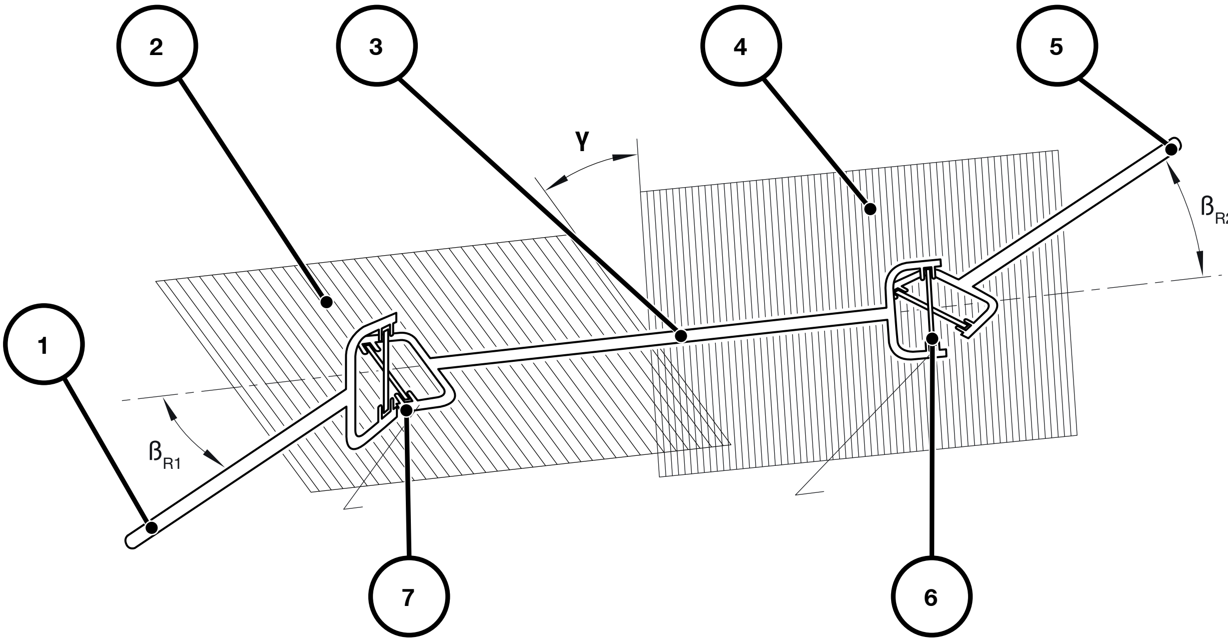
The conditions (cf. Chapter III, Section 6.5.1) for full compensation of movement are met by the so-called Z and W configurations.
The common deflection plane that exists here may be freely rotated about the longitudinal axis.
The use of the W-arrangement should be avoided in practice.

The exception is the three-dimensional propshaft configuration, see Fig. 105-III.

A three-dimensional configuration is given if the input and output shafts are not on the same plane.
The input and output shafts cross offset from one another in space.

There is no common plane, so an offset of the inner joint forks by an angle “γ” is necessary to compensate speed fluctuations (see Fig. 105-III).

Fig. 105-III: Three-dimensional propeller shaft



T_364_000004_0001_G

1) Shaft 1
2) Plane 1 (formed by Shaft 1 and Shaft 2)
3) Shaft 2
4) Plane 2 (formed by Shaft 2 and Shaft 3)
5) Shaft 3
6) Fork in Plane 2
7) Fork in Plane 1
γ Offset angle

A further condition is that the resulting three-dimensional angle $ß_{R1}$ on the input shaft must be exactly the same as the three-dimensional angle $ß_{R2}$ on the output shaft.

Therefore:
$\beta_{R1} = \beta_{R2}$

Where:

β_{R1} = Resulting three-dimensional angle of Shaft 1
β_{R2} = Resulting three-dimensional angle of Shaft 2

The resulting three-dimensional deflection angle β_R is a function of the vertical and horizontal deflection of the propshafts and is calculated as:

Formula 02-III: Resulting three-dimensional deflection angle

$$\tan^2 \beta_R = \tan^2 \beta_v + \tan^2 \beta_h$$

The necessary offset angle "γ" is a product of the horizontal and vertical deflection angles of the two joints:

Formula 03-III: Offset angle γ

$$\tan \gamma_1 = \frac{\tan \beta_{h1}}{\tan \beta_{\gamma 1}}; \quad \tan \gamma_2 \quad \frac{\tan \beta_{h2}}{\tan \beta_{\gamma 2}}; \quad \gamma = \gamma_1 + \gamma_2$$

Where:

β_R = Resulting three-dimensional deflection angle
β_γ = Vertical deflection angle
β_h = Horizontal deflection angle
γ = Offset angle

Please note that:
In three-dimensional deflection of the propeller shaft with two joints there is only a requirement for the same resulting three-dimensional deflection angles, so theoretically any number of configurations can be formed by combining the vertical and horizontal deflection angle.

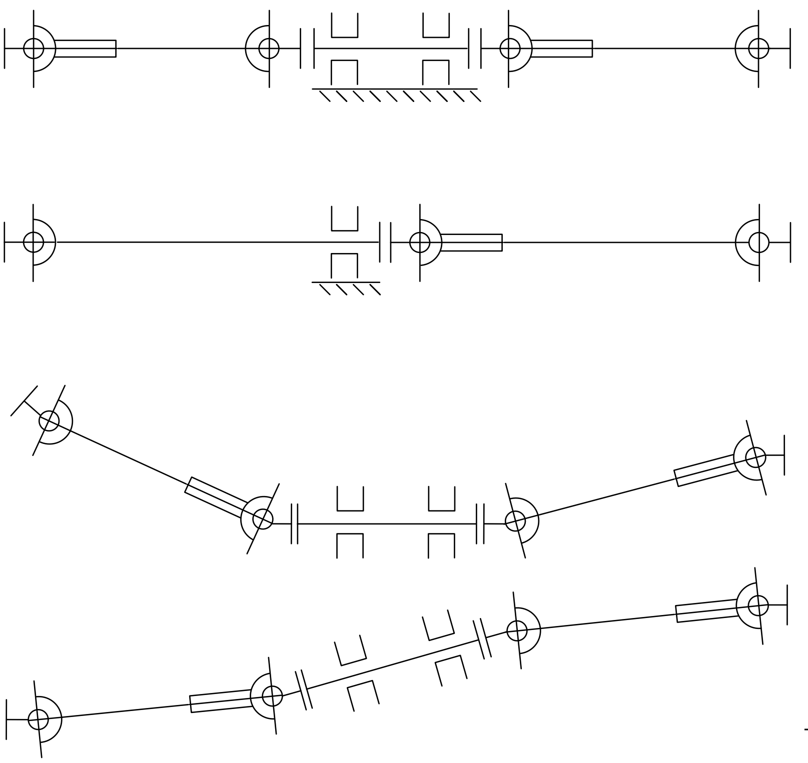
We recommend that the manufacturers' advice be sought for determining the offset angle for a three-dimensional propshaft configuration.

Propeller shaft train

If a design dictates the need for more length, it is possible to implement a propeller shaft train comprising two or more shafts. Fig. 106-III illustrates basic forms of a propeller shaft train in which the position of the joints and drivers relative to one another was randomly chosen.

Drivers and joints have to be harmonized for kinematic reasons. In matters concerning propshaft train design, the propshaft manufacturers should be consulted.

Fig. 106-III: Propshaft train



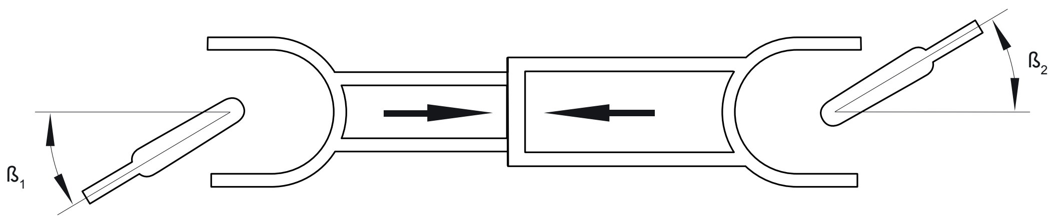
T_364_000005_0001_G

6.5.3 Forces in the propshaft system

Deflection angles in propeller shaft systems inevitably produce additional forces and moment. If a telescoping propshaft is extended or compressed whilst under load whilst under load further additional forces will be introduced.

Dismantling the propshaft, twisting the two halves of the shaft and then putting them back together again will not compensate for uneven movement but is more likely to exacerbate the problem. Trial and error of this kind can damage propshafts, bearings, joints, main shaft profile and sub-assemblies.
So it is essential to observe the markings on the propeller shaft. The marks must be aligned when the joints are fitted (see Fig. 107-III).

Fig. 107-III: Markings on propeller shaft



Do not remove any balancing plates, and do not confuse propeller shaft parts, otherwise the imbalance will appear again.

If one of the balancing plates is lost or propshaft parts are replaced, the propshaft must be re-balanced.

Despite careful design of a propeller shaft system there may still be vibrations that can result in damage if their cause is not eliminated. Suitable measures must be used to cure the problem such as installing dampers, the use of constant velocity joints or changing the entire propshaft system and the mass ratios.

6.5.4 Modifying the propshaft configuration

As a rule, bodymakers modify the propeller shaft system when:

- modifying the wheelbase as a retrofit operation
- attaching pumps to the propeller shaft flange of the power take-off.

It is important to note that:

- The maximum deflection angle of each propshaft of the driveline when loaded may be 7° on each plane.
- If a propeller shaft is lengthened, the entire propeller shaft train must be newly configured by a propeller shaft producer.
- Modifications to the propshaft such as extensions may only be carried out by authorised workshops
- Every propeller shaft must be newly balanced before installation.
- Allowing the propshaft to hang on one side when fitting or removing it may lead to the shaft becoming damaged.
- A clearance of at least 30 mm must be maintained.

When assessing the minimum clearance, the raising of the vehicle and associated movement of the axle due to the extension of the springs and resulting change in position of the propshaft must be taken into consideration.

6.5.5 Fitting other manual or automatic gearboxes and transfer cases

Fitting manual or automatic gearboxes not documented by MAN is not possible because of the absence of an interface with the driveline CAN. If non-documented manual or automatic gearboxes are fitted malfunctions may occur in safety-relevant electronic systems. Fitting a third-party transfer box (e.g. for use as a power take-off) influences the electronic circuitry of the power train.

On vehicles fitted with mechanical gearboxes it may, under certain circumstances, be possible to adapt the system by parameterisation. Consult MAN (for address see “Publisher” above) before any work is commenced. As a basic principle, installation in vehicles fitted with MAN TipMatic/ZF ASTRONIC (e.g. ZF12AS gearbox) is not permitted.

6.6 PTOs

Power take-offs connect the vehicle’s engine with the units to be driven, for example compressors or hydraulic pumps. The power take-offs that may be used on MAN vehicles are described in the supplementary booklet entitled “Power take-offs”.

Further assistance for the selection and design of power take-offs can be found under “Gearbox/power take-offs” in MANTED (www.manted.de, registration required).

The operation of units by means of the vehicle’s engine can have a considerable effect on fuel consumption.
It is therefore expected that the company carrying out the work implements a design that facilitates the lowest possible fuel consumption.

6.7 Brake system

6.7.1 Basic principles

Warning notice

The brake system is among the most important safety components on a truck. No changes may be made to any part of a braking system including the lines except by appropriately trained persons. After any change a complete visual, auditory, functional and efficiency test of the complete brake system is to be performed.

6.7.2 Installing and fastening brake lines

The relevant notes in Chapter III, Section 6.3.5.2 “Routing lines” are to be observed when routing and fastening lines.

6.7.3 ALB, EBS brake system

EBS makes it unnecessary for the bodymaker to inspect the ALB (automatic load-dependent brake system), and no adjustment is possible.. Inspection may possibly be required as part of a routine check of the brake system. Should such an inspection of the brake system become necessary then a voltage measurement using the MAN-cats® diagnosis system or a visual check of the angle of the linkage at the axle-load sensor must be carried out.

The EBS of vehicles fitted with air suspension uses the axle-load signal transmitted by the ECAS via the CAN data bus. If conversions are carried out it must be ensured that this axle-load information is not affected.
Never pull out the plug on the axle-load sensor. Before exchanging leaf springs, e.g. replacing them with springs for a different load, it should be checked with the MAN Service workshop whether reparameterisation of the vehicle is necessary in order to be able to set the ALB correctly.

6.7.4 Retrofitting continuous brakes

Fitting continuous brake systems (retarders, eddy current brakes) that have not been documented by MAN is fundamentally not possible.

Interventions in the electronically controlled brake system (EBS) and the vehicle’s on-board brake and driveline management system, which would be required in order to fit non-MAN continuous brakes, are not permitted.

6.8 MAN HydroDrive

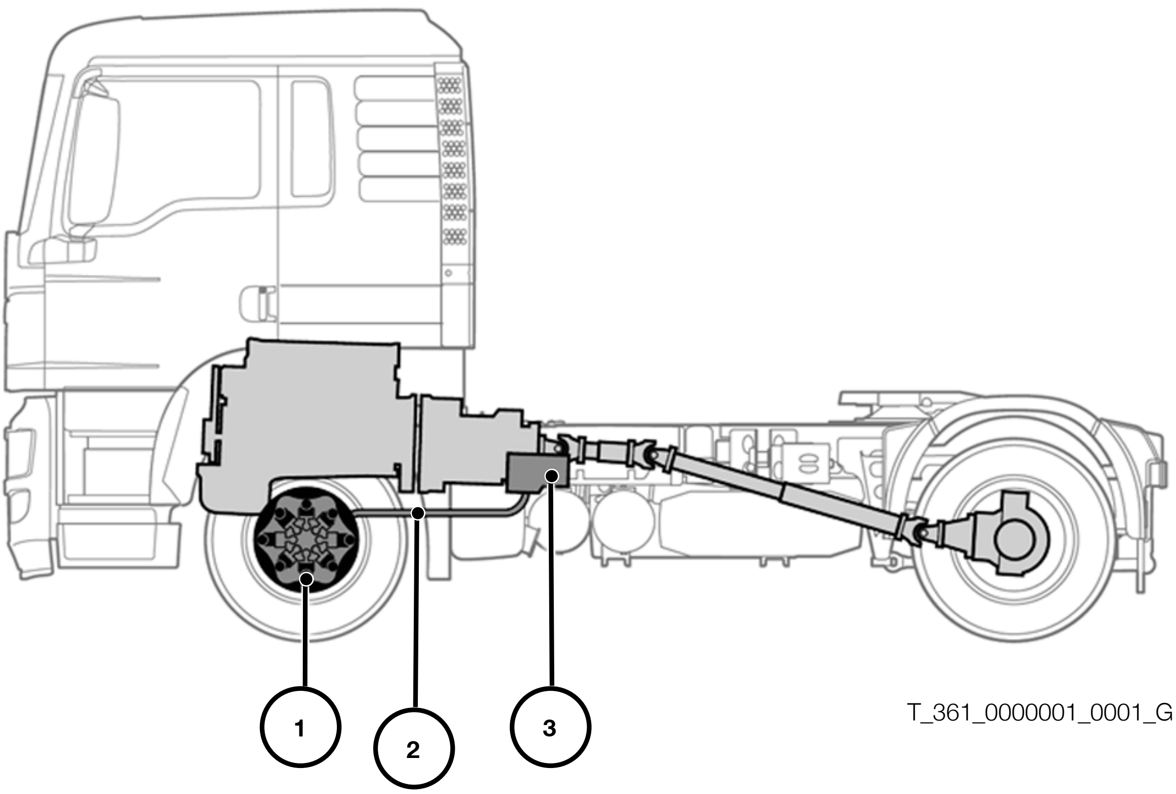
The MAN HydroDrive is a connectible hydrostatic front axle drive for situations in which traction is critical.
The hydrostatic drive uses the static pressure of a separate hydraulic system in order to set the two wheel hub motors on the front axle in motion. It is effective from 0 km/h to 28 km/h and in both forward and reverse gears.

6.8.1 General

The MAN HydroDrive consists of the following main components:

- Hydrostatic wheel hub motors (Pos. 1 Fig. 108-III)
- Hydraulic high-pressure lines (Pos. 2 Fig. 108-III)
- Hydraulic pump (Pos. 3 Fig. 108-III)
- Cooler/fan unit
- Oil reservoir

Fig. 108-III: Schematic representation of the main components in the high-pressure circuit of the HydroDrive

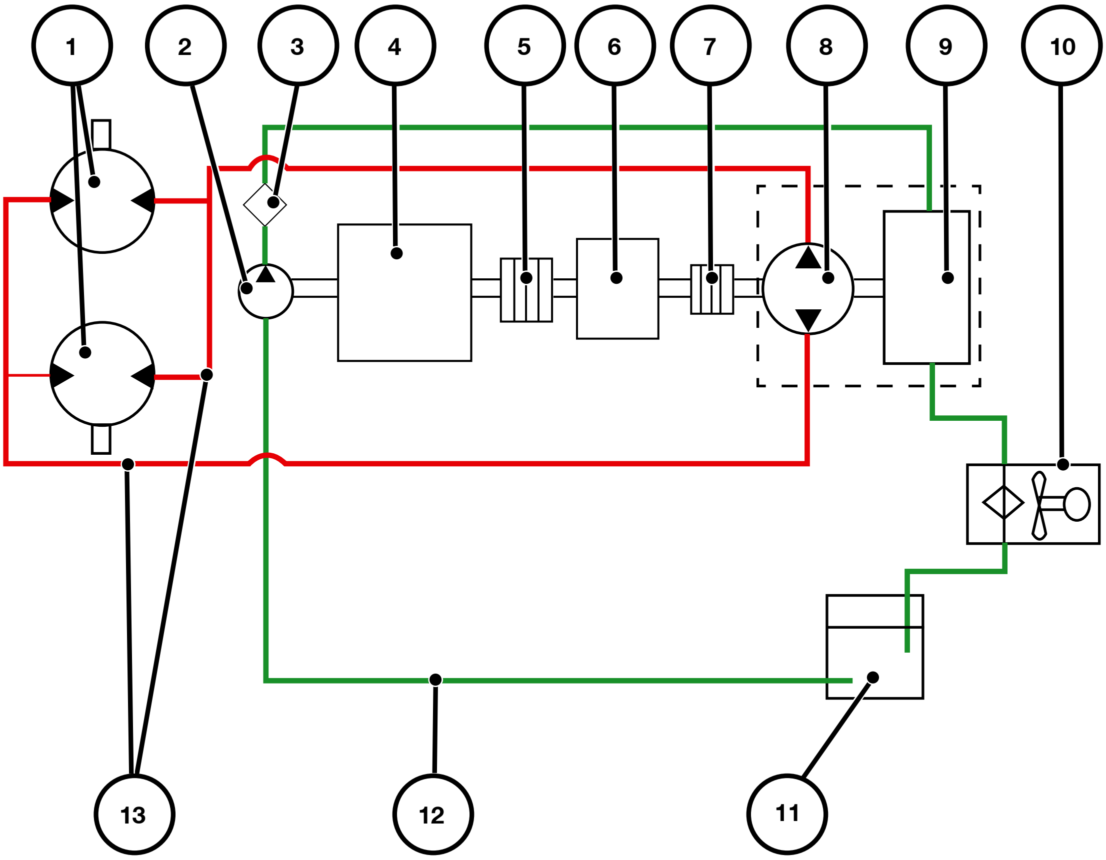


1) Hydrostatic wheel-hub motor
2) Hydraulic line
3) Hydraulic pump

Hydraulic circuit

In the following sketch, Fig. 109-III the operating principle of the self-contained hydraulic system is shown. The components of the high-pressure hydraulic system are shown connected by red lines (up to a maximum pressure of 420 bar). All components connected by a green line are part of the feed circuit (low pressure).

Fig. 109-III: Sketch showing the HydroDrive hydraulic circuit



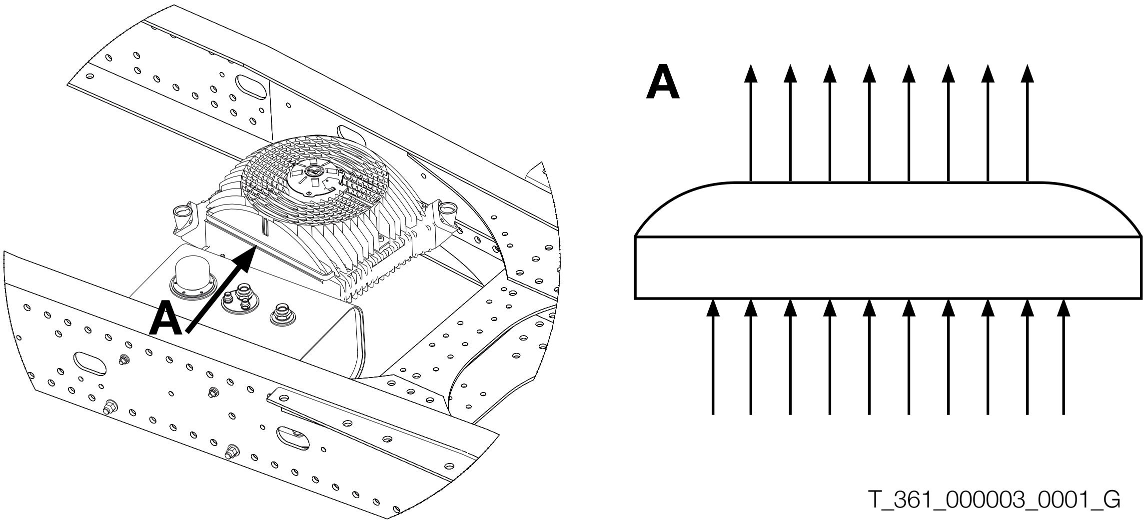
T_361_000002_0001_G

1) Hydraulic wheel hub motors
2) Feed pump
3) Filter
4) Engine
5) Drive clutch
6) Gearbox
7) Gearbox/high-pressure pump clutch
8) High-pressure pump
9) Control block
10) Cooler/fan unit
11) Oil reservoir
12) Low-pressure lines
13) High-pressure lines

Cooler/fan unit installation

The cooler/fan unit and the hydraulic oil reservoir are installed ex works between the frame side members. This keeps the free spaces between the axles available for the body. Fig. 110-III shows and example of installation. The direction of flow for the fan is shown (from the lower edge to the upper edge of the frame). This is identical for all installation positions.

Fig. 110-III: Sketch showing the installation of the cooler/fan with oil reservoir and direction of flow



Further important notes:

- The hydraulic circuit of the HydroDrive is approved solely for driving the front axle and may not be used for driving other hydraulic devices.
- No modifications may be made to the high-pressure lines (Fig. 109-III).
- During operation, the hydraulic circuit lines heat up to 90°C. Touching the lines may lead to burns. The hydraulic system must therefore be allowed to cool down before work on it begins.
- The cooler/fan unit should be cleaned regularly in order to ensure consistent cooling performance.
- Cleaning should be done using compressed air or water. Cleaning efficiency can be improved by adding cleaning agents (it is essential to ensure that the agent used does not corrode aluminium).
- The service intervals stated in the the operating manual must be observed.

6.8.2 Relocating HydroDrive components

Moving components is only permissible in the low-pressure circuit (oil reservoir, radiator/fan unit).

Warning notice
Intervention in the high-pressure circuit is forbidden (see Section 6.8.1 Fig. 109-III). There is a risk of injury.

The following instructions must be followed without fail when components are moved.

General:

- Cleanliness must be ensured during conversion work in order to avoid foreign bodies (dust, filings, etc.) getting into the hydraulic circuit.
- Hydraulic lines, connections and attachments must be kept clean and free of chips, filings, etc.
- Nominal sizes and materials for suction lines/hydraulic lines must not be changed.
- Hydraulic lines must be laid in accordance with the applicable technical regulations and standards (e.g. DIN 20066).
- The tightening torques according to MAN factory standard 3064 for hydraulic fittings must be observed.
- The tightening torques according to MAN factory standard 3059 for fittings for mounting HydroDrive components must be observed.
- Do not lay hydraulic lines on or in proximity to heat-radiating components (e.g. the exhaust system). Suitable heat protection should be installed as necessary.
- Access to the HydroDrive components must be ensured.
- After conversion, the hydraulic system must be filled with hydraulic oil in accordance with MAN maintenance and working material regulations.

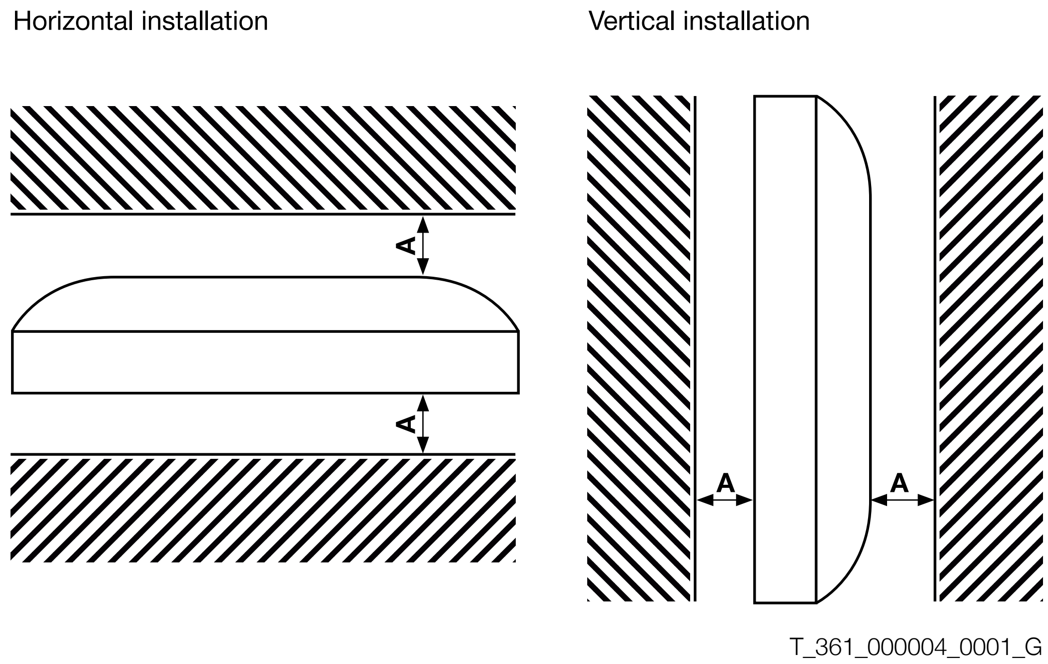
Oil reservoir:

- If the oil reservoir is moved, Fig. 114-III must be observed and the lines/connections stated in Table 26-III used.
- The volume of the oil reservoir ex works must not be reduced.
- The length of the suction line must be chosen so that performance of the feed pump is sufficient for supplying the hydraulic circuit. **Important:** Risk of cavitation if too long.
- When laying the suction line, ensure that no siphon is formed.
- The tank can be moved within the constraints of the permissible suction line length. The height difference between the installed position ex works and a higher position is not important.
- If the oil reservoir is installed at a lower position than ex works, then ensure that the height difference is great enough to ensure that no oil overflows via the tank cover or the breather filter.

Cooler/Fan unit:

- When moving the cooler/fan unit, , Fig. 115-III must be observed and the lines/connections must be used according to Table 27-III.
- The cooler/fan unit incl. bypass piping (for protection against excess pressure, Fig. 115-III) should be positioned so that unobstructed inflow and outflow of cooling air is ensured – minimum clearance at intake and exhaust sides ≥120 mm (see Fig. 111-III dimension A). If the clearance is not maintained then this can lead to increased noise and decreased cooling performance (tantamount to a reduced operating time for the HydroDrive).
- The cooler/fan unit can be installed in any direction (rotation around x-y-z axis).
- To extend the cable of the cooler/fan unit Fig. 115-III Position 1, the individual parts and MAN item numbers are listed in Table 28-III and Table 29-III in order to be able to make a compliant extension that is subsequently connected between the fan and vehicle cable harness.

Fig. 111-III: Installation examples and minimum clearance for the cooler/fan unit



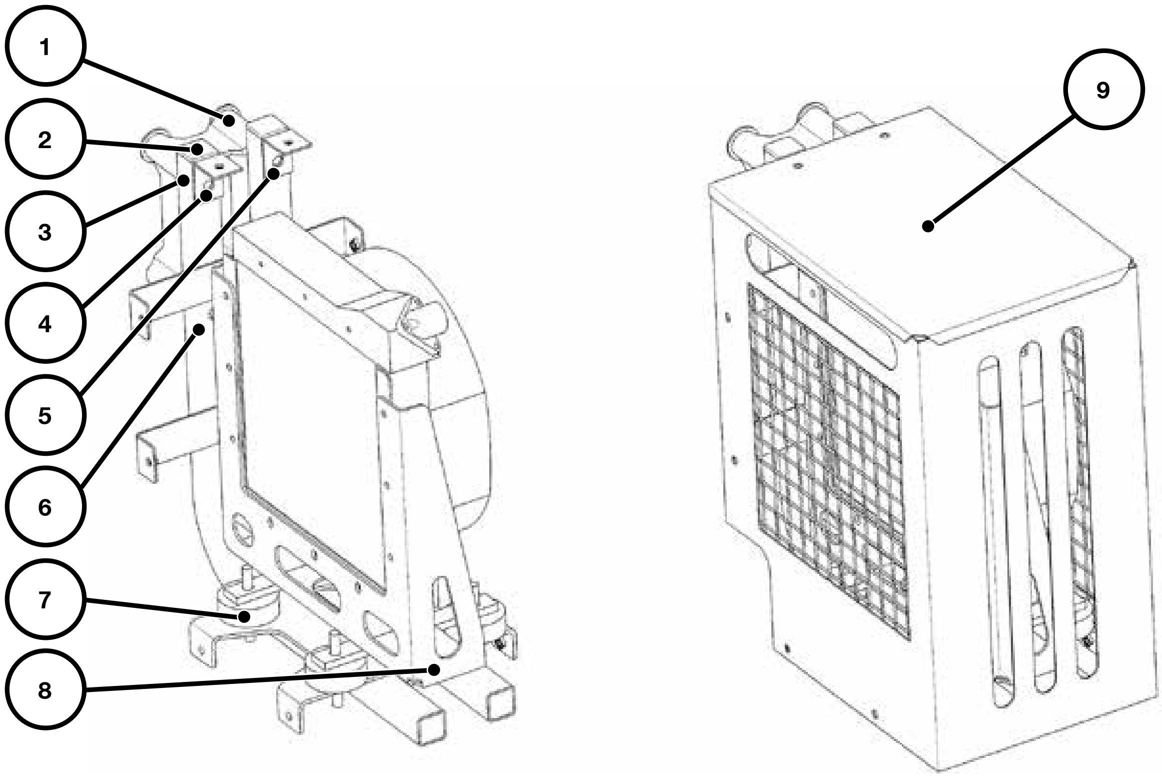
A) minimum clearance for the cooler/fan unit

Further information:

As an alternative to producing an in-house bracket for relocating the cooler/fan unit, a component group with relevant cover is available from the MAN spare part service. The individual item numbers are listed in the key to Fig. 112-III.

The individual completing the conversion must check whether, and where, the relevant installation space is available on the frame. The company completing the conversion bears sole responsibility for conversion including all bolt connections. MAN recommends bolt connection to the frame using ribbed bolts and hexagonal flange nuts in accordance with chapter 1.3.3. The use of nut locking is recommended for all other bolt connections due to rocking and vibrations which may occur.

Fig. 112-III: Overview parts

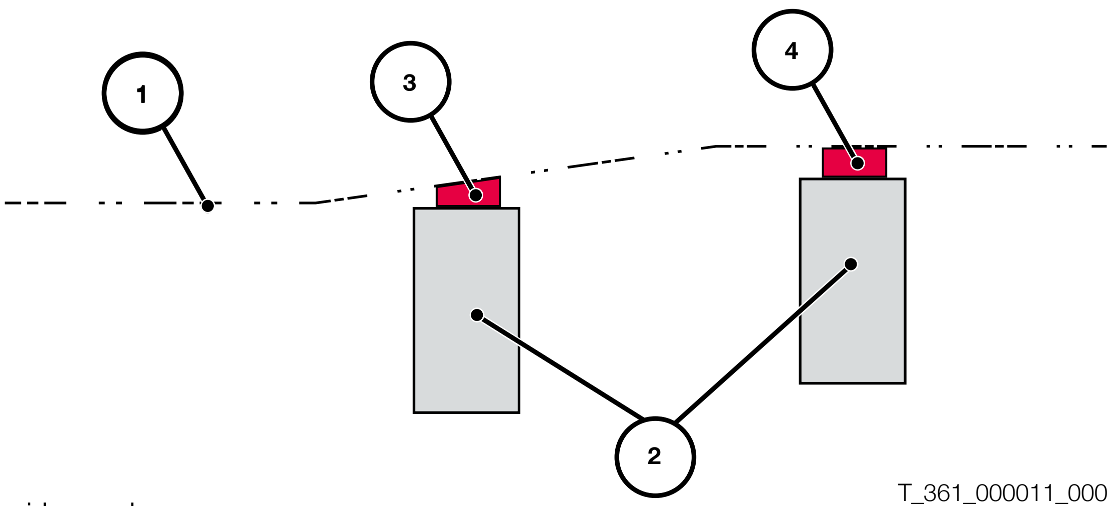


T_361_000010_0001_G

1) Item number 81.41820-0218
2) Item number 81.96002-0237 (2x)
3) Item number 81.66910-0162 (2x)
4) Item number 82.32560-1502
5) Item number 82.32560-1503
6) Item number 82.32561-1505
7) Item number 81.96210-0230 (4x)
8) Item number 82.36045-1501
9) Item number 81.32560-1064

When mounting the cooler/fan unit in the frame chamfer, the spacer 81.41820-0186 and shim 81.90685-5007 (4x) Fig. 113-III) must be used instead of 81.41820.0218 (item 1 Fig. 112-III).

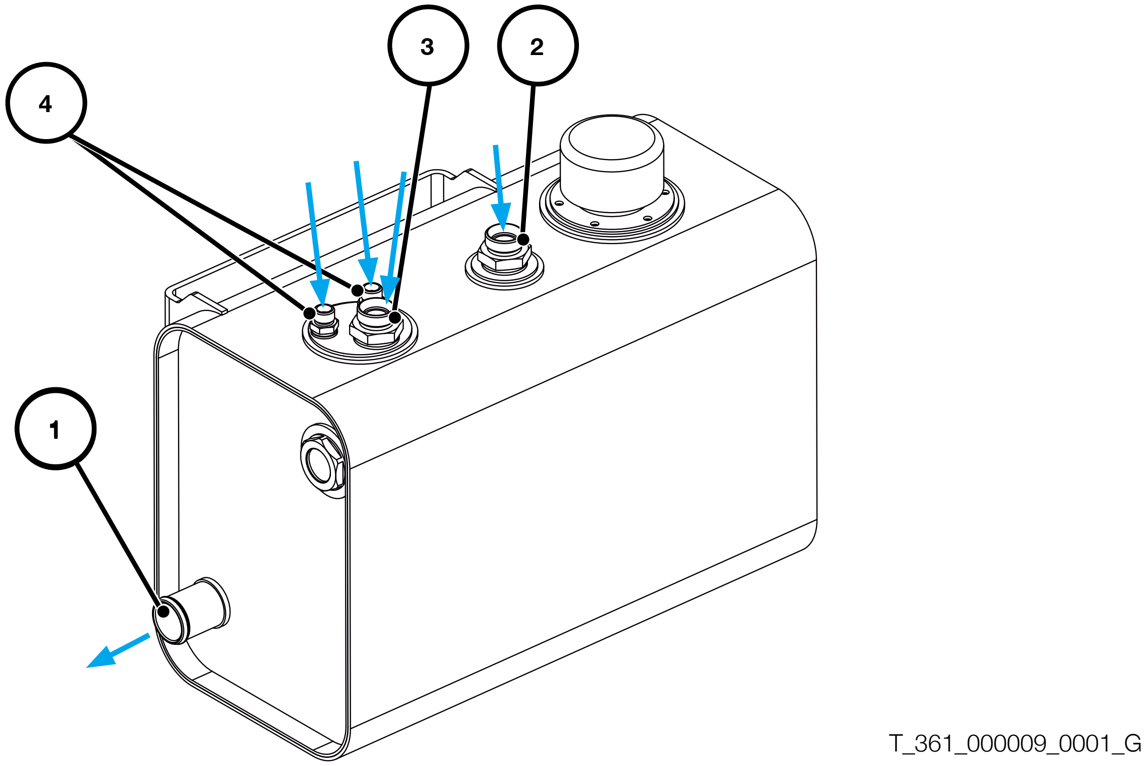
Fig. 113-III: Sketch of frame mounting with the relevant spacers



T_361_000011_0001_G

1) Frame side member
2) Cooler/fan unit
3) Angled spacer (item number 81.41820-0186)
4) Straight spacer (item number 81.41820.0218)

Fig. 114-III: Oil reservoir connections

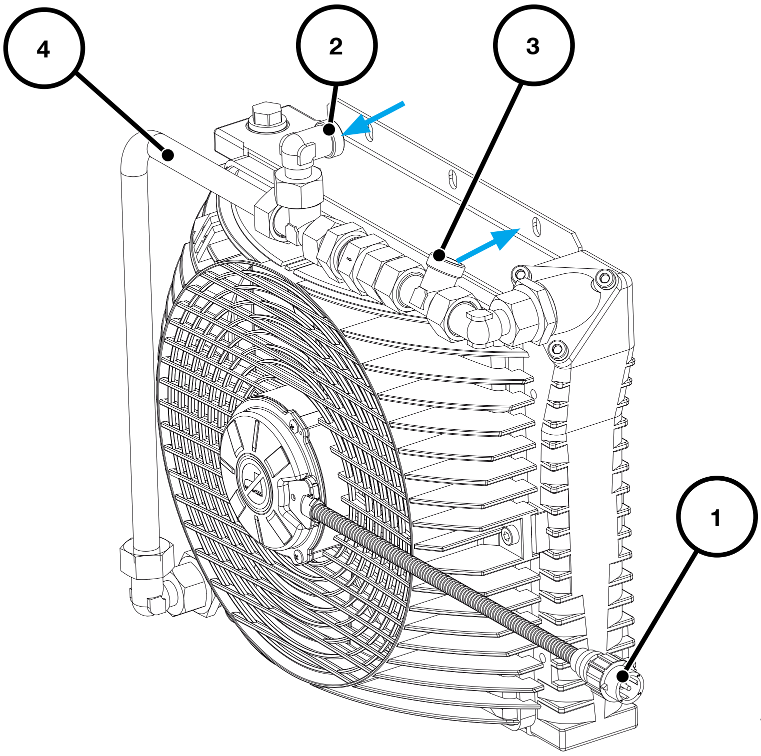


1) Intake line
2) Return line from the oil cooler
3) Return line from the valve block
4) Return overflow oil lines from wheel components

Table 26-III: Specifications for connections and lines on oil reservoir

Item	Specifications for lines	Specifications for connections
1	Nominal dia.: DN 32 (1 ¼“) Hose line type according to MAN item no. 04.27400-0000 (available from MAN Spare Parts Service)	
2,3	Pipe or hose line Nominal dia.: DN 16 Operating pressure: 50 bar Temperature range: -40°C to +120°C Recommended hose line type 3TE to MAN works standard 329 MAN item no. 04.27405-6160 (available from MAN Spare Parts Service)	24° tapered connection DIN EN ISO 8434-1: Size L18 (thread M26x1.5)
4	Pipe or hose line Nominal dia.: DN 6 Operating pressure: 50 bar Temperature range: -40°C to +100°C Recommended hose line type 2TE to MAN works standard 328 MAN item no. 04.27405-3061 (available from MAN Spare Parts Service)	24° tapered connection DIN EN ISO 8434-1: Size L8 (thread M12x1.5)

Fig. 115-III: Cooler/Fan unit connections



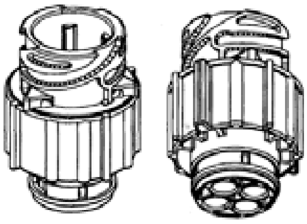
T_361_000005_0001_G

1) For extended cable harness (according to Table 28-III and Table 29-III)
2) Inflow from valve block
3) Return line to tank
4) Bypass piping with check valve (must be installed to protect the cooler from overpressure)

Table 27-III: Specifications for connections and lines to cooler/fan units (cable harness see Table 28-III and Table 29-III)

Item	Specifications for lines	Specifications for connections
2	Pipe or hose line Nominal dia.: DN 16 Operating pressure: 50 bar Temperature range: -40°C to +120°C Hose line type FC 350	24° tapered connection DIN EN ISO 8434-1: Size L18 (thread M26x1.5)
3	Pipe or hose line Nominal dia.: DN 16 Operating pressure: 50 bar Temperature range: -40°C to +120°C Recommended hose line type 3TE to MAN works standard 329 MAN item no. 04.27405-6160 (available from MAN Spare Parts Service)	24° tapered connection DIN EN ISO 8434-1: Size L18 (thread M26x1.5)

Table 28-III: Connector housing SA11 MAN item no.: 81.25432-0419

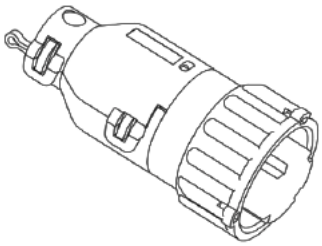


Material for SA11 connector housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	SA11	81.25432-0419	Connector housing
1	AW37	81.25433-0159	Adapter/End housing NW8.5
1	GV29	81.25475-0109	Locking
2	XT4-2<5	07.91216-0106	Contact (single item)
2	DL14	07.91163-0067	Seal insert
2	DL12	07.91163-0065	Gasket

SA11 connector housing pin assignment				
PIN	Line	Cross section mm^2	Contact	Seal insert
1	92356	2,50	XT4-2<5	DL14
2	31000	2,50	XT4-2<5	DL14
3	not used	-	-	DL12
4	not used	-	-	DL12

Material for cable harness		
Stück	MAN item number	Material/Line
1	07.08131-0907	Lines FLRY-2.5-A-BR
1	07.08131-0908	Lines FLRY-2.5-A-WS
1	04.37135-9938	Corrugated tube 8.5 dia.

Table 29-III: Socket housing BA9 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0189



Material for BA9 socket housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	SA11	81.25475-0189	Socket housing
1	GV1	81.25435-0951	Locking
2	XU4-2<5	07.91216-0156	Contact (single item)
2	DL9	07.91163-0059	Seal insert
2	DL7	07.91163-0057	Gasket

Pin assignment BA9 socket housing				
PIN	Line	Cross section mm^2	Contact	Seal insert
1	92356	2,50	XU4-2<5	DL9
2	31000	2,50	XU4-2<5	DL9
3	not used	-	-	DL7
4	not used	-	-	DL7

6.8.3 Protective covers for the HydroDrive

For tipper vehicles and other chassis with superstructures for which there is a risk that the load will fall into the area of the cooler/fan unit, an oil cooler cover should be mounted for protection.

It is also recommendable to attach a protective cover to avoid damage to the fan if, after conversion work, the cooler/fan unit is mounted in a position subject to stone chip impacts or soiling (e.g. in front of the rear axle).

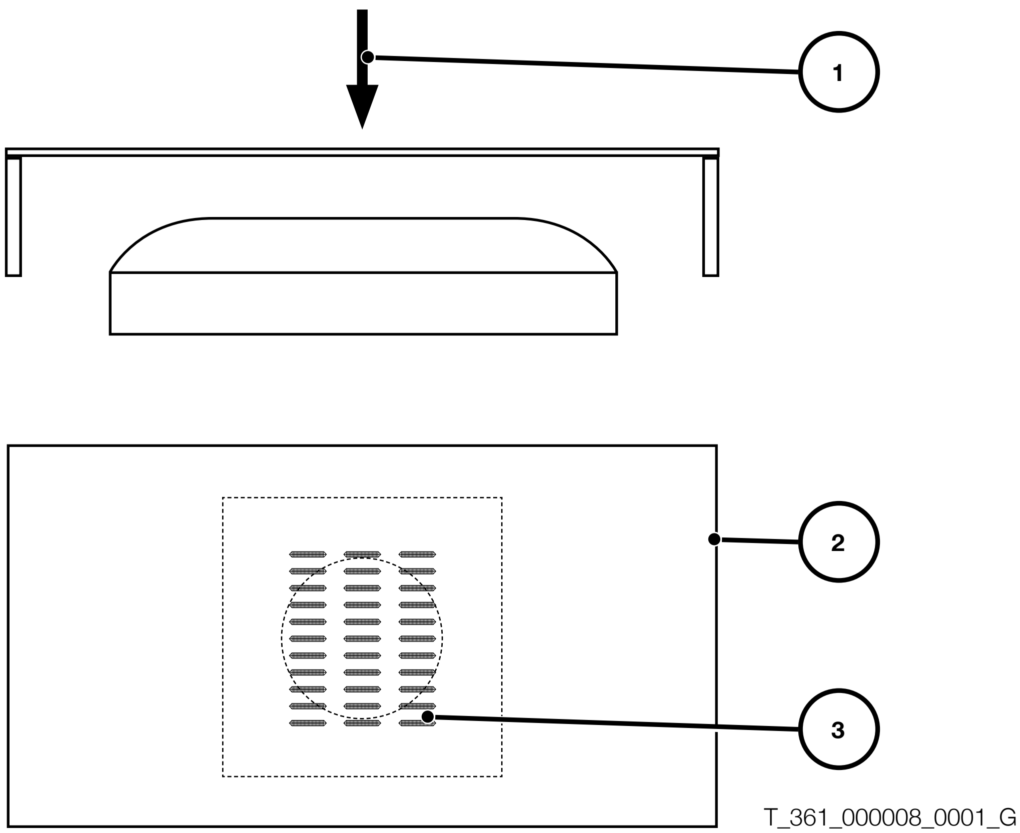
For HydroDrive-equipped semitrailer tractors, a protective cover for the cooler/fan is available ex works as special equipment and can also be retrofitted (installation item number 81.36000-8134).

You can also make and fit a protective cover on your own responsibility (see Fig. 116-III).

In this case, the following apply:

- 50% of the ace above the fan wheel must be designed so that the exhaust air can be evacuated without obstruction (e.g. using ventilation grilles), as otherwise the possible operating time for the HydroDrive will be reduced.
- Minimum distance from fan ≥ 120 mm
- Access to the cooler/fan unit must be ensured.
- It must be ensured that the protective cover or support frame possesses sufficient rigidity, as it may be subjected to loads (e.g. when the cover is walked on)

Fig. 116-III: Example of a protective cover



1) Vertical load
2) Protective cover
3) Vents

7.0 Running gear

7.1 General

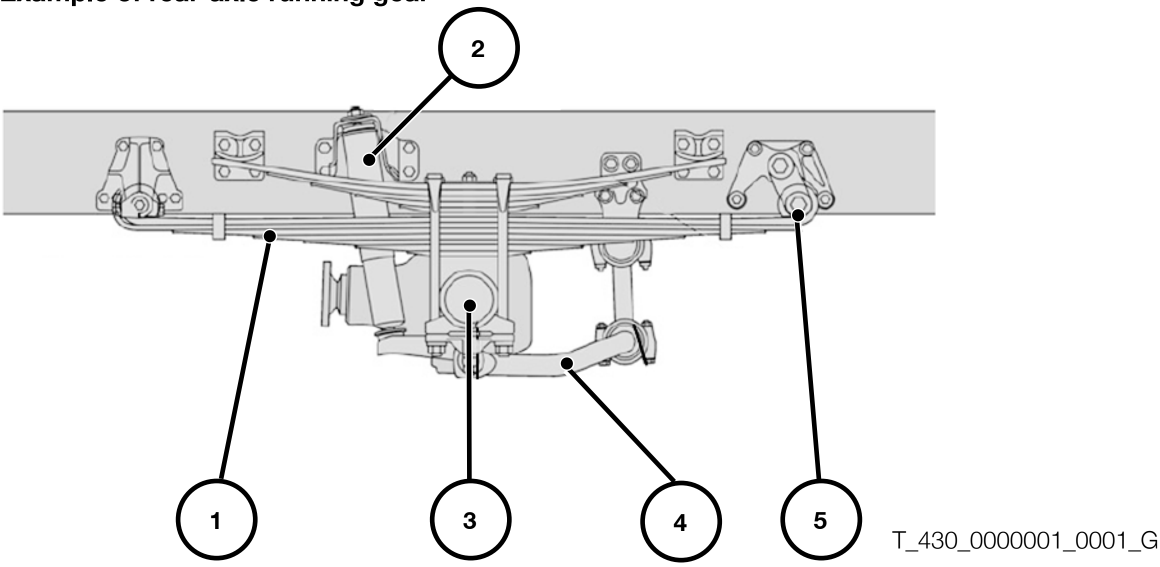
Running gear in the context of these guidelines refers to the totality of parts forming the connection between the chassis frame and the wheels.

The running gear consists of:

- Axles with wheel bearings
- Steering
- Springs
- Vibration dampers
- Axle-guide elements
- Stabilisers

It serves to determine the direction of travel and tracking, the transmission of weight, tracking, acceleration and deceleration forces as well as to compensate for the changes in distances, forces and movements that occur during driving operation.

Fig. 117-III: Example of rear-axle running gear



1) Trapezoidal springs (spring assembly)
2) Vibration damper
3) Axle
4) Stabiliser
5) Spring shackle

7.2 Modifications to the running gear

Interventions in the axle assemblies and individual parts thereof (e.g. steering components, arms, springs, absorbers) as well as their mountings and fixations to the frame are not permissible.

Additionally, it is forbidden to create new assembly groups out of the above-mentioned individual parts.

No parts of the suspension or spring leaves may be modified or removed. It is not permitted for suspension types or systems to be fitted on one and the same axle.

If the suspension system on one axle is changed (from leaf spring to air, for example), then approval must be obtained from MAN (for address, see “Publisher” above).

Before conversion, verifiable documents must be sent to MAN. The company carrying out the conversion is responsible for the design, demonstrating sufficient strength and reviewing changes to handling characteristics.

7.3 Equipment-related notes

A range of chassis options providing beneficial characteristics for different bodies is available for MAN vehicles. Check availability in advance with the nearest sales branch.

<u>Variable axle load ratio to improve traction (sales code 128VA)</u>
The drive axle is optimally loaded by the variable axle load ratio. With increasing load, the drive axle is increased to the value of the permitted axle load. The additional load is carried by the leading or trailing axle. This equipment option can influence the axle load capacity utilisation of the overall vehicle both positively and negatively, depending on body type. Selection of this equipment option requires precise vehicle configuration for all load conditions. The minimum front axle load in particular (see Chapter III Section 2.2.8) must be checked exactly.

The equipment described below is recommended in particular for bodies with high centres of gravity.

<u>Stabilisers</u>
Stabilisers reduces rolling exhibited by the fitted vehicle, thereby improving handling. For example, a rolling motion of the body causes the stabiliser to be subjected to torsion. The reaction torques that occur counteract the rolling torque.
The stabilisers on the front and rear axles are available under sales codes 362AA and 363AA.

For vehicles with a tandem-axle assembly, it is possible to order an additional stabiliser under sales code 362AH. In this case, a stabiliser is installed on both rear axles, thereby increasing the roll stabilisation.
Special equipment (sales code 362AG) is available for installation space-critical bodies such as the roll-off skip loader; this equipment reduces the extent to which wishbone or spring brake protrude beyond the top edge of the frame when compressed.

<u>High-load stabilisation packages</u>
The high-load roll stabilisation includes, in addition to the standard stabiliser, an X control arm (four-point control arm with stabiliser function) and specially tailored shock absorbers. The high-load package is also available with Continuous Damping Control (CDC). It can only be selected in combination with the air suspension for high centres of gravity. Active driving safety is improved by stabilisation of the chassis. In addition, the rolling motion is reduced when cornering. The installed X control arm does not protrude beyond the top edge of the frame when the air suspension is lowered. The high-load stabilisation packages are available under sales codes 362CN and 362CP.

<u>Air rear springs for high centre of gravity</u>
The spring rate of the air-suspension bellows is tailored specifically for the needs of high-load deployment. As a result, the roll motion is reduced and the driving characteristics improved. The air suspension is available under sales codes 028MW and 028MZ.

Continuous Damping Control (CDC)
The active roll stabilisation CDC (continuous damping control; sales code 283FW) uses various input parameters to ascertain the current driving and loading condition and automatically controls damping of the vehicle. The optimal damping is therefore always achieved, regardless of the payload. Rolling and pitching motion is minimised and handling is improved.

Chassis components for installation space-critical bodies

The equipment described below is recommended in particular for installation space-critical bodies.

Driving height raised by 30 mm for roll-off skip loader (sales code 281SC)
The driving height is raised by 30 mm to ensure that no chassis components (such as the wishbone) protrude beyond the top edge of the frame when the air suspension is lowered, causing installation space conflicts with the hydraulic cylinder or other parts on the roll-off device. Where required, this equipment can also be used for other bodies if there are problems with the installation space.

Rear axle shock absorber set lower and driving height raised by 30 mm for roll-off skip loader (sales code 240RK)
The driving height is raised by 30 mm to ensure that no chassis components (such as the wishbone, shock absorbers) protrude beyond the top edge of the frame when the air suspension is lowered, causing installation space conflicts with the hydraulic cylinder or other parts on the roll-off device. In addition, the shock absorber mounts are set lower, so that these are situated below the top edge of the frame. Where required, this equipment can also be used for other bodies if there are problems with the installation space.

Rear axle shock absorbers set lower for high-volume vehicle body (sales code 240RL)
Installation of shortened shock absorbers, whereby the shock absorber mounts are situated below the top edge of the frame. Raising the air suspension beyond that of the driving position is limited to 145 mm. The wishbone protrudes beyond the top edge of the frame when the air suspension is lowered. Where required, this equipment can also be used for other bodies if there are problems with the installation space.

8.0 Electrical/electronic system (on-board network)

8.1 General

MAN vehicles employ many electronic systems for controlling, regulating and monitoring vehicle functions.
Full networking of the equipment fully guarantees that sensor readings can be processed to the same extent by all control units. This reduces the number of sensors, leads and connectors, and consequently means fewer error sources.

Network leads in a vehicle are recognizable because they are twisted. Several CAN bus systems are used in parallel and this enables them to be optimally adapted to perform their respective tasks. All data bus systems are reserved for exclusive use by the MAN vehicle electronics system; access to these bus systems is prohibited, with the exception of the bodybuilder CAN bus.

The “Electrical/electronic systems” chapter cannot present exhaustive information on all questions arising in connection with the on-board network of a modern commercial vehicle. Further information on individual systems can be found in the respective repair manuals. Repair manuals are supplied by the Spare-parts Service. Technical information can also be obtained from the MAN After Sales Portal (www.asp.mantruckandbus.com, registration required). The portal provides access to service and repair manuals, the MAN diagnostic system, circuit diagrams, standard times and Service Bulletins.

Electrical and electronic systems and wiring incorporated in a commercial vehicle comply with the respective national plus European standards and directives, regarded as a minimum requirement. MAN standards are often considerably more stringent than national and international standards. As a result, many electronic systems have been adapted and expanded.

In some cases, for reasons of quality or safety, MAN stipulates the condition that MAN standards are used.
This is then stated in the corresponding sections. Bodybuilders can obtain the MAN standards from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu, registration required).
There is no automatic exchange service.

8.1.1 Electromagnetic compatibility

Due to the interaction between the different electrical components, electronic systems, the vehicle itself and the environment, the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) must be tested. All systems in MAN vehicles must meet the requirements set down in MAN standard M3285, obtainable from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).

On delivery ex works, MAN vehicles meet the requirements set down in ECE R10 in the valid version at the time of delivery. All equipment (definition of equipment as in 89/336/EEC) that is installed in the vehicle by the bodybuilder must meet the corresponding statutory regulations iand be labelled accordingly (E label as per ECE R10, as applicable). The bodybuilder is responsible for the EMC of its components and/or systems.
After installing such components and/or systems, the bodybuilder remains responsible for ensuring that the vehicle still meets the current statutory requirements. Freedom from feedback between the body-side electrics/ electronics and those of the vehicle must be ensured, especially where body-side interference could affect the operation of on-board units for road toll logging, telematics equipment, telecommunications systems or other equipment fitted to the vehicle.

8.1.2 Static discharge

The body manufacturer must ensure that electrostatic discharge is avoided by means of retrofitting appropriate devices or with the use of appropriate measures.

8.1.3 Radio equipment and aerials

All equipment installed on the vehicle must comply with current statutory requirements. All radio equipment (e.g. radio units, mobile telephones, navigation systems, on-board units for road toll logging etc.) must be properly equipped with external aerials.

In other words:

- Devices such as a radio remote control for body functions must not interfere with functions of the vehicle.
- Existing wiring must not be moved or used for additional purposes.
- Use as a power supply is not permitted (exception: approved MAN active antennas and their leads).
- Access must not be hindered to other vehicle components for maintenance and repair.
- If holes are drilled in the roof, these must be at the locations provided for in the MAN design, using approved installation materials (e.g. self-tapping screws, seals).

Antennas, leads, cables, sockets and plugs approved by MAN are obtainable through the spare parts service.

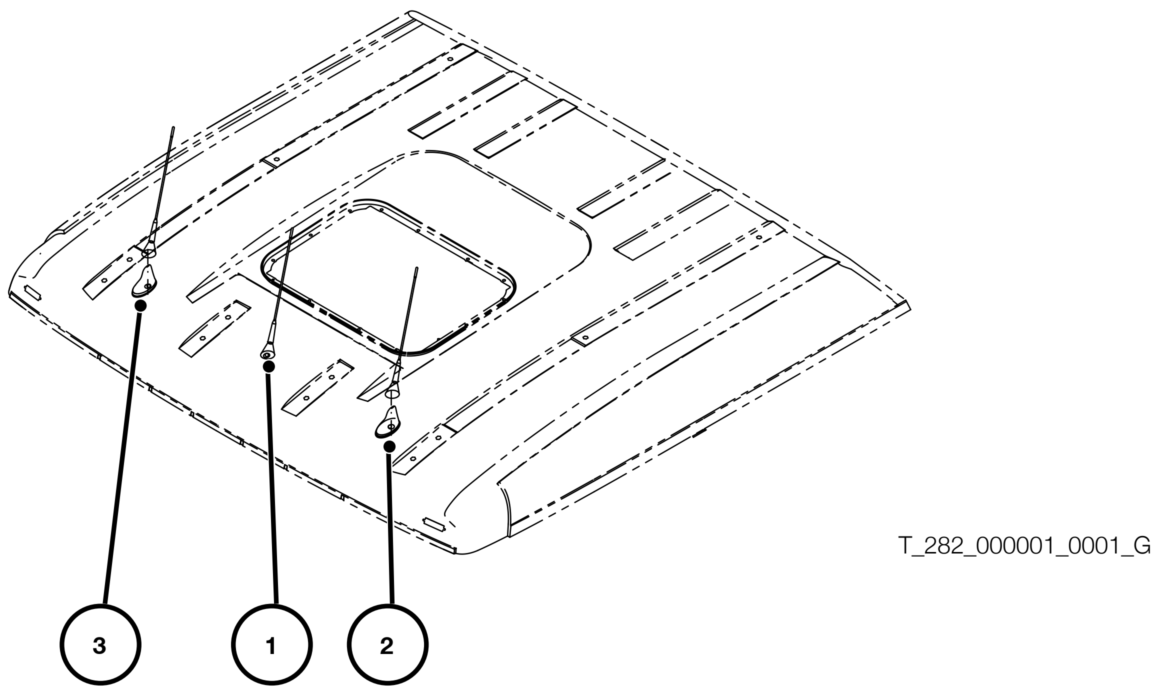
Annex I of EU Council directive 72/245/EEC in its version 2004/104/EC stipulates that possible locations of transmitting antennas, permissible frequency bands and transmitting power are to be published.

For the following frequency bands the proper fitting at the attachment points stipulated by MAN (see Fig. 118-III) on the cab roof is permitted.

Table 30-III: Frequency bands approved for roof attachment

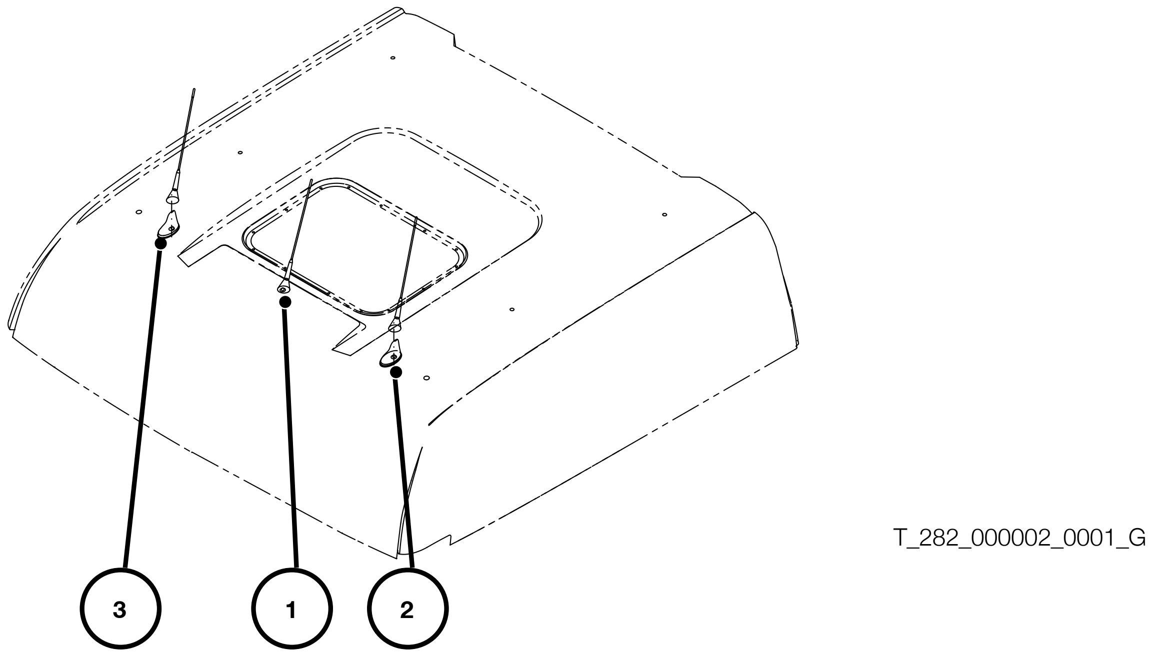
Frequency band	Frequency range	Max. transmitting power
Kurzwelle	< 50 MHz	10 W
4 m-band	66 MHz to 88 MHz	10 W
2 m-band	144 MHz to 178 MHz	10 W
70 cm band	380 MHz to 480 MHz	10 W
GSM 900	880 MHz to 915 MHz	10 W
GSM 1800	1.710,2 MHz to 1.785 MHz	10 W
GSM 1900	1.850,2 MHz to 1.910 MHz	10 W
UMTS	1.920 MHz to 1.980 MHz	10 W

Fig. 118-III: Schematic diagram of installation locations on cab roof



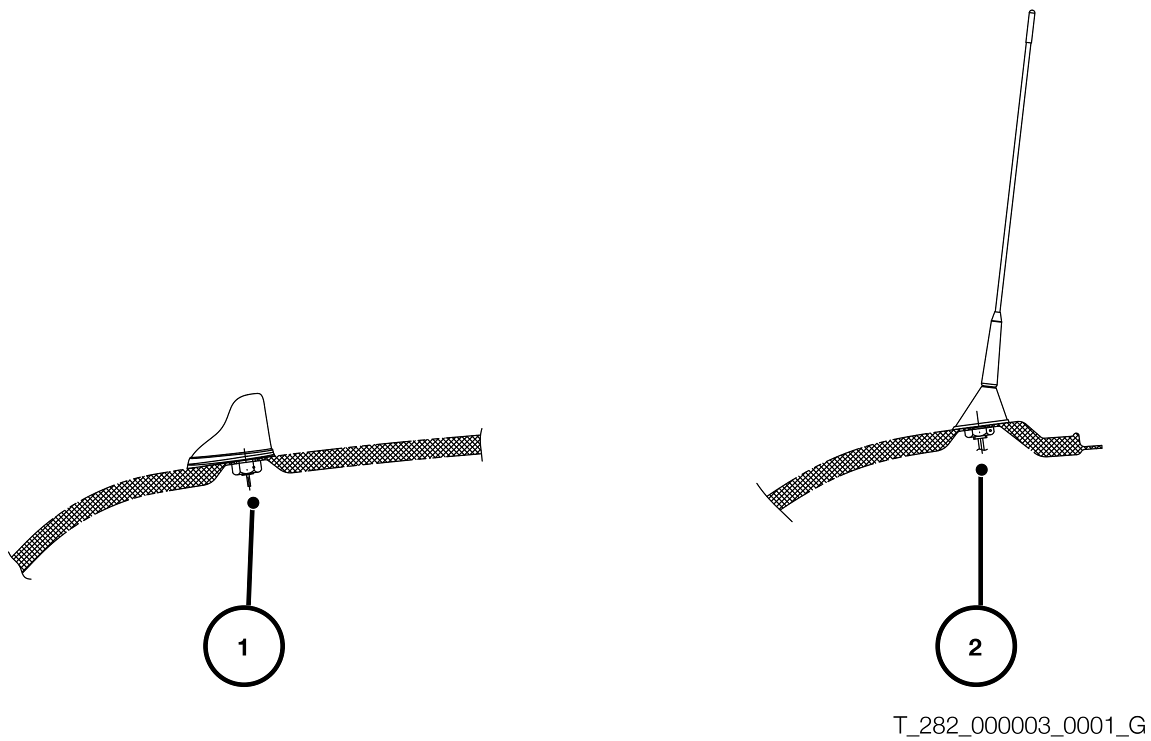
1) Installation location, Position 1
2) Installation location, Position 2
3) Installation location, Position 3

Fig. 119-III: Schematic diagram of installation locations on cab with high roof



1) Installation location, Position 1
2) Installation location, Position 2
3) Installation location, Position 3

Fig. 120-III: Diagram showing bolted connection



1) 81.28240.0151, tightening torque 6 Nm, transition resistance ≤ 1 Ω
2) 81.28200.8355, tightening torque 7 Nm ±0.5 Nm, transition resistance ≤ 1 Ω

Table 31-III: Overview of aerial equipment

Designation	Item no.	Position	Aerial, see electrical parts list
Aerial installation	81.28200.8365	Pos. 1	Radio aerial
Aerial installation	81.28200.8367	Pos. 1	Radio aerial + D and E networks
Aerial installation	81.28200.8369	Pos. 1	Radio aerial + D and E networks + GPS
Radio aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8370	Pos. 2	CB radio aerial
Radio aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8371	Pos. 3	
Radio aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8372	Pos. 2	Trunked radio aerial
Radio aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8373	Pos. 3	
Radio aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8374	Pos. 2	Radio aerial (2-m band)
Radio aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8375	Pos. 3	
Aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8377	Pos. 3	GSM and GPS aerial for toll system
Aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8378	Pos. 2	
Radio aerial installation, LHD	82.28200.8004	Pos. 2	CB-radio and radio aerial
Combined aerial installation, RHD	81.28205.8005	Pos. 3	GSM + D and E networks + GPS + CB-radio aerial
Combined aerial installation, LHD	81.28205.8004	Pos. 2	

8.1.4 Diagnostics concept and parameterisation using MAN-cats

MAN-cats is the MAN tool for diagnosis and parameterisation of electronic systems in vehicles. MAN-cats is used in all MAN Service outlets.

If the bodybuilder or the customer informs MAN of the intended use or the body type (e.g. for the intermediate speed control interface) when the vehicle is ordered, these can be incorporated into the vehicle at the factory using EOL (end-of-line) programming. If this variant is possible, under certain circumstances it may not be necessary to carry out parameterisation with MAN-cats.

MAN-cats must be then used if the parameters set in the vehicle are to be changed. For certain types of intervention in the vehicle systems the electronics specialists at MAN Service outlets are able to contact systems specialists at the MAN plant to obtain the appropriate releases, approvals and system solutions.

Important notice

For vehicle modifications that require approval or are relevant to safety, necessary adaptation of a chassis to the bodywork, conversion measures or retrofits, clarify with a MAN-cats specialist from the nearest MAN Service outlet before beginning whether the vehicle will require new parameterisation.

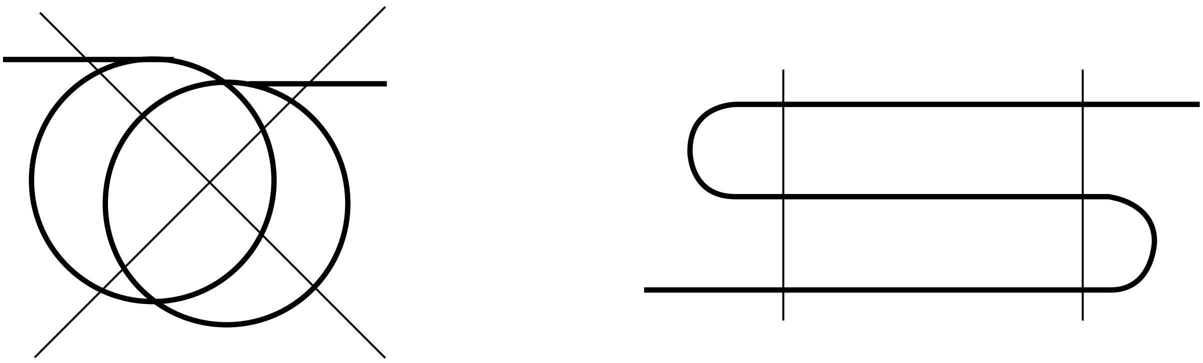
8.2 Cables

8.2.1 Routing cables

The following must be observed for all cable routing:

- Overlengths must not be laid in coil-like rings but only in loops to the side of the cable harness (see Fig. 121-III: Cable routings).

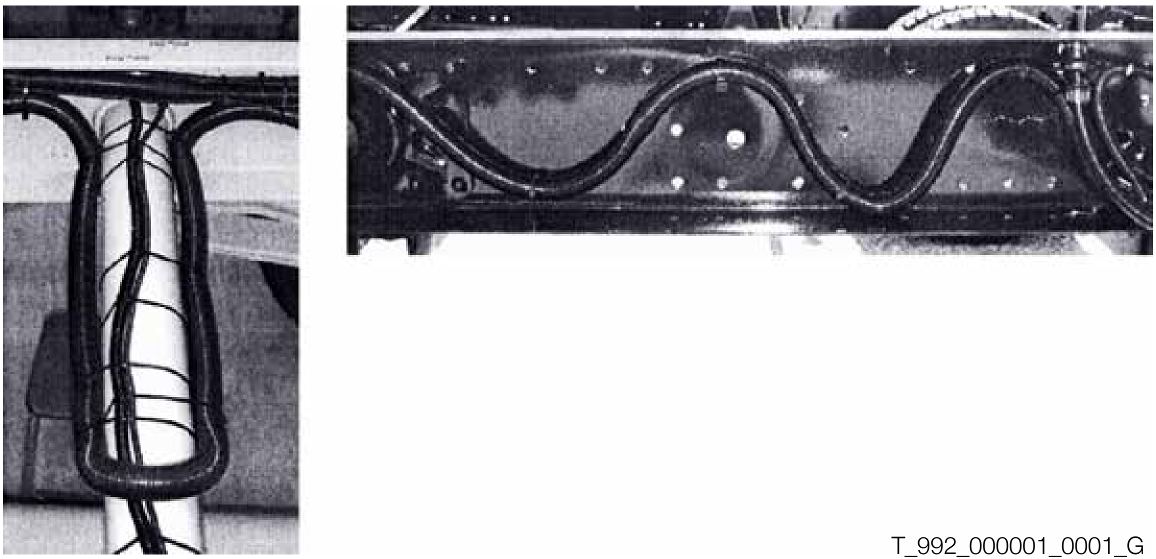
Fig. 121-III: Cable routings



T_998_000003_0001_G

- The cable harness must be secured in such a manner that no movement relative to the frame can occur, see Fig. 122-III: Routing examples).

Fig. 122-III: Routing examples



T_992_000001_0001_G

The relevant notes in Chapter III, Section 6.3.5.2 “Routing lines” are to be observed when routing and fastening lines.

8.2.2 Ground cable

MAN frames are voltage-free in that neither the positive nor the ground cable is connected to it. Together with the positive cable, consumers must always have their own ground cables routed to them.

Ground points to which the bodybuilder can connect ground cables are located as follows:

- In the central electrics box
- Behind the combined instrument
- On the rear right-hand engine mount.

No more than a total of 10 A (actual current demand) may be tapped at the ground points behind the central electrics box and behind the combined instrument. Cigarette lighters and any extra sockets have their own power limitations, which can be found in the operating manual.

The bodybuilder's ground cable may as a general rule be connected to the common ground point at the engine and under the following conditions may be connected to the negative terminal of the batteries.

- The vehicle is equipped with an ground cable between engine and frame (standard from January 2010 production on).
- The battery terminal has sufficient room for connection of the ground cable.

Further information and instructions on connecting additional consumers can be found in Chapter III, Section 8.4 "Additional consumers".

8.2.3 Wiring harnesses for wheelbase extensions

When wheelbases are extended, control units and sensors associated with the rear axle also have to be relocated along with the axle.
As a basic principle, CAN wiring harnesses may never be cut and lengthened and for this reason, MAN offers cable-harness extensions each with a 1500 mm length of corrugated tubing. If these extensions are not sufficient, two of the cable harnesses described here can be connected in series. Only when the method described here is used can the movement of control units and sensors be considered as approved.

Control units and sensors associated with the rear axle

Basic equipment on all TG vehicles:

- EBS axle modulator (one module for all rear axles)
- Switch, check for parking brake

In the case of air suspension on the rear axle(s), the following are added:

- Displacement sensor (left and right)
- Valve block, ECAS

Depending on version and equipment, the following cabling is fitted.

- Differential-lock plug connector

Cable extensions from the EBS axle-modulator to the sensors on the respective wheel (speed sensors, brake-lining wear sensors) are not necessary if the EBS axle-modulator module is relocated together with the rear axle.

Implementation

In some cases, cable extensions entail minor reworking of the original cable-harness plug. This is explained in detail below, where the small items that are necessary (e.g. plug housings, locking mechanisms and adapters) are referred to by their codes. Table 32-III lists a breakdown of the associated item numbers.

Table 32-III: Breakdown of codes for small items

Code	Designation	MAN part no.	Supplier	Supplier's item no.
AW64	Adapter	81.25433.0184	Schlemmer	7807 029 K
AW65	Adapter	81.25433.0182	Schlemmer	7807 025 K
BA20	Connector housing	81.25432.0337	Grote&Hartmann	18169 000 001
BA21	Connector housing	81.25432.0338	Grote&Hartmann	18170 000 001
BA28	Connector housing	81.25432.0347	Grote&Hartmann	18166 000 001
BA70	Connector housing	81.25432.0434	Grote&Hartmann	18385 000 001
BA71	Connector housing	81.25432.0433	Grote&Hartmann	18286 000 001
BA72	Connector housing	81.25432.0436	Grote&Hartmann	18284 000 001
BB68	Connector housing	81.25432.0435	Grote&Hartmann	18515 000 001
BB69	Connector housing	81.25432.0437	Grote&Hartmann	18516 000 001
BB70	Connector housing	81.25432.0438	Grote&Hartmann	18514 000 001
GV10	Locking slide	81.25435.0994	Grote&Hartmann	14816 660 636
GV12	Locking slide	81.25435.0996	Grote&Hartmann	14818 660 636
SS1	Shrink-fit hose	81.96503.0008	Raychem	RBK 85KT 107 A 0

Table 33-III: Cable-harness extensions

Series	Relocated unit / sensor	Item no. extension, qty.	Description / reworking
TGA TGS TGX	EBS rear-axle modulator (Y264)	81.25453.6306 1 x 4-pole	Unplug the 4-pole green connector (BA 28) on frame cable harness from the EBS rear-axle modulator. Disassemble the lock (GV12), eject the contacts and push into a new housing (BB69) with identical pin socket collar. Re-assemble lock GV12. Connect with adapter 81.25433.0184 (AW64) corrugated tube and plug (BB69). Alternative: Attach existing housing and cable-harness extension with shrink-down plastic tube (e.g. SS1) to corrugated tube.
TGL TGM	EBS rear-axle modulator (Y264)	81.25453.6305 1 x 4-pole	Unplug the factory-fitted connecting cable from the axle modulator. Plug the extension into the connecting cable. Plug the extended harness into the axle modulator. Note: On the TGL and TGM the same adapter is used for extending cable harness 81.25453.6305 from: EBS axle modulator, differential lock, displacement sensors left and rights and ECAS valve block.
TGA TGS TGX	Parking brake warning lamp switch B369	81.25453.6305 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole DIN bayonet connection from parking brake warning lamp switch and lengthen using extension cable harness.
TGL TGM	Parking brake warning lamp switch B369	85.25413.6345 1 x 4-pole	

Table 34-III: Equipment-dependent cable-harness extensions

Series	Relocated unit / sensor	Item no. extension, qty.	Description / reworking
TGA TGS TGX	Differential lock X637	81.25453.6307 1 x 4-pole	Separate at the point of separation X637 and insert extension in between.
TGL TGM	Differential lock S185	81.25453.6305 1 x 4-pole	Same cable harness for extending EBS axle modulator, displacement sensors and ECAS valve block.

Table 35-III: Cable-harness extensions for air suspension on rear axles or on all axles

<table>
<tr><th>Series</th><th>Relocated unit / sensor</th><th>Item no. extension, qty.</th><th>Description / reworking</th></tr>
<tr><td>TGA
TGL
TGM
TGS
TGX</td><td>Displacement sensor, rear axle, left B129, right B130</td><td>81.25453.6305
2 x 4-pole
(one each on left and right). On TGA 4x2 tractor unit only one displacement sensor.</td><td rowspan="4">On the TGL and TGM the same adapter is used for extending cable harness 81.25453.6305 from: EBS axle modulator and differential lock.</td></tr>
<tr><td>TGA
TGL
TGM
TGS
TGX</td><td>Valve block ECAS Y132 Two-axle version, leaf/air</td><td>81.25453.6305
1 x 4-pole</td></tr>
<tr><td>TGA
TGL
TGM
TGS
TGX</td><td>Valve block ECAS Y132/61and Y132/62 Two-axle version, air/air</td><td>81.25453.6305
2 x 4-pole
(per valve block)</td></tr>
<tr><td>TGA
TGL
TGM
TGS
TGX</td><td>Valve block ECAS Y161/I and Y161/II > Two-axle version, leaf/air and air/air</td><td>81.25453.6305
2 x 4-pole
(per valve block)</td></tr>
</table>

Each of the speed and brake lining wear sensors itemised in Table 36-III below are plugged into the corresponding EBS axle modulator on the rear axles. The associated cabling does not need to be extended when extending the wheelbase because the axle modulator is moved together with the rear axle. For reasons of completeness and for special designs, extension cable harnesses for speed and brake lining wear sensors are nevertheless available.

Table 36-III: Cable-harness extensions for special cases

Series	Relocated unit / sensor	Item no. extension, qty.	Description / reworking
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Speed sensor, drive axle left B121	81.25453.6377 1 x 2-pole	Unplug 2-pole connector (grey BA20 left, black BA21 right) from EBS axle modulator on rear axle. Disassemble lock (GV10), eject contacts and push in a new housing with identical pin socket collar (BA70 left, BA71 right). Re-assemble lock (GV10). Connect using shrinkdown plastic tube (e.g. SS1), corrugated tube and plug (BA70/BA71). Alternative: Attach existing housing and cable-harness extension with shrinkdown plastic tube (e.g. SS1) to corrugated tube.
	Speed sensor, drive axle right B122	81.25453.6378 1 x 2-pole	
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Brake-lining wear sensor B335, left drive axle	81.25453.6387 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole connector (black BA72 left, orange BB70 right) from EBS axle modulator on rear axle. Connect corrugated tube and connector with adapter 81.25433.0184 (AW64) and extend brake-lining wear sensor with extension 81.25453.6387 left / 81.25453.6388 right. Insert plug of extension (black left, orange right) into EBS axle modulator on rear axle.
	Brake-lining wear sensor B334 Right drive axle, applies to drive axle on 4x2, 6x2/2, 6x2-4, 6x2/4, rear drive axle on 4x4 and rear axle 1 for all other wheel configurations	81.25453.6388 1 x 4-pole	
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Brake-lining wear sensor B335 Drive axle 2 rear left	81.25453.6387 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole connector (black BA72 left, orange BB70 right) from brake-lining wear sensor distributor (left X2431, right X2432) and insert extension (81.25453.6387 left / 81.25453.6388 right) in-between.
	Brake-lining wear sensor B334 Drive axle 2 rear right, applies to the 2nd rear drive axle on 6x4, 6x6, 8x4, 8x6 and 8x8	81.25453.6388 1 x 4-pole	
TGA (TGL TGM) TGS TGX	Brake-lining wear sensor B530 Supplementary axle, rear left	81.25453.6385 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole connector (green BB69 left, grey BB68 right) from brake-lining wear sensor distributor, (left X2431, right X2432) and insert extension (81.25453.6385 left / 81.25453.6386 right) in-between. Last updated 5.2006: supplementary axles are in planning for TGL and TGM.
	Brake-lining wear sensor B529 Right rear supplementary axle, applies to leading/ trailing axle on 6x2/2, 6x2-4, 6x2/4	81.25453.6386 1 x 4-pole	

8.2.4 Cable harnesses for rear position lamps, additional rear position lamps, trailer sockets, side marker lamps and supplementary ABS sockets

The possible applications for these cable extensions are:

- cable-harness extension for rear position lamps and trailer sockets as a result of overhang extensions
- Connection of supplementary rear position lamps via T-distributor
- Connection of supplementary sockets via T-distributor – potential applications:
    - Installation of 15-pole and Type 24N/24S 7-pole sockets
    - Installation of sockets behind cab for semitrailer
    - Installation of trailer sockets on frame end
- Cable-harness extensions for side marker lights

To extend cable harnesses or fit supplementary lights/sockets, only the cable harnesses described here may be used so as to ensure the correct functioning of the CAN data network.

Table 37-III: Extension cable harnesses, rear position lamps

Series	Designation	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Extension cable harness for rear position lamps (per lamp)	1	81.25428.6975
	Extension cable harness for rear position lamps (per lamp)	1,5	81.25428.6982

Table 38-III: Extension cable harnesses for trailer sockets

Series	Designation	Plug colour	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Black	1	81.25428.6971
	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Black	1,5	81.25428.6972
	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Brown	1	81.25428.6973
	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Brown	1,5	81.25428.6974

Pin-out depends on the plug colour of the cable harnesses:

Table 39-III: Assignment of socket to plug colour of the cable

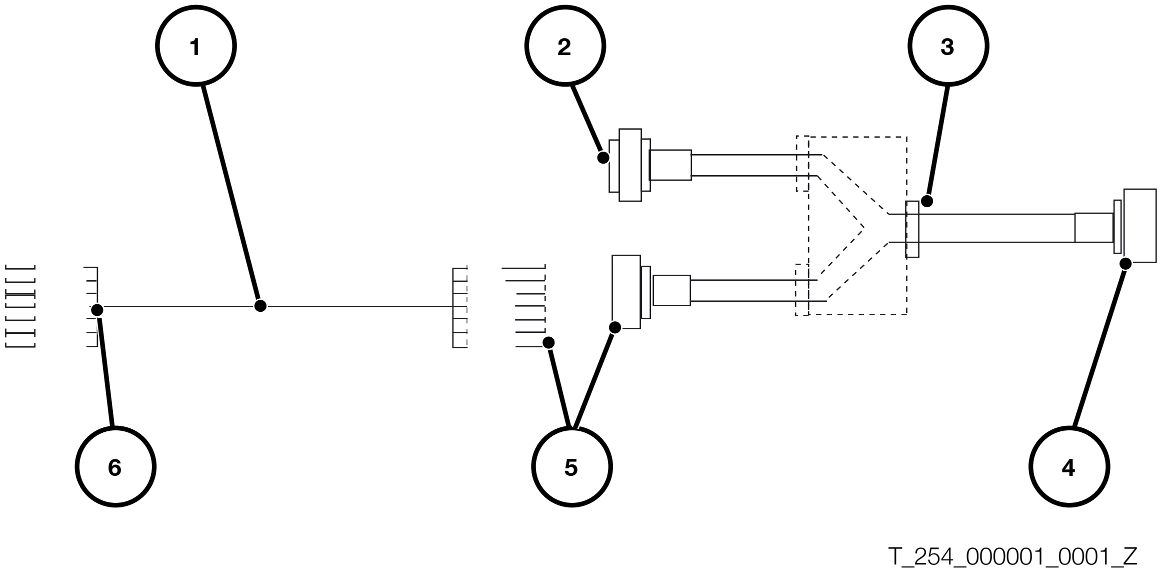
Socket	Use	Standard	plug
Type 24 N	24 V 7-pole N=normal	DIN ISO 1185	1 x black
Type 24 S	24 V 7-pole S=supplementary	DIN ISO 3731	1 x brown
15 pole	24 V 15-pin	DIN ISO 12098	1 x black + 1 x brown

Adapter cable harnesses (T-distributors) for rear position lamps and trailer sockets are available for fitting supplementary lights and trailer sockets The functional principle is shown in Fig. 123-III.

Table 40-III: Adapter cable harnesses (T-distributors) for supplementary rear position lamps

Series	Designation	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Adapter cable harness for rear position lamp	1,1	81.25432.6164
	Adapter cable harness for rear position lamp	1,6	81.25432.6165

Fig. 123-III: Functional principle of T-distributor based on example of supplementary lamp



1) Plug extension cable harness for rear position lamp
2) Plug in the previously used connecting cable for rear position lamp here
3) Plug extension cable harness (T-distributor) for rear position lamp
4) into factory-fitted rear position lamp
5) Connect cables
6) Plug into supplementary rear position lamp

Table 41-III: Adapter cable harness (T-distributor) for additional trailer sockets

Adapter cable harness (T-distributor) for additional trailer sockets	Plug colour	Length in metres	MAN part no.
Adapter cable harness, symmetrical T-piece	Black	approx. 0.25	81.25432.6157
Adapter cable harness, symmetrical T-piece	Brown	approx. 0.25	81.25432.6160
Adapter cable harness, asymmetrical T-piece	Black	approx. 0.7	81.25432.6173
Adapter cable harness, asymmetrical T-piece	Brown	approx. 0.7	81.25432.6174

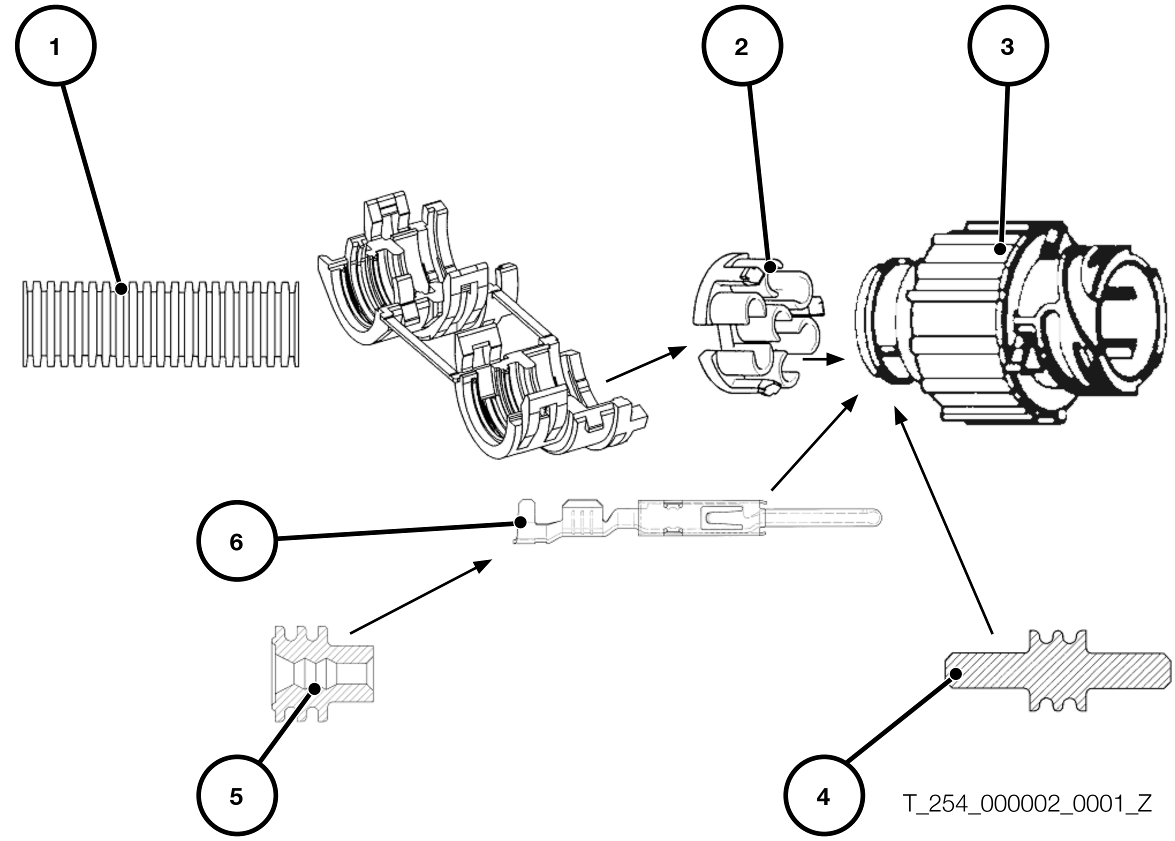
Depending on the body, it may also be necessary to relocate the side marker lamps (the statutory regulations applicable to lighting system are to be observed). If the connection cables are too short, cable-harness extensions in various lengths are available. Only original MAN side marker lamps using LED technology are permitted.
Use of any other lamps will result in the partial operating permit for the lighting system to become invalid.
Side marker lamps with incandescent bulbs will damage the central on-board computer.

Table 42-III: Extensions for side marker lamps

Series	Designation	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Cable-harness extension	0,5	81.25417.6685
	Cable-harness extension	1,0	81.25417.6686
	Cable-harness extension	2,0	81.25429.6294
	Cable-harness extension	3,0	81.25429.6295

An adapter cable harness also enables individual cables to be tapped (e.g. to connect a supplementary number-plate light). Individual connectors with individual cables are to be made up using seal connectors, Fig. 124-III shows how to make up an individual connector.

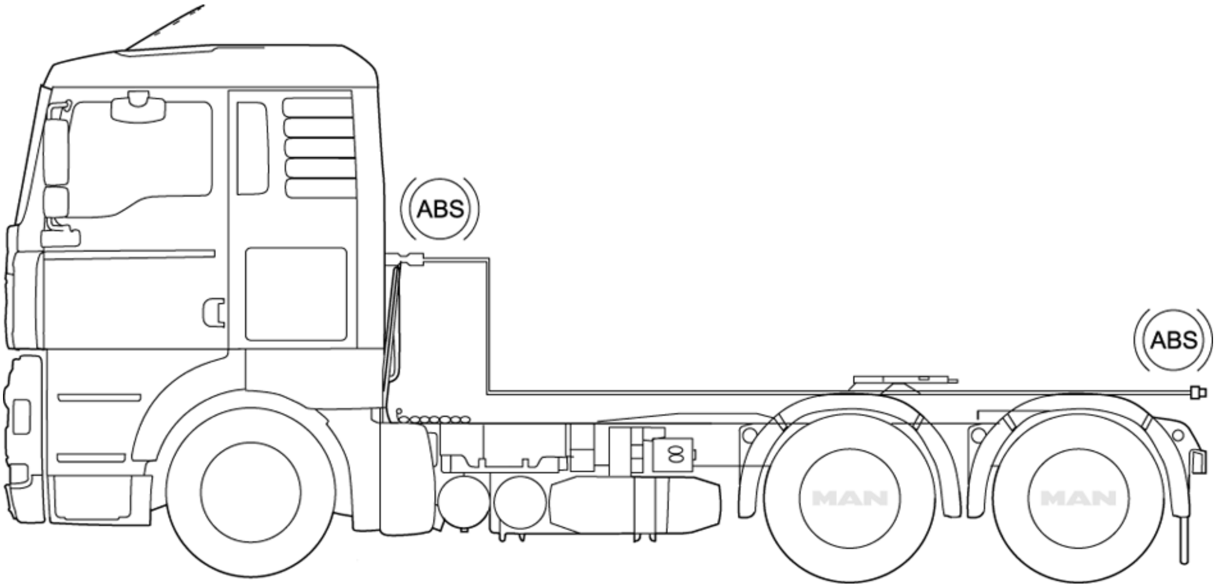
Fig. 124-III: Making up an individual connector



1) Corrugated tube, size 10 (04.37135-9940) or size 8.5 (04.37135-9938), depending on the number of cables, and in the corresponding length
2) Secondary locking mechanism (81.25475-0106)
3) 7-pole connector (81.25475-0105)
4) Blanking seal for unused connector slots
5) Individual seals for lead cross-sections of between 0.52 and 12 (07.91163-0052)
   Individual seals for lead cross-sections of between 0.52 and 2.52 (07.91163-0053)
6) Contact for lead cross-sections of $0{,}5^2$ to 1^2 (07.91216-1226)
   Contact for lead cross-sections ot $0{,}5^2$ to $2{,}5^2$ (07.91216-1228)

Supplementary ABS sockets are available for alternating use as a socket behind the cab for semitrailer and as a trailer socket at frame end. However, this does not function with T-distributors but with an extension cable, see Fig. 125-III.

Fig. 125-III: Use of ABS extension cable



T_524_000001_0001_G

Important:
Connect the ABS socket in accordance with use.

In this way the ABS socket may be mounted either behind the cab (tractor unit) or at the frame end (truck).
The cable lengths available conform with the wheelbases of the respective MAN tractor units (see Table 43-III).

Table 43-III: ABS extension cables

Item no.	81.25453.6288	81.25453.6290	81.25453.6291	81.25453.6292
Cable length (total)	4.700mm	5.400 mm	6.100 mm	6.800 mm
Use Wheelbase R	Semitrailer tractor 4x2, 4x4 R <= 3.900	Semitrailer tractor 6x2 R <= 3.200+1.350	Semitrailer tractor 6x4, 6x6 R <= 3.600+1.350	Semitrailer tractor 6x4, 6x6 R <= 3.600+1.350

8.2.5 Supplementary wiring diagrams and cable-harness drawings

Supplementary wiring diagrams and cable-harness drawings that contain or describe body preparations can be obtained from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

The bodymaker is responsible for ensuring that the material they use, e.g. wiring diagrams and cable harness drawings, match the status of vehicle modification.

Refer to the repair manuals for further technical information. These can be obtained from the Spare-parts Service or from the MAN After Sales Portal (www.asp.mantruckandbus.com, registration required).

8.2.6 Battery cable

The battery cable must not be extended in cases where the battery is relocated. A new cable in the required length must be ordered or made. The maximum length referred to below may not be exceeded in the process.

Direct tapping into the battery cable is not permitted by cutting open or by means of commercially available power distributors. The connection of additional loads is specified in Sections 8.2.2 and 8.4.

This applies both to the positive and ground cables.

The following must be observed when making or shortening the battery cable.

- MAN Genuine Spare Parts and the associated special tools must be used. They can be obtained from the Spare-parts Organisation.
- A hexagonal crimp must be used for crimping the cable lugs.

The following table Table 44-III lists the maximum lengths of the battery cable in relation to the cable cross-section. These maximum lengths may not be exceeded.

Table 44-III: Overview

Cable cross-section	Max. length	Shown in the drawing
50 mm^2	3550 mm	81.25452-6201
70 mm^2	6000 mm	81.25427-6002
95 mm^2	6700 mm	81.25405-8002

8.3 Interfaces on the vehicle, preparations for the body

No intervention in the on-board network is permitted except via the interfaces provided by MAN.

Signals must not be tapped from the CAN bus, the only exception being the bodybuilder's CAN bus (see TG interface of the control unit for external data exchange (custom module).

The interfaces provided by MAN are fully documented in the sections below. Interfaces are, for example:

- Liftgate
- For start / stop device
- Intermediate speed control
- FMS interface
- Tapping into the engine-on signal
- Tapping into the speed signal
- Tapping into the reverse-gear signal

If a vehicle is ordered with ready body fittings (e.g. start/stop device at end of frame) these will be installed ex works and partly connected. The instrumentation is prepared as ordered. Before commissioning the body fittings, the bodybuilder must ensure that it has used the applicable versions of wiring diagrams and cable-harness drawings in each case (see also Chapter III, Section 8.2.5).

MAN affixes transport securing devices (on the interfaces behind the front flap on the co-driver's side) for delivery of a vehicle to the bodymaker. These devices must be properly removed before using an interface.

Retrofitting interfaces and/or bodywork preparations can be complicated and costly, requiring the support of an electronics specialist from the MAN Service Organisation.

Remote transmission from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card.
MAN supports the manufacturer-independent remote transmission of data from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card (RDL = remote download).
The corresponding interface is published on the Internet at www.fms-standard.com.

8.3.1 Tapping into the engine-on (D+) signal

The vehicle offers several options for tapping into the reverse-gear signal.

The engine-on signal can be tapped from the central on-board computer because this supplies an "Engine running" signal (+24 V). This signal can be tapped into directly at the central on-board computer (connector F2, plug contact 17).
The maximum load on this connection must not exceed 1 A. It should be noted that other internal consumers may also be connected here. It must be ensured that this connection is free from feedback.

In addition, the engine-on signal can be tapped into amongst the signals and information supplied by the customer-specific control module ("KSM") interface.

Important notice
D+ may not be tapped from the alternator.

Remote transmission from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card.
MAN supports the manufacturer-independent remote transmission of data from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card (RDL = remote download).
The corresponding interface is published on the Internet at www.fms-standard.com.

8.3.2 Electrical interface for liftgate

Electrohydraulic liftgates require very careful design of the electrical supply.

Ideally the electrical interface for a liftgate is provided ex works. Retrofitting the interface is a complex procedure and requires intervention in the vehicle‘s electrical system, which must only be carried out by correspondingly qualified personnel at MAN Service outlets.

It includes the following parts:

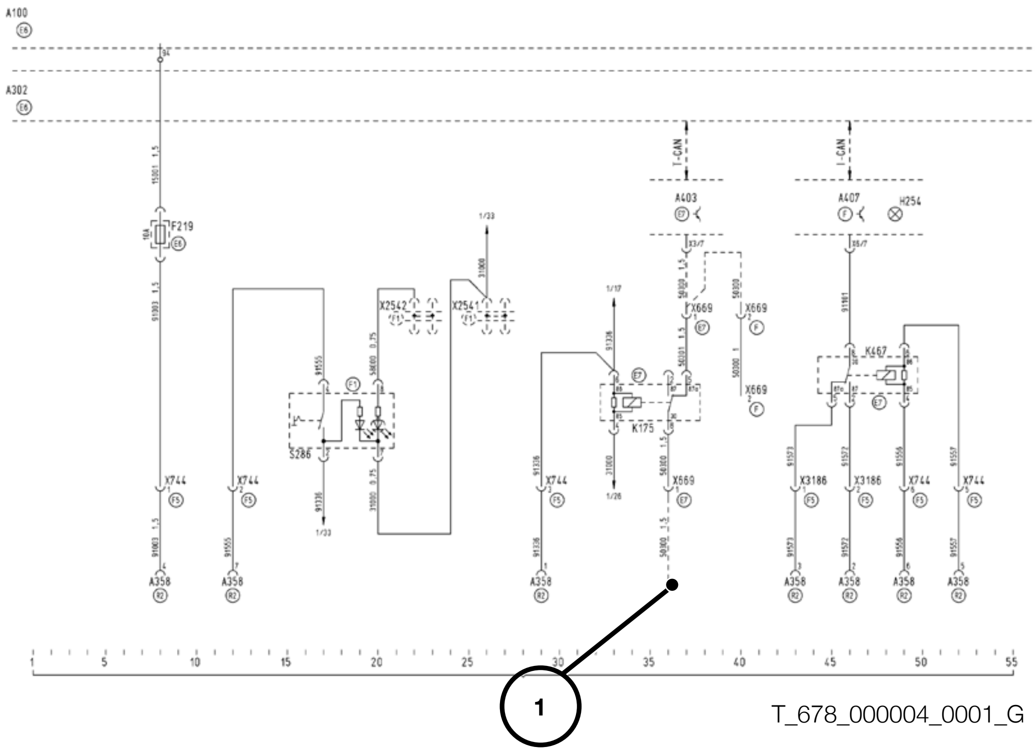
- switch,
- check lamp,
- starter inhibitor
- and power supply for the liftgate).

The factory-fitted transport securing device must be removed when work on the body commences.

Retrofitting is a complex procedure and requires intervention in the vehicle‘s power supply, which may only be carried out by correspondingly qualified personnel at MAN Service outlets.
The bodybuilder must check the circuitry of the liftgate to ensure it is suitable for MAN vehicles. Under normal circumstances triggering of interface A358 may only be effected with 24-V continuous signals – not with flash pulses. In the event of malfunction, a clocked signal may be applied briefly to relay K467.

For connection to the electric interface of the hydraulic liftgate, see the supplementary wiring diagrams below.

Fig. 126-III: Supplementary wiring diagram, liftgate for TG with vehicle management computer (VMC), MAN item no. 81.99192-1920



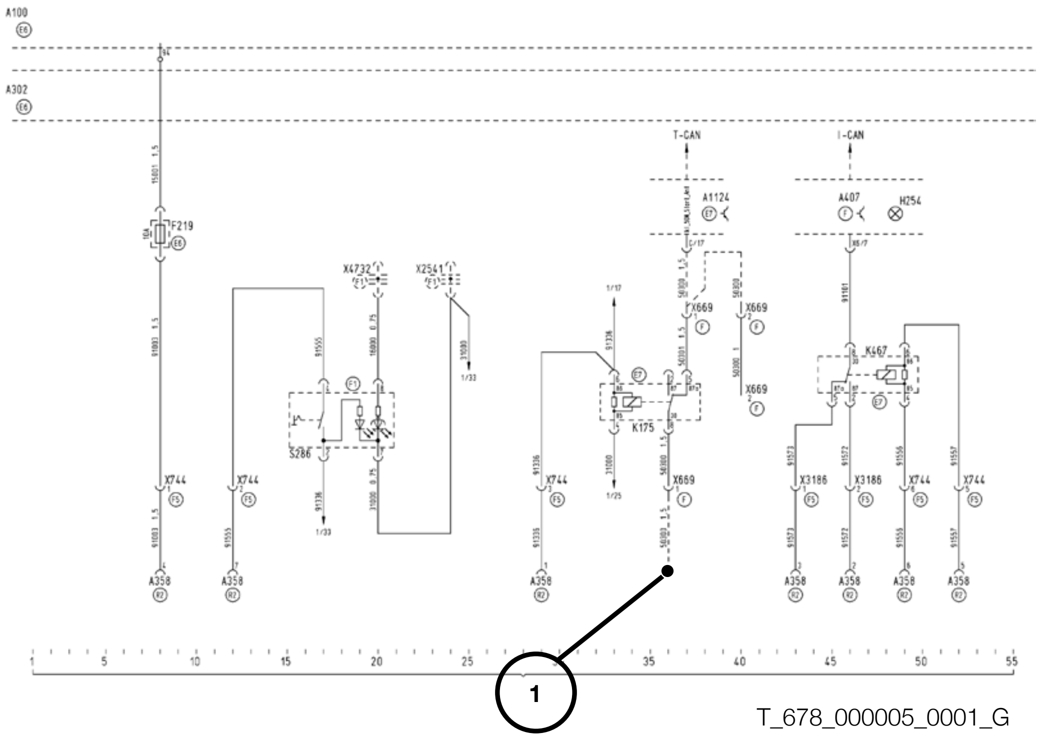
T_678_000004_0001_G

1) Interrupt standard plug connection X669 and switch harness liftgate between.

A100	255	Central electrical system
A302	352	Central computer 2
A358		Liftgate control unit
A403	339	Vehicle management computer
A407	342	Instrumentation
F219	118	Liftgate fuse (Terminal 15)
H254		Liftgate check lamp (high active)
K175	281	Start-lock relay
K467	281	Liftgate relay
S286	547	Liftgate switch
X669		Plug connector, starter interlock
X744		Plug connector, liftgate
X2541	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 31000
X2542	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 58000
X3186		Plug connector, liftgate

Leads 91003, 91336, 91555, 91556, 91557, 91572 and 91573 routed to 7-pole socket housing on frame end (rolled up)

Fig. 127-III: Supplementary wiring diagram, liftgate for TG with Power Train Manager (PTM) MAN item no. 81.99192-3645



T_678_000005_0001_G

1) Interrupt standard plug connection X669 and switch harness liftgate between.

A100	255	Central electrical system
A302	352	Central computer 2
A358		Liftgate control unit
A403	339	Vehicle management computer
A407	342	Instrumentation
F219	118	Liftgate fuse (Terminal 15)
H254		Liftgate check lamp (high active)
K175	281	Start-lock relay
K467	281	Liftgate relay
S286	547	Liftgate switch
X669		Plug connector, starter interlock
X744		Plug connector, liftgate
X2541	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 31000
X2542	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 58000
X3186		Plug connector, liftgate

Leads 91003, 91336, 91555, 91556, 91557, 91572 and 91573 routed to 7-pole socket housing on frame end (rolled up)

8.3.3 Engine-Start-stop system

The engine start-stop system enables the vehicle's engine to be started or stopped via a remote control or switch outside the cab.

The engine start-stop system is a system that works independently of the intermediate speed control interface and must be ordered separately.

The following variants of the engine start-stop system are available ex-works.

- Engine start/stop device under the front panel (preparation), plug X679, front wall inside right after removal of cover.
- Engine start/stop device on engine (plug X1551, interior panelling in steering column area).
- Engine start/stop device at end of frame (preparation). Cable extension from plug X679, rolled up at end of frame.

The connection options and pin assignments are shown in the table below.

Table 45-III:

Cable number	Function	Plug assignment	
		Plug X679 / Pin	Plug X1551 / Pin
60028	+ potential	1	6
50303	Engine start	2	10
43315	Engine stop	3	11

If a variant is not included in the equipment scope of a vehicle, the "engine start/stop device" can be retrofitted by a MAN service outlet.
It must then be ensured that both the original MAN cable harnesses and the documented connection options and locations are used.

It is also possible to realise the engine start-stop system by means of the CAN data bus. The requirement for this is that a customer-specific control module ("KSM") was fitted at the factory. Further references and descriptions of connections and signals can be found in the separate guideline entitled "TG Interfaces".

Specific parameterisation is not necessary for the engine start-stop system.

Circuit diagrams can be obtained from MAN Service or the MAN After Sales Portal.

Important notice

If the bodybuilder has installed the circuitry, the designation "Engine start-stop" must be used.
This must not be confused with the term "Emergency stop".

8.3.4 Tapping into the speed signal

It is possible to tap into the speed signal from the tachograph. It must be ensured that the load on the corresponding plug contact does not exceed 1 mA!

This generally equates to two connected peripheral units. Should this option for tapping the signal be inadequate then the following output multipliers bearing the MAN codes can be connected:

- 81.25311-0022 (3 • v-pulse output, max. load 1 mA for each output) or
- 88.27120-0003 (5 • v-pulse output, max. load 1 mA for each output).

Option for tapping the ‘B7 signal’ = speed signal:

- At connector B / plug contact 7 or plug contact 6 on the back of the tachograph
- At the 3-pole plug connector X4366/contact 1. The plug connector is located behind a cover on the driver side A-pillar in the area around the driver’s footwell.
- At the plug X5929 (line 16500) fitted as standard in the area of the central electrical system. The plug X5929 is not available if the interface for displacement signal and speed signal was installed ex-works, orderable via the sales code 307CS - Electrical preparation for gritter (displacement/speed signal)). In this case, the speed signal can be accessed at plug X1428 / Pin 6, also in the area of the central electrical system.
- At the 2-pole plug connector X4659 / contact 1 or 2. The plug connector is located behind the central electrics box.
- At the factory-fitted interface with customer-specific control module from STEP1 on (see Chapter III, Section 8.3.6).

Important notice
In order to avoid diagnostic memory entries, always switch off the ignition prior to carrying out any work on the tachograph!

8.3.5 Tapping into the reverse gear signal

It is possible to access the reversing signal on all vehicles of the TG series. You will find information on how the signal can be accessed below.

- Accessible via plug X1428 at plug contact 5 of line 71300. The plug X1428 is located in the area of the central electrical system. A prerequisite for this is that the body manufacturer preparation for displacement/speed signal is installed in the vehicle. It must be noted that the interface load for the reversing signal must not exceed a permitted value of 100 mA.

- The reversing signal can also be accessed via the customer-specific control module (KSM). A prerequisite for this is that the customer-specific control module is installed in the vehicle ex-works. Further information and connection and signal descriptions can be found in Chapter III under Section 8.3.6.

Important notice
All work must be carried out with the ignition turned off or with the battery disconnected. In addition to accident-prevention regulations, country-specific guidelines and laws must also be observed.

8.3.6 Interfaces for intermediate speed control with VMC/PTM and CSM (ISC interfaces)

MAN‘s intermediate speed control can be realised via the following interfaces.

- Interface on the vehicle management computer (VMC)/Power Train Manager (PTM)
- Interface on customer-specific control module (KSM)

Detailed descriptions of these interface variants are documented separately.
This chapter contains general explanations and an overview of the available interface descriptions.

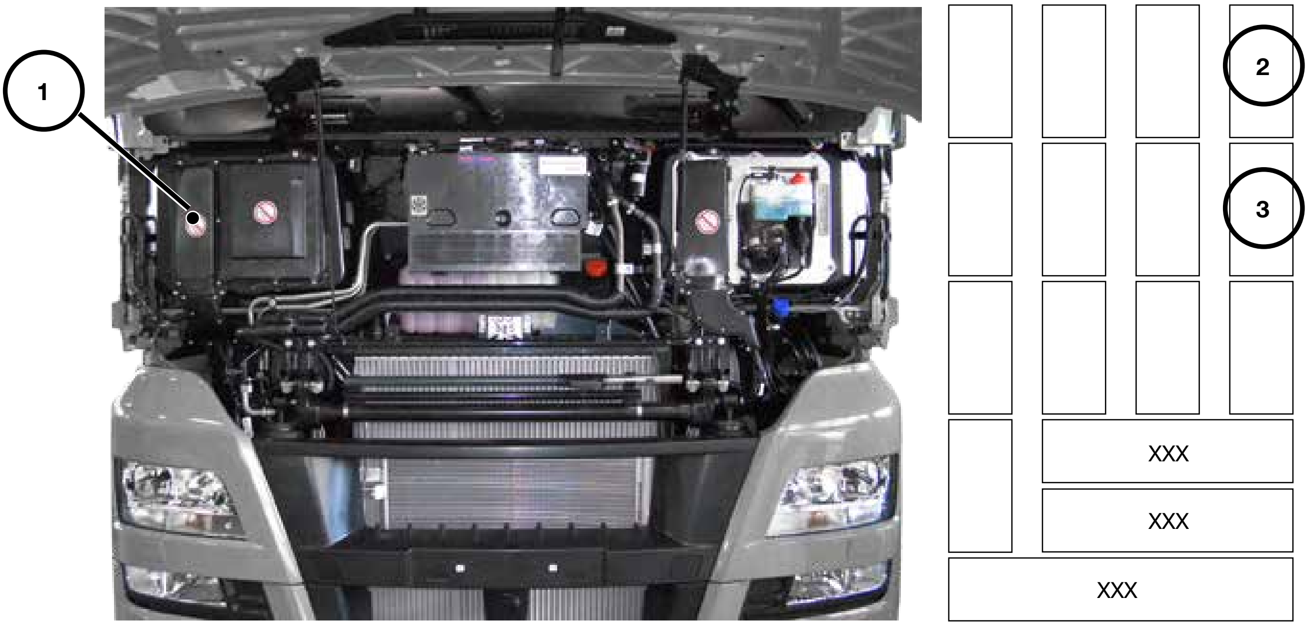
Abbreviations
The following text and the detailed interface descriptions use certain abbreviations and MAN-specific terms. These are explained in Table 46-III in alphabetical order.

Table 46-III: Abbreviations and MAN-specific terms used

Term/abbreviation	Explanation
A-CAN	Set-up-CAN (CAN = Controller Area Network)
OFF	Switch-off of cruise control/speed limiter/intermediate speed control functions
CAN	Controller Area Network (= data bus, digital network)
ESL	Engine speed limit
DI	Digital input
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
VIN	Vehicle identification number
VMC	vehicle management computer
CC/RSL/ISC	Vehicle speed control/vehicle speed limiter/intermediate speed control
FMS	Fleet Management System
GEARBOX-N	Neutral position of gearbox
GMT	Greenwich Mean Time
HGB	Maximum speed limitation
High-side switch	Switching output downstream of Terminal 30 ($+U_{BAT}$)
HP	ZF automatic gearbox HP...
SC	Short circuit
CSM	Customer-specific control module
LED	Light emitting diode
Low-side switch	Switching output downstream of Terminal 31 ($-U_{BAT}$)
M3135	MAN works standard (M + 3 or 4 digits)
MAN-CATS	Computer diagnostic system used in MAN workshops (CATS = computer-aided testing system)
TL	Torque limit
TSL	Torque/speed limiter
MEMORY	Stored function/value
PTO	Power take-off (PTO)
NMV	Power take-off pre-fitted, depending on engine
PIN	Plug contact
PTO	Power take off
PWM	Pulse width modulation
R-gear	Reverse gear
SET+	Increase and set speed and/or accelerate
SET-	Reduce and set speed and/or decelerate
CU	Control unit
T-CAN	Driveline CAN (CAN = Controller Area Network)
$+U_{BAT}$	Positive voltage of batteries
$-U_{BAT}$	Negative voltage of batteries
UTC	Universal Time Code
VIN	Vehicle identification number
COC	Central on-board computer
ISC	Intermediate speed control/regulator

Installation location of interfaces
The ISC interfaces are located behind the front flap and are accessible from the outside after the front flap has been unlocked and the housing cover removed (see Fig. 128-III).

Fig. 128-III: Installation location of ISC interfaces



T_380_000002_0002_G

1) View after cover is removed
2) ISC interface (VMC) x1996/18-pole
3) ISC interface (CSM) x1997/18-pole

Description
The interface to intermediate speed control on the vehicle management computer (VMC)/Power Train Manager (PTM) is contained in the vehicle ex works if a power take-off or special customer module is installed ex works.

The CSM interface for retrofitting is currently available in two different versions, both of which can be upgraded (installation of new version in a used vehicle) and downgraded (installation of new version in a used vehicle and old version in a new vehicle).

The fleet management interface is only possible in conjunction with CSM interface STEP05 or more recent.

**Table 47-III: Available interface descriptions can be found at: www.manted.de
Additional information electrical interfaces**

Interface descriptions (supplementary booklets)
Intermediate speed control with interface on the vehicle management computer (ISC on VMC)/Power Train Manager (PTM)
This document describes the interface for intermediate speed control on the vehicle management computer (VMC) or Power Train Manager. The interface is contained in the vehicle ex works if a power take-off or special customer module is installed ex works. A retrofit and activation of the interface is possible in authorised workshops. The general and sector-specific factory settings for the interface have been circulated to all MAN Service outlets via a service bulletin.
Intermediate speed control with customer-specific control module (ISC with CSM)
These documents describe the interfaces at the customer-specific control module with or without FMS interface.

8.3.7 Interface for reversing-camera preparation

The electrical interface for the rear-view camera preparation makes it possible to connect either one or two rear-view cameras and show the image on the screen of the MAN Radio MMT advanced. The system automatically switches to the camera image when reverse gear is engaged, or the rear view can be manually selected using a separate button.

The rear-view camera preparation interface is a system independent of the MAN radio MMT advanced, and must be ordered separately using the sales code for the rear-view camera preparation.

If the interface is not available ex works, it is possible to retrofit it. Because a retrofit is costly and requires access to the vehicle electrical circuit, we recommend having it done at a MAN Service centre.

Some camera manufacturers offer an adapter lead suitable for our interface (rear-view camera preparation), which can also be sourced from a MAN specialist workshop.

From September 2016 there will be a new generation of radios, which two cameras can be connected to. Switching between the two images takes place using the CAM button on the radio.

This section also describes the distinctive features of the different radios and the different interfaces.

<u>MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2012)</u>

This radio has a 5-inch display and a CD slot. The system automatically switches to the camera image when reverse gear is engaged, or the rear view can be manually selected using a separate button in the switch block of the instrument panel.

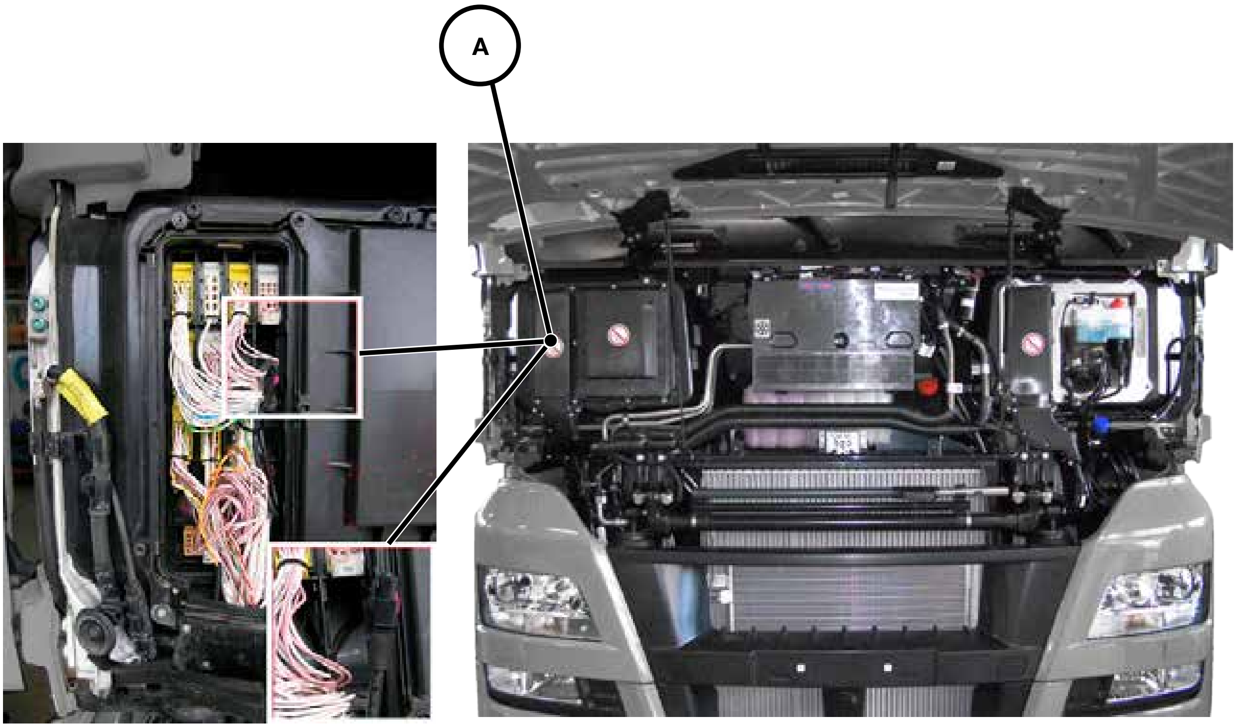
<u>MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2016)</u>

This radio has a 7-inch display and the system automatically switches to the camera image when reverse gear is engaged, or it can be manually selected using a button on the radio (CAM button). As a further variant, it is possible to activate the camera image using a contact to the radio; you can find the description for doing so under “MAN Radio MMT advanced (2016)” – Activating the camera image via a contact.

MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2012)

The plug A of the interface is below the front panel on the right of the vehicle in the direction of travel, after removing the two housing covers (Pos. A, Fig. 129-III).

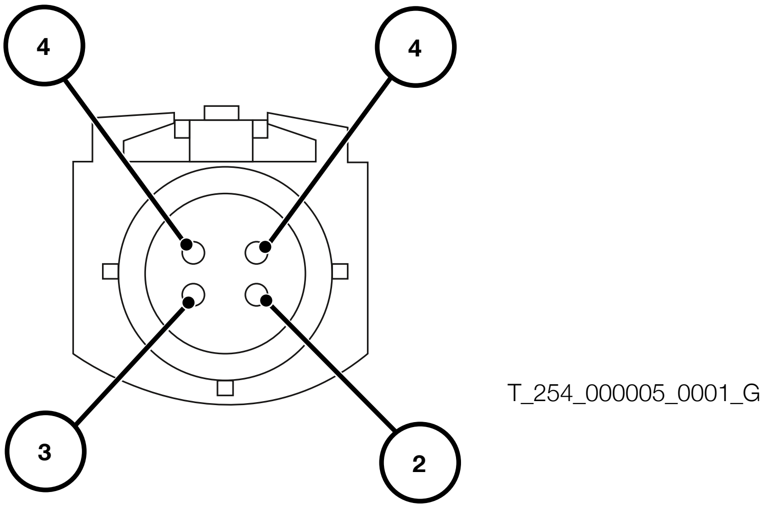
Fig. 129-III: Position Plug A



T_254_000003_0002_G

This is the pin assignment of the plug connector and the mating connector.

Fig. 130-III: Pin assignment of plug connector A on the vehicle



1) Video signal +
2) Voltage supply + (24 V with a 5-A fuse)
3) Video signal -
4) Voltage supply -

Fig. 131-III: Pin housing of the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2012)

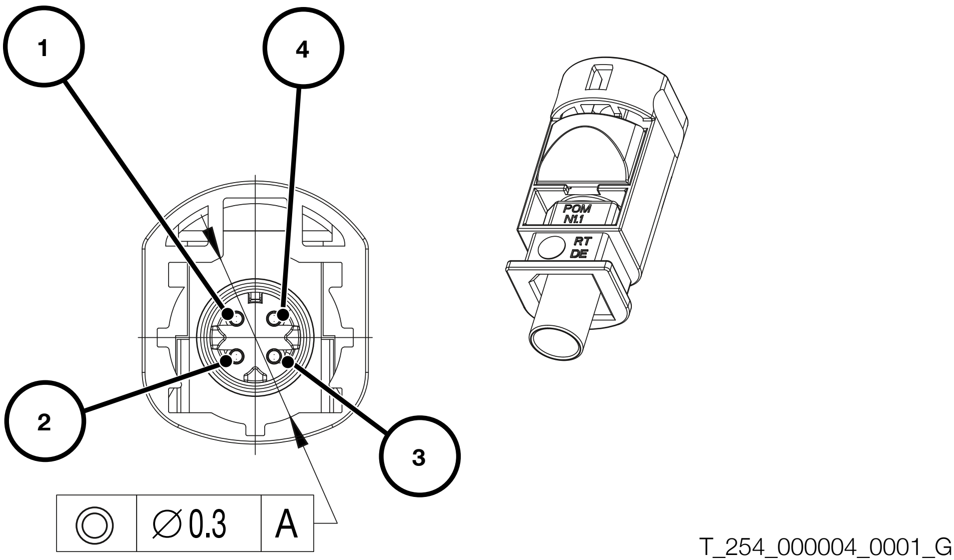


Table 48-III: Where to source the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2012)

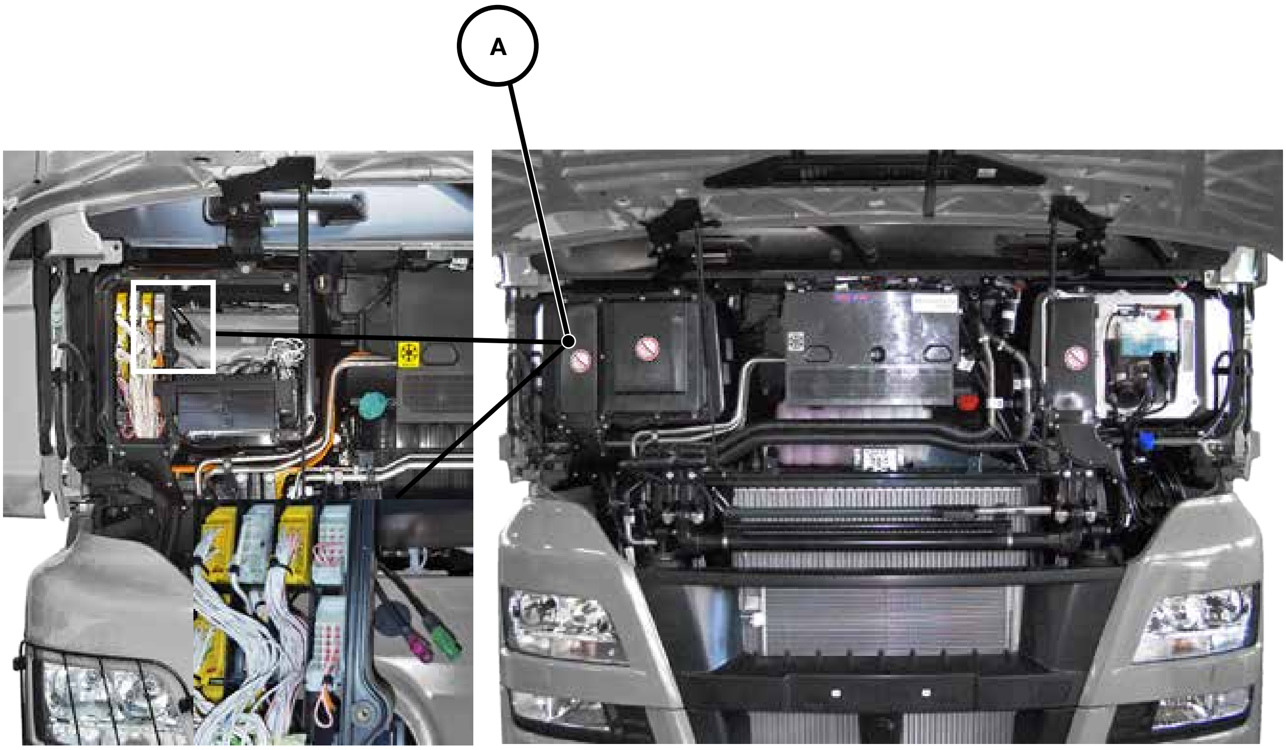
Manufacturer	Item number
Rosenberger	D4S10A-1D5A5-A
Tyco	0-1823905-1

MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2016)

The plugs for cameras 1 and 2 are at Position A. The interface is below the front panel on the right of the vehicle in the direction of travel, after removing the two housing covers (Pos. A, Fig. 132-III).

Please note that only one plug is available with some equipment versions.

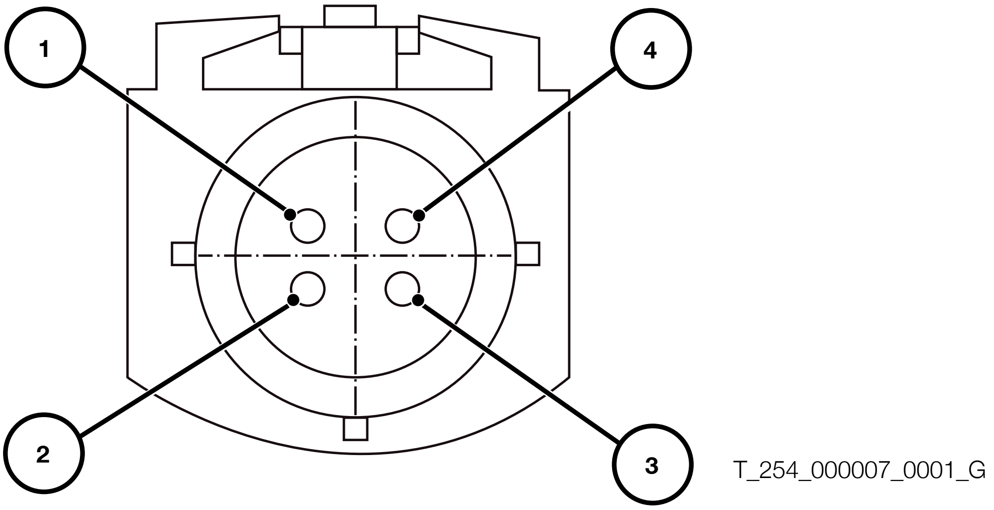
Fig. 132-III: Position of plug connector A / camera interface



T_254_000006_0001_G

This is the pin assignment of the plug connector and the mating connector.

Fig. 133-III: Pin assignment of purple plug (code E) – camera 1 and green plug (code D) – camera 2 on the vehicle



1) Power supply + (12V with 5A fuse)
2) Video signal + (camera)
3) Power supply -
4) Video signal - (camera)

Fig. 134-III: Pin housing of the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2016)

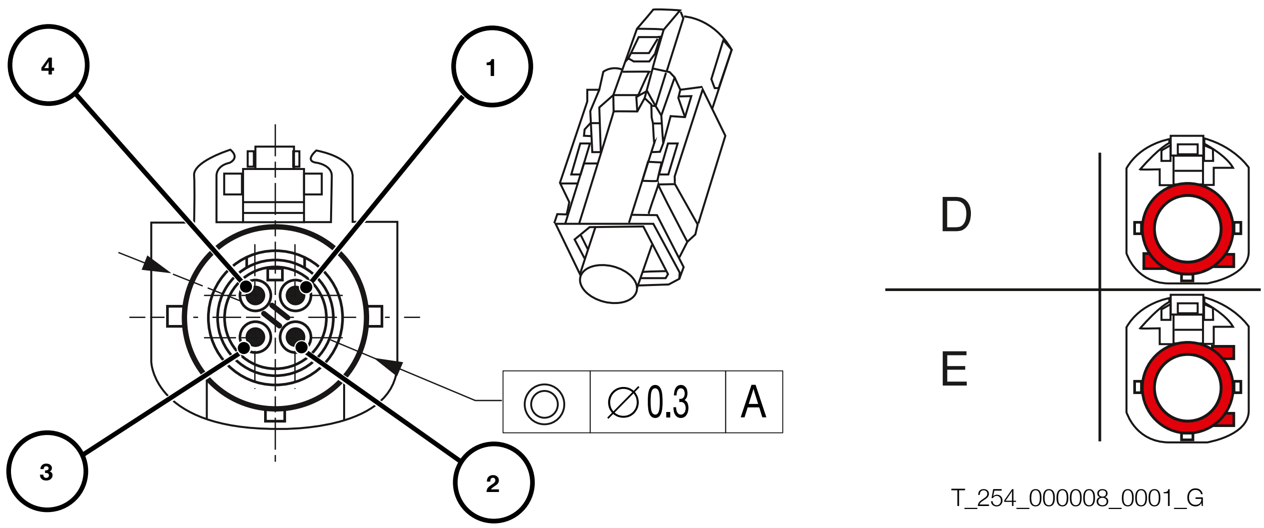


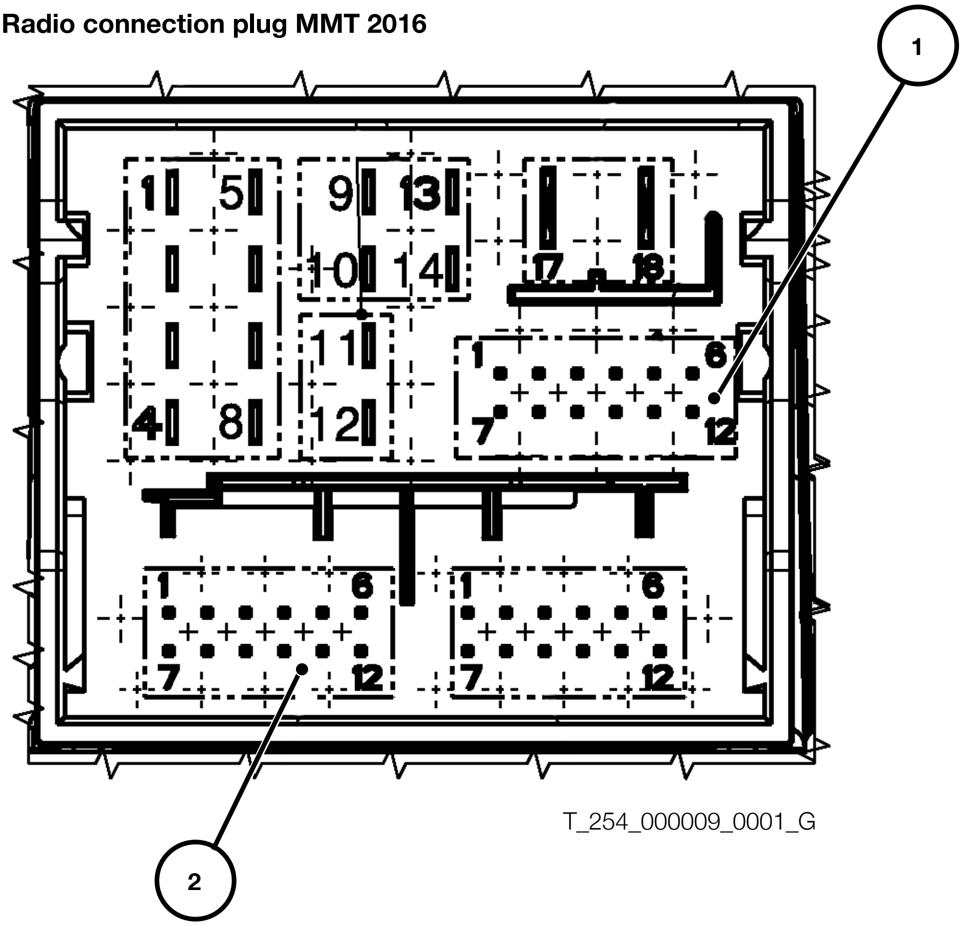
Table 49-III: Where to source the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2016))

Plug	Manufacturer	Item number
Camera 1 purple (code D)	Rosenberger	D4K10A-1D5A5-D
Camera 2 green (code E)	Rosenberger	D4K10A-1D5A5-E

Activating the camera image via a contact

It is possible to activate the camera image by connecting a contact to the radio. Activation in the case of a radio that is switched off is also possible; the radio is switched on when the contact is connected and the camera image is displayed. In order to carry out activation, contact 1 must be connected to plug B for camera 1 and contact 11 must be connected to plug E for camera 2 with a potential of +12 V to +24 V.
Parametrisation or activation of the contacts is not necessary if equipment options 351MA (MAN VideoView video input (1 camera)) and 351MC (MAN VideoView video input (2 cameras)) are available ex works. Subsequent activation of the contacts is possible with the service computer by means of item numbers 81.25890-7876 (MAN Media Advanced 2 – camera activation using analogue video input (1 camera)) and 81.25890-7877 (MAN Media Advanced 2 – camera activation using analogue video input (2 cameras)).

Fig. 135-III: Radio connection plug MMT 2016



1) Plug E
2) Plug B

Table 50-III: Where to source the radio connection plug

Contact	Description	MAN code	MAN item number
B / 1	Camera 1 activation	XF40 – 0<7	07.91216-1256
E / 11	Camera 2 activation	XF40 - 0<7	07.91216-1256

To ensure a perfect video display, shielded cables must be used.
The MAN Radio MMT advanced does not reverse the video image. For some applications, it may be necessary to use a camera with a reversed video image.
The CVBS (colour video blanking signal) video signal that our system supports must be transmitted using the PAL (720x576 pixels) or NTSC (720x480 pixels) as standard.

8.4 Additional consumers

As a basic principle, the connection of additional consumers is possible. If additional electrical loads are retrofitted, observe the following:

- There are no spare fuses in the central electrical system for use by the bodymaker. Extra fuses can be attached in a readied plastic container in front of the central electrical system.
- Do not tap into existing vehicle power circuits.
- Do not connect additional electric consumers to fuses that are already occupied.
- Every added circuit must be adequately scaled and protected by its own fuses. The rating of the fuse should ensure the protection of the wiring and not that of the system connected to it.
- Installation of additional open fuse carriers in the battery box is prohibited. These must be used only in areas that are protected against moisture or other environmental influences, e.g. in the cab. The body manufacturer bears sole responsibility if this is not observed and damage occurs as a result.
- Electrical systems must offer sufficient protection against all possible electrical faults and environmental influences without affecting the vehicle electrics.
- Freedom from feedback must be ensured in all cases. When selecting the size of the wire cross-section, the voltage drop and the heating of the conductor must be taken into account. Cross-sections below 0.75 mm^2 are to be avoided because their mechanical strength is not sufficient. The bodybuilder is responsible for the dimensioning.
- Minus and plus leads must have the same minimum cross-section.
- Current draw for 12-V equipment must be effected only via a voltage converter.
- Drawing from only one battery is impermissible because unequal charges lead to overloading and damage in the other battery. Under certain circumstances, e.g. for body-mounted equipment with a high power requirement (e.g. electrohydraulic liftgates) or in extreme climatic conditions, higher capacity batteries will be required.

Important notice
If the bodybuilder installs larger batteries, the cross-section of the battery cable must be adapted to suit the new power draw.

If consumers are directly connected to Terminal 15 (Pin 94 in the central electrics box, see Fig. 136-III) it is possible that entries will be logged in the error memories of control units as a result of a reverse flow of current into the vehicle‘s electrical system. Consumers must therefore be connected in accordance with the following instructions.

- **Power supply, terminal 15**
  Always fit a relay that is triggered via Terminal 15 (Pin 94). The load must be connected via a fuse on Terminal 30 (Pins 90-1, 90-2 and 91, rear of central electrics box), see Fig. 136-III.
  The maximum load must not exceed 10 A.

  The tightening torque (M_a) von 5,5 Nm + / - 10% must be observed.

- **Power supply, terminal 30**
  For maximum loads of up to 10 A the load must be connected through a circuit breaker at terminal 30 (Pins 90-1, 90-2 and 91, see Fig. 136-III, Central electrics box).
  For loads > 10 A connect directly to the batteries via a fuse.

  The tightening torque (M_a) of 5,5 Nm + / - 10% must be observed.

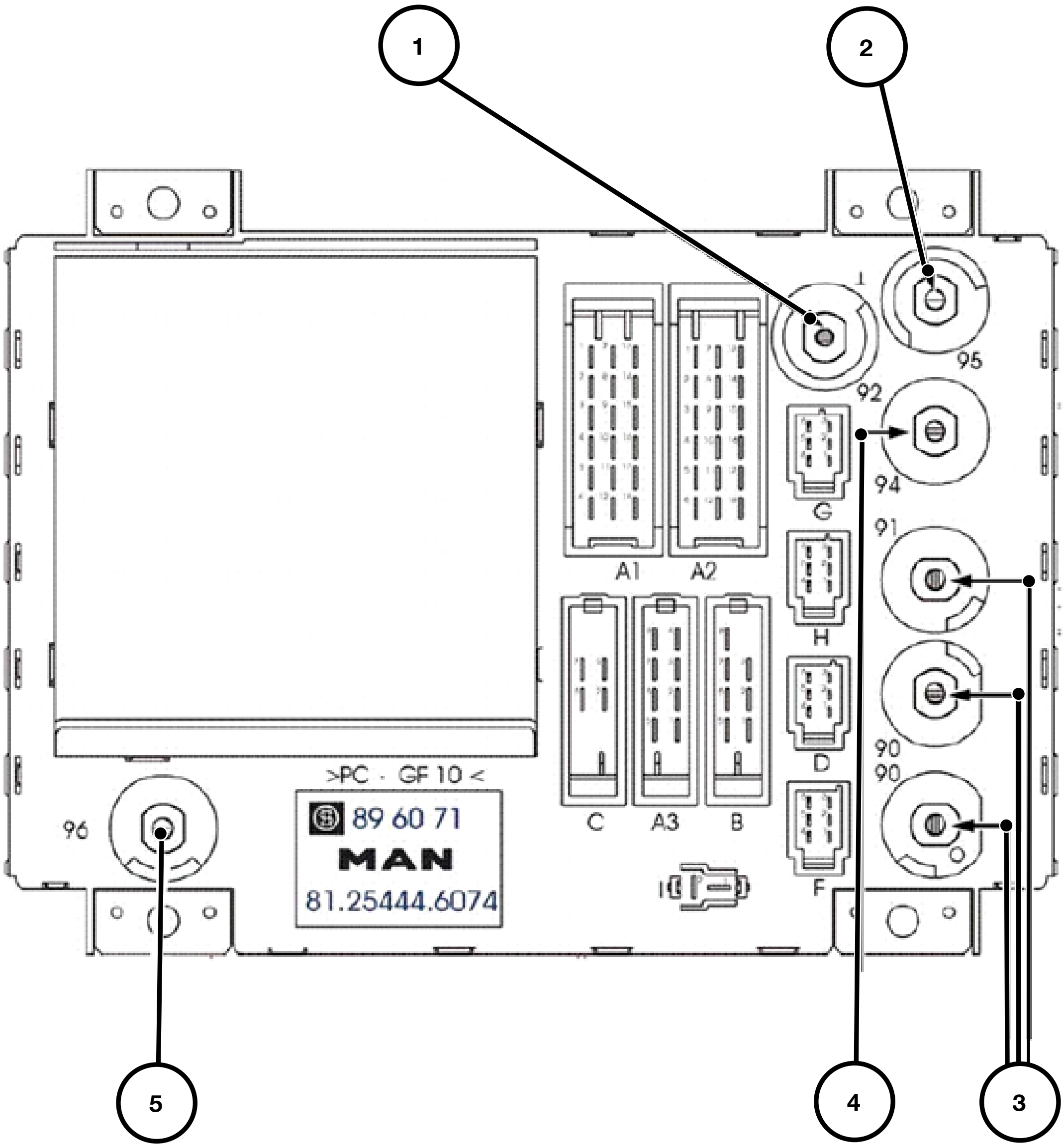
- **Power supply, terminal 31**
  Do not connect to the batteries but instead to the ground points inside (see Fig. 137-III Ground point X1644 behind central elektric unit) and outside (rear right engine mounting) the cab.

  The tightening torque (M_a) of 9 Nm + / - 0,9 Nm must be observed.

Important notice

Do not make any alterations or additions to the onboard electrical system! This applies in particular to the central electrical system. Anyone performing an alteration is responsible for damage caused by the alteration.

Fig. 136-III: Central electrics box, rear view



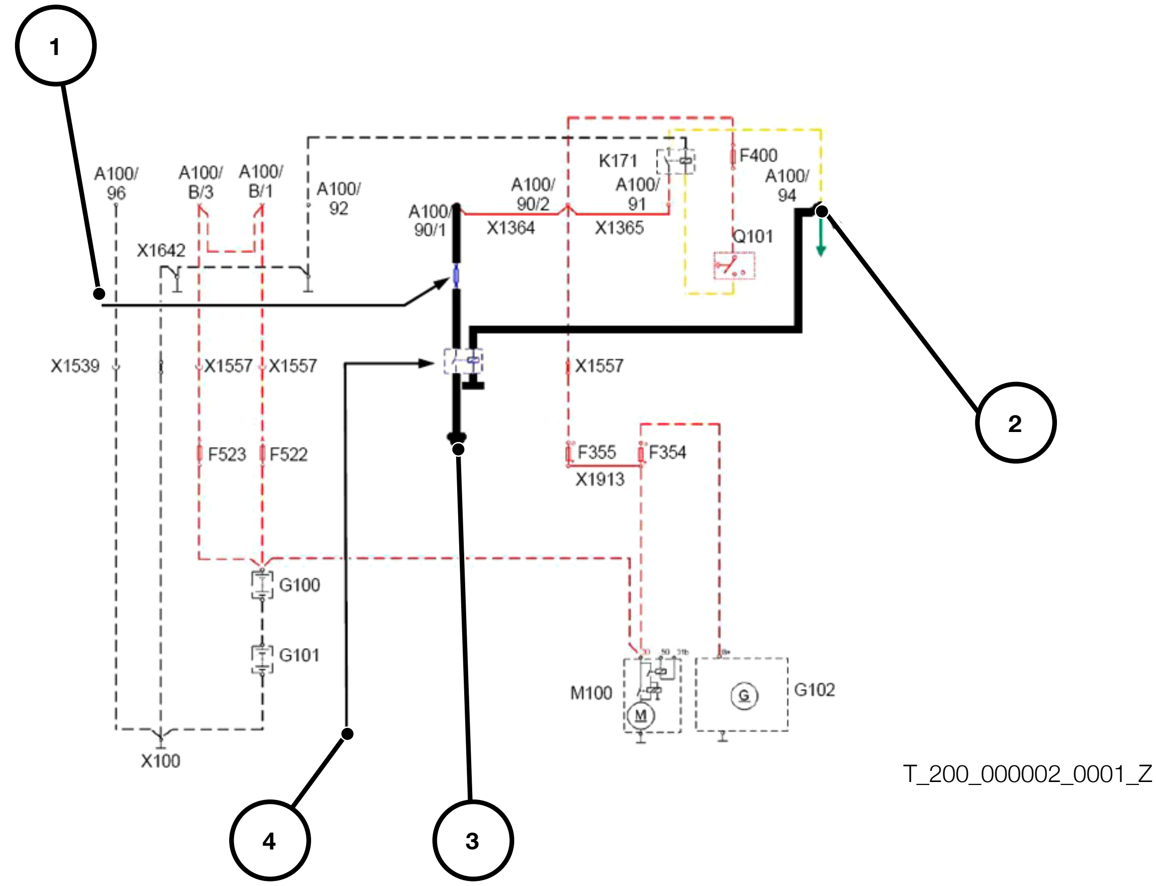
T_200_000001_0001_G

1) Terminal 31 (Using this pin as a ground point is not allowed.)
2) As standard, no cables are connected here. However, the pin may be used as an additional connecting pin – using a bridge (MAN-part no.: 81.25908-0059) to Pin 94 – for Terminal 15.
3) Terminal 30
4) Terminal 15
5) Terminal 31 (Using this pin as a ground point is not allowed.)

Fig. 137-III: Ground point X1644 behind central elektric unit

T_200_000003_0001_G

Fig. 138-III: Wiring diagram, additional consumers



1) Fuse as per rated current of permitted consumer
2) Only connect the supply voltage of Terminal 15 of consumers that can also be installed as standard on this connection (exception: relay control for additional consumers).
3) Additional consumer (maximum 10 A rated current)
4) Relay for voltage supply Terminal 15 for the additional consumers (e.g. 81.25902-0473).

A100		Central electrics box
F354		Main fuse, Terminal 30
F355		Main fuse, Terminal 30
F400		Steering-column lock fuse
F522		Line 30000 fuse
F523		Line 30000 fuse
G100		Battery 1
G101		Battery 2
G102		Alternator
K171		Relay, Terminal 15
M100		Starter motor
Q101		Ignition lock
X1	00	Ground connection engine
X1	364	Bridge between connector pins 90-1 and 90-2 of the central electrics box
X1	365	Bridge between connector pins 90-2 and 91 of the central electrics box
X1	539	X1 557 plug connector, cab interface
X1	642	Ground point in cab behind combined instrument
X1	644	Ground point in cab next to central electrics box
X1	913	Bridge for cable 30076 in the cable conduit on the engine

8.4.1 Notes on charging balance

A vehicle without additional electrical equipment requires approx. 50 A in order to supply the cab and engine electronics as well as its external lighting. All additional consumers must be supplied with the remaining current from the alternator.

In order to assess the electrical system it can be helpful to draw up a charging balance.

- Application case for positive charging balance
  During the loading process, 25 Ah (approx. 30 minutes of liftgate operation with the vehicle stationary and engine off) are drawn from the battery. The vehicle is subsequently driven for one hour to its destination (average engine speed 1200 rpm). During this trip the vehicle battery is charged with 50 Ah.
- Application case for negative charging balance
  During the loading process, 25 Ah (approx. 30 minutes of liftgate operation with the vehicle stationary and engine off) are drawn from the battery. The vehicle is subsequently driven for 15 minutes to its destination (average engine speed 1200 rpm). During this trip the vehicle battery is charged with 12.5 Ah. The amount of current drawn from the vehicle battery by liftgate operation cannot be fully replaced during the short period for which the vehicle is driven.

As a basic principle, whenever additional electrical consumers are installed in the vehicle it must be ensured that the vehicle's battery and alternator are dimensioned in accordance with the load. Beside bodies, additional electrical consumers also include electrical heaters and consumers that promote comfort.

Table 51-III lists the remaining charge current in dependence on the alternator installed and the respective engine speed in each case.

The sum of the current draw for all additional consumers for the period of vehicle operation must not exceed the charge-current values listed in Table 51-III. If over long periods more current is drawn from the vehicle battery than is fed to it, there is a risk that the battery will suffer permanent damage by deep discharge, for example.

The bodybuilder must ensure that the alternator and battery are adequately dimensioned for the vehicle operating profile envisaged.

Table 51-III: Remaining charge current

Alternator	Remaining current for additional loads at engine speed rpm				
	600	800	1000	1200	1400
Bosch NCB1 / 80A	4 A	12 A	17 A	19 A	20 A
Bosch NCB2 / 110A	20 A	33 A	38 A	40 A	44 A
Bosch LEB10 / 120A	31 A	43 A	47 A	50 A	52 A
Melco L3B / 110A	3 A	20 A	30 A	36 A	41 A
Melco / 120 A	3 A	30 A	41 A	47 A	50 A
Prestolite / 190 A	80 A	105 A	118 A	125 A	128 A

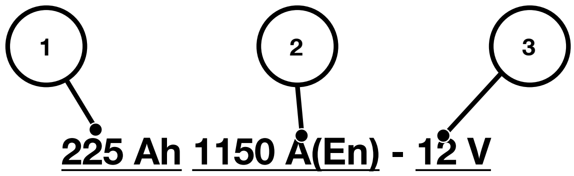
The current drawn from the battery must not exceed the following maximum values.

- For periods of time ≤ 10 s: Currents up to 50% of the battery's cold-start current
- For periods of time ≥ 10 s: Currents up to a maximum of 20% of the battery's cold-start current

In general, it must be ensured that the vehicle is always able to start.

The cold-start current (Pos. 2 in Fig. 139-III) is stated on the battery next to its rated capacity.

Fig. 139-III: Battery mark



T_266_000001_0001_G

1) Rated capacity 225 Ah
2) Cold-start current 1150 A as per EN standard
3) Rated voltage 12 V

In general, it must be ensured that the body does not increase the quiescent current of the vehicle.
If drawing energy from the battery while the engine is not running is unavoidable (e.g. when the vehicle is being used for resting or due to liftgate operation), it must be ensured that the amount of energy drawn is replaced when the engine is in operation.

It must be noted that tapping the battery bridge for a 12-V supply is not permitted.

12-V consumers are to supplied exclusively by the vehicle's 24-V electrical system and a correspondingly dimensioned DC/DC converter.

8.5 Batteries

The battery is connected to the vehicle electrical system via two battery poles. To protect against injury or damage during maintenance work, the main battery switch must be switched off.

When removing the terminals from batteries and operating the master battery switch, be sure to proceed in the following order:

- Switch off all loads (e.g. lights, warning flashing indicator).
- Switch off the ignition
- Close the doors.
- Wait for an after-run time of 60 seconds before disconnecting the batteries (negative terminal first).
- The electrical battery master switch requires an extra 15 seconds.

Reason:
Many vehicle functions are controlled by the central on-board computer (ZBR) which must first save its latest status before it can be de-energised. If, for example, the doors remain open, the time constant up to the controlled shutdown of the central on-board computer (ZBR) is 5 minutes, because the ZBR also monitors the door-closing functions. If the doors are open, it is therefore necessary to wait for more than 5 minutes before disconnecting the batteries: Closing the doors shortens the waiting time to 60 s. If the sequence described here is not observed, this will inevitably lead to diagnostic memory entries in some control units (e.g. in the central on-board computer ZBR) or to data/configuration loss.
Excepted from this is of course operation of the EMERGENCY-OFF switch in case of emergency.

Important notice

When the engine is running:

- Do not turn off the master battery switch
- Do not loosen or disconnect the battery terminals.

From the end of 2016, the battery monitor will be introduced in series for vehicles whose cabs are equipped with a bunk and have 175Ah or 225Ah batteries.
It is necessary when relocating the battery box or extending the measurement line to ensure that the module is recalibrated.
Further information on the battery monitor is available on the MAN After Sales Portal.
(www.asp.mantruckandbus.com, registration required).

8.5.1 Handling and maintaining batteries

Check batteries at regular intervals.

The battery tester DSS-7814 HD MAN, item number 08.78024-0005, must be used for testing batteries.
Rapid-charge and jump-start devices must not be used for trickle charging as this could destroy control units. Jump-starting from one vehicle to another is permissible, provided that the instructions in the Operator's Manual are followed.

Observe the following when handling batteries:

Table 52-III:

Standstill time	**For a standstill time of more than 30 days:** **➔ Switch off the main battery switch.** **➔ Disconnect batteries.**
Open-circuit voltage never below 12.3 V before delivery	The open-circuit voltage must not fall below 12.3 V at any time prior to delivery to the customer. Charge batteries at less than 12.5 V open circuit voltage. To ensure that the open-circuit voltage does not fall below 12.3 V by the next check, batteries that do not have an open-circuit voltage of at least 12.5 V when checked must be charged.
Always recharge batteries after they have been subjected to high load.	Regardless of the standstill time, always charge batteries if they have been subjected to heavy loads, for example after fitting or repairing a liftgate with subsequent functional test, or if the vehicle has been started/manoeuvred several times without being driven afterwards.

Vehicles must not be started or moved without batteries.

Batteries age very quickly if the battery voltage drops below 12.5 V for an extended period. If batteries should prove to be damaged or faulty at the vehicle handover to the customer, they will be charged back to the body manufacturer.

Further information on handling and maintenance of batteries can be found in TI 1140TA, which is available from MAN Service and the MAN After Sales Portal.

8.5.2 Handling and care of maintenance-free batteries

When the batteries installed ex-works have been consumed, only maintenance-free batteries will be installed by MAN workshops. These differ from conventional batteries in their enhanced deep discharge durability, longer shelf-life and improved power consumption during charging.
However, maintenance-free batteries still have to be recharged from time to time. The battery tester DSS-7814 HD MAN, item number 08.78024-0005, must be used for testing batteries.
Also see Section 8.5.1 Handling and maintaining batteries.

Important!

The covers on the maintenance-free batteries must not be opened. Air exchange can lead to premature corrosion inside the battery.

A detailed Service Information bulletin “SI number: 1140TAd” is available form MAN Service and the MAN After Sales Portal.

8.6 Lighting installations

Alteration of the lighting means that the partial operating permit according to EC directive 76/756/EEC including amendment 97/28/EC becomes void. This is the case especially if the arrangement of the lights is altered, or a light is replaced by one not approved by MAN.
The bodymaker is responsible for adherence to legal requirements. In particular the side marker lamps in LED technology must not be modified with other lights because it will destroy the central on-board computer!

Observe the maximum load on the lighting circuits.
Fitting higher rated fuses than the corresponding ratings in the central electrics box is not permitted.

The following guideline figures are intended as maximums:

Table 53-III: Lighting current paths

Parking light	5 A	each side
Brake light	4x21 W	Incandescent bulbs only, LED not permitted
Turn indicator	4x21 W	Incandescent bulbs only, LED not permitted
Rear fog lamps	4x21 W	Incandescent bulbs only, LED not permitted
Reversing light	5 A	

The term “incandescent bulbs only” indicates that these circuits are monitored by the central on-board computer for faults, which are then displayed.

The installation of LED lighting elements that are not approved by MAN is prohibited. It must be noted that MAN vehicles employ a ground cable: use of the vehicle frame as a return line is not permitted (see also Chapter III, Section 8.2.2 “Ground cable”).

Following installation of bodywork the basic beam alignment of headlamps must be newly adjusted. On vehicles with headlamp levelling this must be performed direct on the headlamps because adjustment by the regulator does not replace basic alignment on the vehicle. Extensions or modifications to the lighting system must be carried out in consultation with the nearest MAN Service outlet because it may become necessary to reparameterise the vehicle’s electronics using MAN-cats (see also Chapter III, Section 8.1.3).

8.7 Display and instrumentation concept

The combined instrument is incorporated into the control unit network by means of a CAN bus system. A fault is displayed in plain text directly in the central display or through a diagnostic memory entry. The combined instrument receives all the information that is displayed in the form of a CAN message. Only long-life LEDs are used instead of incandescent bulbs.

The annunciator panel with its symbols is vehicle-specific, i.e. with only the ordered functions and fittings.
If additional functions are to be displayed (e.g. a retrofitted liftgate), reparameterisation is necessary.
A lens that matches the new parameters can be ordered from the MAN Spare-parts Service.

Bodybuilders cannot have functions of the body, e.g. liftgate or tipper operation, parameterised on the vehicle nor can they have the combined instrument fitted with the required symbols during assembly. It is neither possible to incorporate functions of the body on an “in reserve” basis nor is it permitted for the bodybuilder to incorporate its own functions into the central display or tap signals from the back of the combination instrument.

8.8 Safety and assistance systems

Safety and assistance systems are additional systems that assist the driver or reduce his workload.

MAN designates the following safety-related systems, among others, as assistance systems:

- Electronic Stability Program (ESP)
- Lane Guard System (LGS)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)

As of 01.11.2015, in all EU countries it will become a requirement for the registration of new vehicles that they be fitted with emergency braking and lane guard systems.
It must therefore be noted that vehicles without the necessary equipment can no longer be registered. In the case of retrofitted deactivations, their legality must be confirmed by an officially recognised expert and an entry in the registration documents cleared with the appropriate national authorities.

Important information on the lane guard system (LGS)

The lane guard system (LGS) is a camera-based driver assistance system. An acoustic signal (also referred to as “rumble strip noise”) warns the driver if the vehicle is about to leave the traffic lane.

The lane guard system warns the driver with an acoustic signal as soon as it detects that the vehicle is leaving the traffic lane without signalling. In order to ensure the acoustic warning, the original MAN loudspeakers (Dual Coil Speakers) must remain installed.

Important information on the emergency brake assist (EBA)

The emergency brake assist system (EBA) is a driver/brake assistance system. It warns the driver of a potential rear-end collision accident and initiates action when it detects an emergency situation. If necessary, the EBA will automatically apply the vehicle’s brakes in order to minimise the effects of a collision or avoid an accident entirely.

The EBA warns the driver with (among others) an acoustic signal, as soon as it detects a risk of collision. In order to ensure the acoustic warning, the original MAN loudspeakers (Dual Coil Speakers) must remain installed.

The brake lights must be activated in the event of braking intervention by the emergency brake assist system. Changing the brake lights fitted at the factory or replacing them with rear light units that are not approved by MAN is therefore not permitted. Further information about the lighting installation can be found in Section 6.6 “Lighting installations”.

For further information on the function and operation of safety and assistance systems, please refer to the vehicle operating manual or the currently applicable MAN sales documents.

The components described in the chapters that follow are to some extent individual components but must be viewed together for the function of the safety and assistance systems.

For assembly or conversion work, the following chapters must be observed.

8.8.1 Yaw-rate sensor

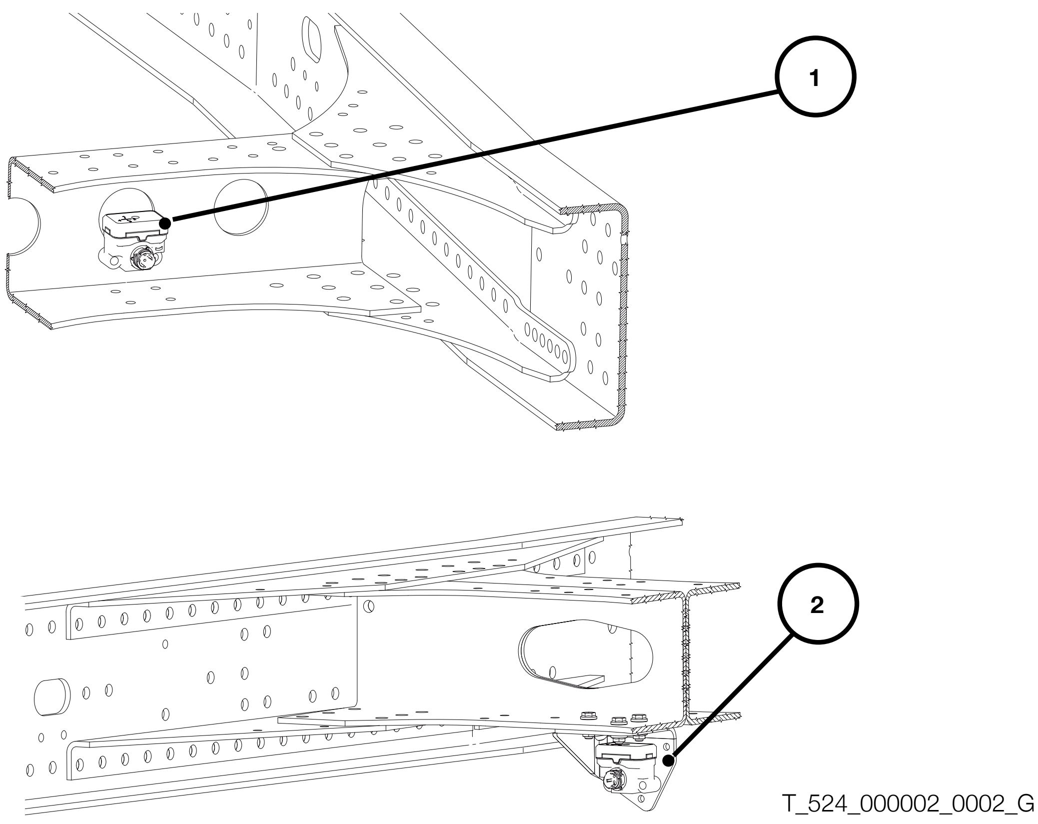
The yaw rate sensor is used for the following systems:

- Electronic Stability Program (ESP)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)
- Lane Guard System (LGS)

The position and attachment of the yaw rate sensor should only be modified in exceptional cases. If relocation is absolutely necessary, the following points must be complied with:

- The yaw rate sensor must be mounted either to a cross member or side member of the chassis frame.
- Only original brackets available ex works may be used. These can be obtained from the MAN Spare Parts Service.
- The yaw rate sensor is fixed in place by M10 bolts (tightening torque 46 Nm +/- 9 Nm).
- The alignment of the yaw sensor ex works must be maintained. If turning it is unavoidable, then the viability of this must be agreed in writing with MAN (for address, see “Publisher” above) before relocation.
- The yaw rate sensor may be displaced at maximum by the following values relative to the position installed ex works:
  - Along the X-axis +-300 mm – but it must be attached in the area between the last steered front axle and the first rear axle
  - Along the Y-axis within the track width of the chassis frame
  - Along the Z-axis +-300 mm – depending on installation position
- The yaw rate sensor may not come into contact with other components once installed.
- The yaw rate sensor may not be installed in an area subject to high temperatures (permissible temperatures range from -40°C to 80°C).
- If the yaw rate sensor is mounted in an area subject to thrown-up dirt and stones, a suitable protective cover must be provided.

Fig. 140-III: Example of yaw-rate sensor installation



1) Sensor directly connected to a cross member
2) Bracket 81.25940.0318

8.8.2 Radar sensor

The radar sensor is used for the following systems:

- Lane guidance system (LGS)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)

Information

On vehicles where the field scanned by the radar sensor is either temporarily or permanently obscured by attachments or other components (e.g. snowplough blade, cable-winch attachment, other covers or any type of plate etc.), the EBA and ACC functions must be permanently deactivated using a conversion data file.

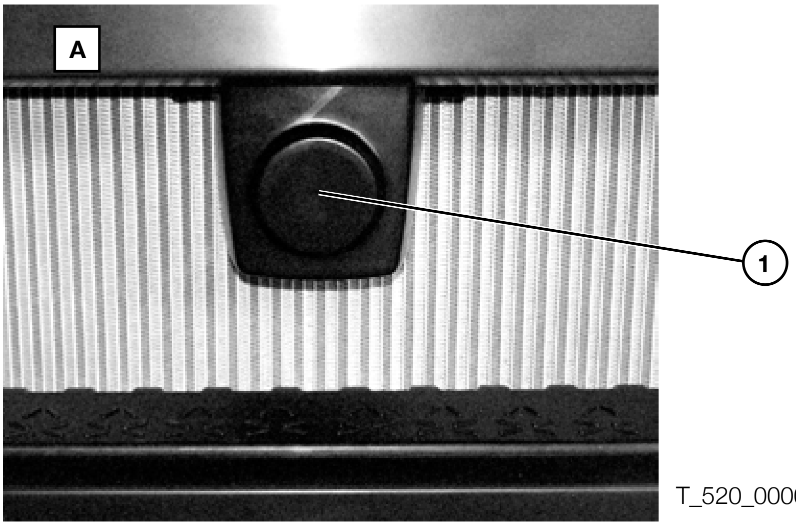
The vehicle's admissibility for registration must be checked before the conversion.

The radar sensor provides information to the safety and assistance systems installed about what lies ahead of the vehicle. The radar sensor is installed at the front of the vehicle in the bumper area (see Fig. 141-III Detail A).

Fig. 141-III: Cab front showing installation location of radar sensor

T_520_000002_0001_G

Fig. 142-III: Cab front Detail A (radar sensor with cover)



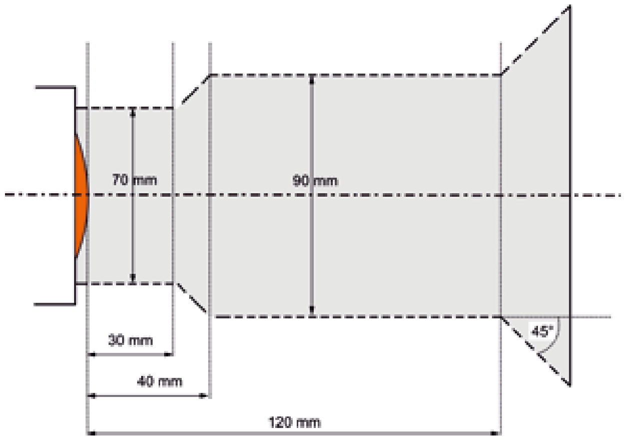
T_520_000003_0001_G

The radar sensor is a component relevant to safety and is located behind a cover (see Fig. 142-III, Position 1) in the vicinity of the step surface on the front of the vehicle. To ensure trouble-free operation of the EBA it is essential that the following points are observed.

During operation, it must be ensured that the radar sensor cannot be either temporarily or permanently obscured. The sensor detection zone will be limited if the area scanned by the radar is partially or fully masked by any (front-end) attachments.

The following illustration shows the minimum field scanned by the radar sensor that must be kept free of obstructions.

Fig. 143-III: Field scanned by radar sensor



T_520_000004_0002_G

During operation, flexible components on the vehicle or attachments (electric cables, hoses, wire cables or similar) must also be prevented from entering the field scanned by the radar sensor.

The following instructions must be observed for a trouble-free operation of the radar sensor:

- The position of the radar sensor determined at the factory, its cover and attachment bracket must not be altered.
- Neither the position nor the location, material or surface characteristics (using adhesives, grinding, painting etc.) may be modified.
- The bracket – including the fastening of the radar sensor – may not be loosened or modified.
- Attaching other components or cables/hoses to the sensor bracket is not permitted.
- Modifications to or interventions in the cable harness are not permitted.

If loosening the fastening or removing the radar sensor cannot be avoided due to maintenance or repair work, the following guidelines must also be observed for re-installation:

- The radar sensor together with its bracket and cover must be re-attached in the position determined by the factory.
- Only MAN Genuine Parts may be used for fastening purposes or as spares.
- The sensor must be calibrated by an MAN Service workshop.

Due to the fact that rear-axle slip angle influences the function of the radar sensor, the sensor must be adjusted by an MAN Service workshop subsequent to any modification of the rear axle, axle retrofitting or change of wheelbase.

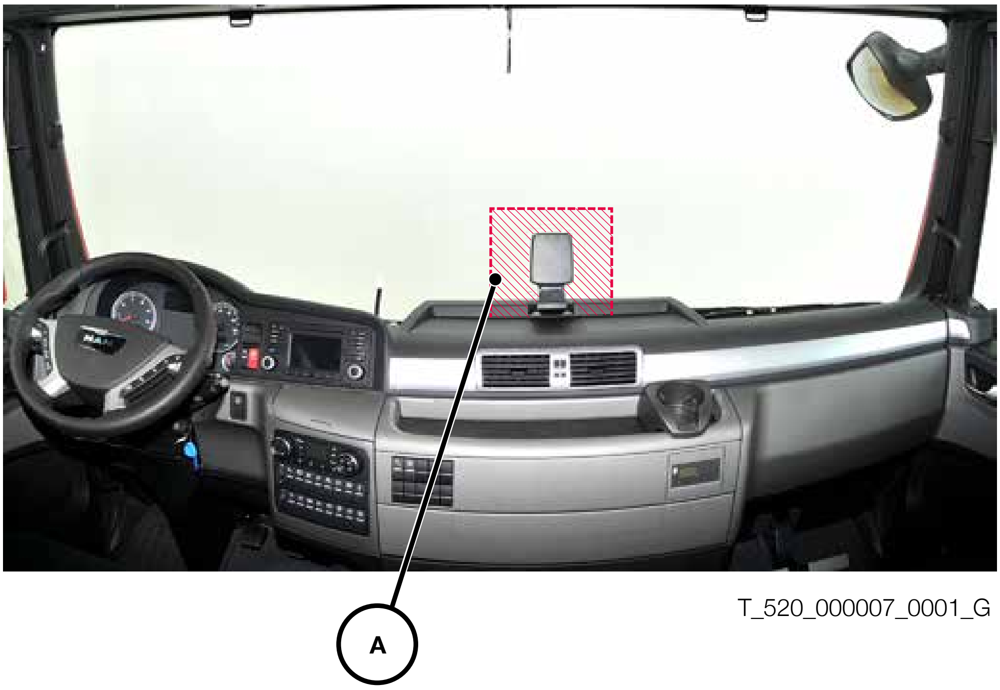
8.8.3 Multi-functional camera

The multi-functional camera is used for the following systems:

- Lane guidance system (LGS)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)

The multi-functional camera is mounted in the centre or +/-8 cm off center (depending on the cab) on the inside of the windscreen.

Fig. 144-III: Cab interior with multi-functional camera



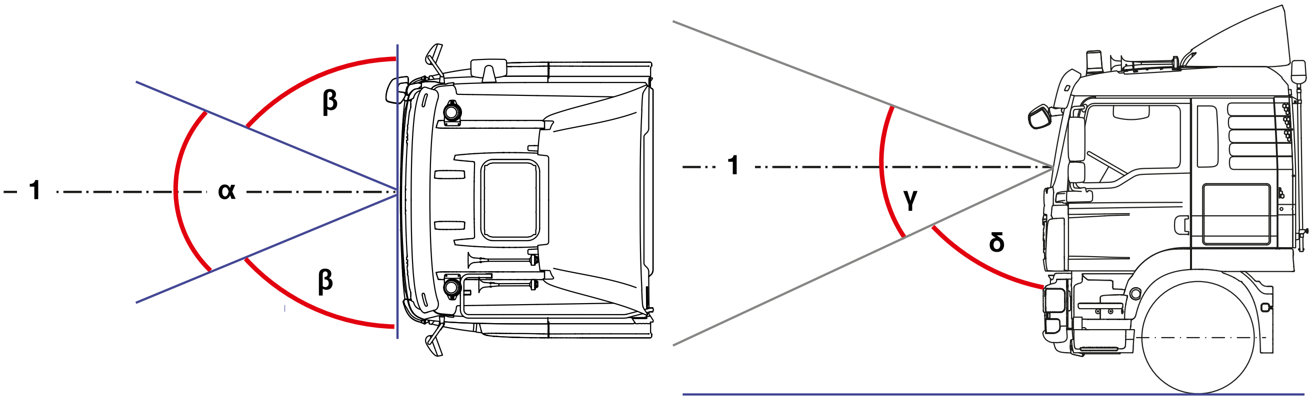
T_520_000007_0001_G

A) Area A shown in Fig. 144-III may not be covered or altered within a distance of 3 cm from the multi-functional camera. This area is used for heat dissipation and must not be blocked.

The following instructions must be observed for a trouble-free operation of the multi-function camera:

- Adequate ventilation of the multi-functional camera must be ensured at all times. Attachments in the area of the dashboard must not disturb the ventilation of the multi-functional camera.
- It must be ensured that the multi-function camera cannot be either temporarily or permanently obscured during operation of the vehicle. (See Fig. 145-III)
- The coverage (areas α horizontal and γ vertical in Fig. 145-III) of the multi-functional camera is limited as soon as front attachment parts cover the visual field partially or completely. The following illustrations show the minimum visual field of the multi-functional camera, including necessary tolerances, that is to be kept free.
- During operation, flexible vehicle/attachment parts (cables, hoses, ropes and the like) must be prevented from getting into the visual field of the multi-functional camera.
- If removal of the fastener or of the multi-functional camera cannot be avoided, the following specifications apply to reassembly.
  - The multi-functional camera incl. bracket and cover must be reattached at the location defined by the factory. This location may not be changed.
  - Only MAN Genuine Parts must be used for fastening or as replacement.
  - Modifications to or interventions in the cable harness are not permitted.
  - Calibration of the multi-functional camera must be carried out by an MAN service workshop.

Fig. 145-III: Visual field of the multi-functional camera



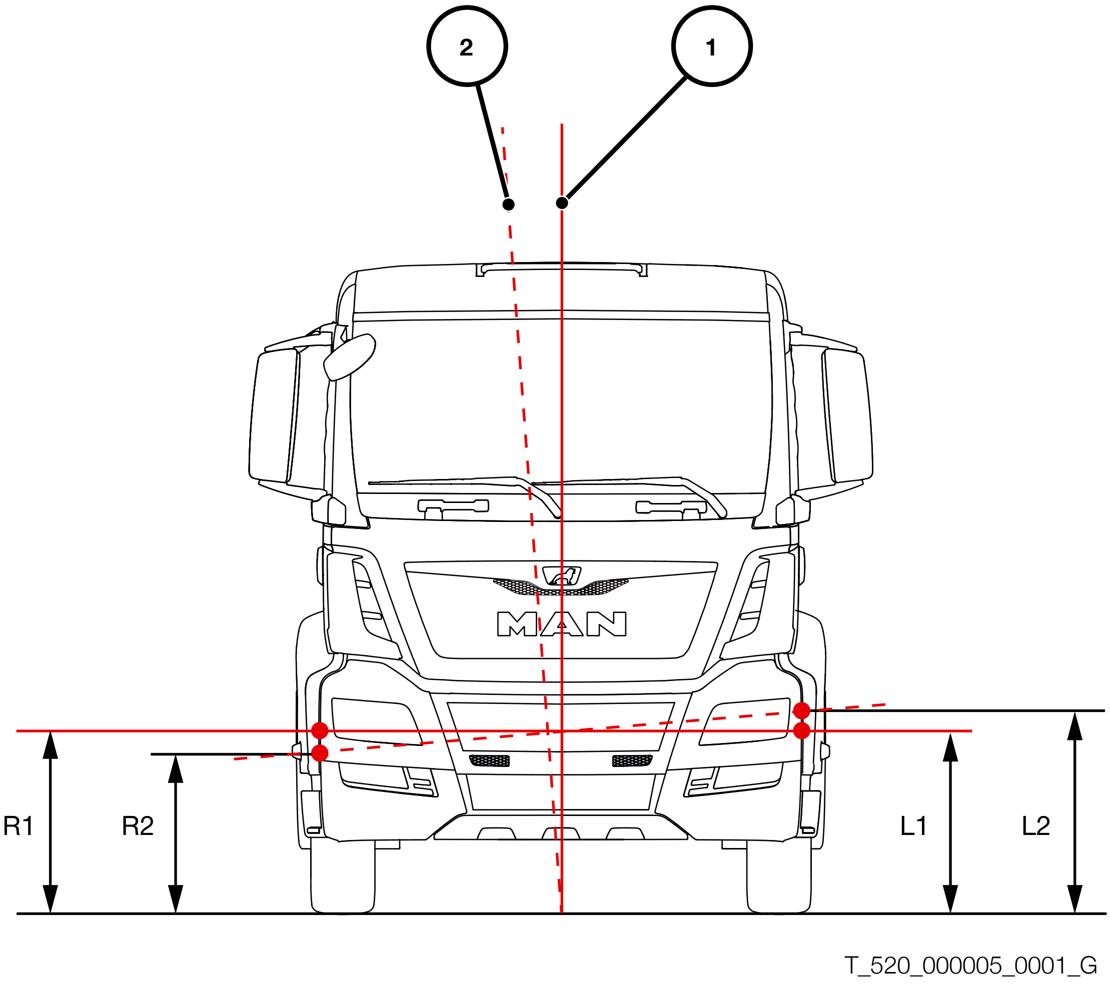
T_520_000008_0002_G

1) Center lens of multi-functional camera
α Visual field of multi-functional camera to be kept free, 55° horizontal
β Possible range for attachments, each 62.5° horizontal
γ Visual field of multi-functional camera to be kept free, 41° vertical
δ Possible range for attachments, 65° vertical

In addition, body and conversion work on the chassis may have a negative effect on the function of the multi-functional camera. For this reason, re-calibration of the multi-functional camera by an MAN Service workshop may be necessary following body or conversion work. In this regard, the following instructions must be observed.

- If the body or conversion work causes only slight changes to the ex works alignment of the vehicle's vertical axis (see Fig. 146-III), re-calibration is not necessary. In order to determine the deviation, any desired points on the outer side of the bumper on both sides of the vehicle can be marked prior to body/conversion work. With the aid of these markings and measurements of the height above the road surface, the difference between the ex works state and the state subsequent to body/conversion work can be determined. If the difference between the measurements prior and subsequent to body/conversion work is more than 20 mm on either side, re-calibration is necessary.
- Re-calibration is also necessary in the case of modifications that permanently change the position of the multi-functional camera in terms of height relative to the ex works state, for example, changes of tyre or modifications to the running-gear suspension.

Fig. 146-III: Checking the alignment of the vehicle's vertical axis



1) Vehicle's vertical axis on delivery ex works
2) Vehicle's vertical axis subsequent to body/conversion work

R1) Measurement prior to body/conversion work (right side of vehicle)
R2) Measurement subsequent to body/conversion work (right side of vehicle)

L1) Measurement prior to body/conversion work (left side of vehicle)
L2) Measurement subsequent to body/conversion work (left side of vehicle)

NOTICE

IV. Body

1.0 General requirements

1.1 Requirements

The respective operating conditions pertaining where commercial vehicles are deployed are decisive for design. We assume that bodybuilders observe this and take it into account when working out the body concept. It is also expected that bodies are carefully designed to prevent vehicle overloading.

To this end, the following points, amongst others, must be checked.

- Weight distribution (e.g. permissible axle load, minimum axle load)
- Dimensions (e.g. overall length, overall width)
- Material loads (e.g. on chassis frame and auxiliary frame)
- Compatibility between electrical systems (e.g. battery, alternator, wiring)

To achieve optimum payload carrying capability the chassis must be weighed before work starts on the body. Calculations can then be made to determine the best position of the center of gravity for payload and body as well as the optimum body length.

Important notice
The design of the auxiliary frame, the connection between chassis and body and the ensuring of stability are all the responsibility of the bodybuilder.

1.2 Accessibility and clearance

Accessibility

Access to the filler necks of fuel and AdBlue tanks and other operating fluids (e.g. cut-out for pump nozzle) must be ensured. In addition, accessibility to chassis components (e.g. spare-wheel lift, battery box, air filter, exhaust silencer, brakes) for purpose of service or repair may not be restricted by the body.

Controls must exhibit the necessary minimum clearance and be able to be moved without restriction
(e.g. the latching system of the cab tilting mechanism).

Stamped vehicle identification numbers, model plates or other features serving the purpose of identification and applied or attached ex works must not be obscured by vehicle bodies or modifications.

Clearance

General:
The freedom of movement of moving parts must not be adversely affected by the body. Amongst others, the following points must be observed when determining the requisite freedom of movement.

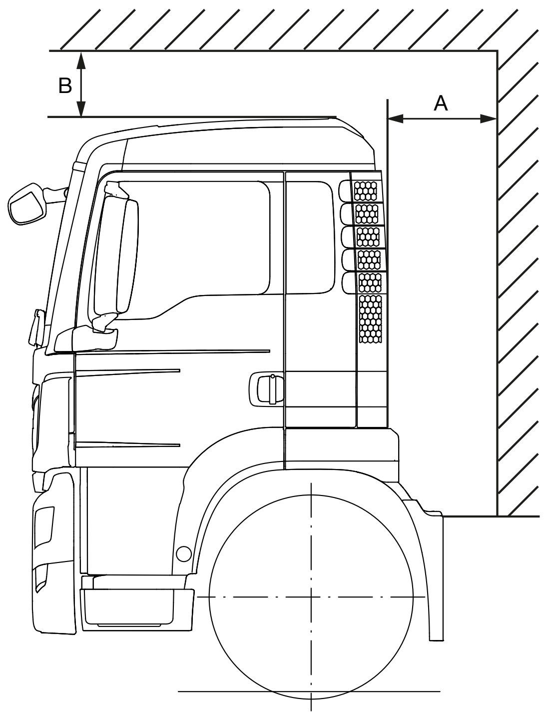
- Maximum spring compression
- Dynamic spring compression during travel
- jounce when pulling away or braking,
- sideways tilt when cornering,
- Operation with snow chains
- Limp-home mode characteristics of the air spring (e.g. damage to an air-spring bellows during a trip)

Cab:
Acceleration occurring during driving operation leads to rolling and pitching movements of the cab.
These movements must not be hampered by the body. The body builder must ensure that the following distances between cab and body are maintained (see Table 01-IV and Fig. 01-IV).

Table 01-IV: Minimum distance between cab and body

Model range	Cab	Dimension A [mm]	Dimension B [mm]
TGS/TGX	M, L, LX, XL, XLX	60	50
	XXL	70	50

Fig. 01-IV: Clearance between cab and body



T_670_000003_0001_G

A – Distance between cab rear wall and body
B – Distance between cab roof and body

Cabs are equipped with a tilting mechanism. It must be ensured that tilting can take place without hindrance. No parts that could pose a hindrance may protrude into the tilt radius. The tilt radii of the cabs are stated in the chassis drawings (obtainable from MANTED www.manted.de, registration required).

Notes
It is possible that parts will protrude above the frame top edge on some equipment variants in the operating states described above. For example:

- Brake cylinders
- gear control (gearshift linkage, control cable),
- parts of the running gear (wishbone, shock absorber bracket).

If components of the chassis project over the auxiliary frame top edge, an additional reinforcing frame on the auxiliary frame will create space. The reinforcing frame can be designed to further reinforce the auxiliary frame.

1.3 Handling characteristics and driving resistances

Bodies have a significant influence on the vehicle's handling characteristics and driving resistances. These should not be subjected to unnecessary negative influence by the body.

The following, for example, have a negative influence on handling characteristics.

- Uneven load distribution (e.g. heavy crane behind cab or at rear end)
- High centers of gravity of body and payload

An uneven load distribution as a result of the body can, for example, be countered by relocating parts such as the tank, battery box and spare wheel.

The vehicle equipment, for instance, may influence the effects of bodies and payloads with high centres of gravity. To this end, MAN offers equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity.

Increasing the driving resistances leads, for example, to increased fuel consumption and thus to increased CO_2 emission.

1.4 Vibration

When the body is designed, care must be taken that no impermissible vibration loads occur during operation. They can impair handling and ride comfort, for example. Bodies optimised for payload are especially sensitive in this regard.

These include, for example:

- Bodies without an auxiliary frame or with a multi-part auxiliary frame
- Bodies with auxiliary frames made from lightweight metals (e.g. aluminium)

In addition, as little vibration as possible is to be transmitted from the body to the chassis (e.g. bodies with separate motors).

If impermissible vibration occurs after completion or during the operation of a vehicle its cause must be eliminated.

1.5 Special feature of vehicles with lifting axles

Lifting axles can only be fully functional when the body design is matched to them.

The function can be restricted by the following.

- Cramped installation spaces (e.g. extremely low bodies)
- Unfavourable weight distribution (e.g. big loading cranes at rear end of frame)

When a lifting trailing axle is lifted, the front axle of the vehicle experiences a considerable lightening of the load. In conjunction with back-heavy body concepts (e.g. rear loading cranes), handling characteristics may be seriously impaired. The lifting facility must be disabled if more than 80% of the permissible drive axle load is reached when travelling unladen with the crane and with the axle lifted or if the minimum front-axle load (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.8) is not reached.

For manoeuvring purposes the trailing axle can be relieved if the auxiliary frame and body are of adequate size (moving-off aid). The higher bending and torsional forces acting on the body and the frame structure must then be taken into account.

1.6 Vehicles with outriggers

Truck chassis are sometimes fitted with bodies that necessitate outriggers to ensure stability.
Example of such bodies are loading cranes, skylifters and concrete pumps.

As a basic principle, a distinction can be drawn between two outrigger variants:

- outrigger operation with the wheels in contact with the ground
- outrigger operation with the wheels not in contact with the ground

Depending on the variant selected, the chassis and its equipment may have to meet different requirements.
The following sections describe the basic requirements for the most common cases. Exceptions are possible in the case of special-purpose vehicles / body designs in consultation with the customer and MAN, under the sole responsibility of the bodybuilder. In such cases, approval must be obtained from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

Warning notice
The bodybuilder is responsible for the stability of the overall system when in working operation.

1.6.1 Outrigger operation with the wheels in contact with the ground

Vehicles with air suspension
This section applies to vehicles fitted with at least one air-sprung axle. To improve stability on these vehicles it must be ensured that the air suspension is lowered to the buffer before commencing outrigger operation.

Lowering can be carried out manually or by means of the air-suspension control or automatically, using special equipment 311PE (input of parameter ECAS for crane operation or parameter ECAS for lowering the air suspension to the buffer).
If an automatic lowering system is not fitted then the user/driver must be informed of the requirement to manually lower the air suspension.

Special equipment 311PE automatically lowers the vehicle onto the buffers if the power take-off is engaged when the vehicle is at a standstill. Once the lowering operation has finished, the system maintains a defined residual pressure in order to protect the air-suspension bellows.
To ensure that the function is properly activated, it is imperative that the correct order of operations is observed when engaging the power take-off (see operating instructions). A check must also be carried out to ensure that the message “No ride height” appears on the display and that the vehicle has actually lowered.

If special equipment 311PE is selected in this case, it must be combined with special equipment 311PK (input of parameter ECAS with auxiliary circuit for suppressing the automatic levelling suspension system). Activating the 311PK function suppresses all the air-suspension system’s control functions. For this reason, the function may only be activated once the lowering procedure has been completed.
It can be activated by means of the switch installed ex works (see operating instructions). Moreover, it is also possible to activate this function via the body. If this is the case, the switch installed ex works must be removed or disabled.
If special equipment 311PK is not already fitted to the vehicle, it can be retrofitted by an MAN Service outlet (for further details see MAN Service Information 239704).

Warning notice
We explicitly point out that this measure does not contribute to stability and is therefore not a means of extending the technical limits of body-mounted equipment (e.g. cranes). The ECAS controlling function may only be suppressed during working operation.

The functions provided by special equipment 311PE are deactivated when the engine / power take-off or similar is turned on or off and the standard control of the ECAS system activated (setting the air suspension to ride height).

1.6.2 Outrigger operation with the wheels not in contact with the ground

Although the complete raising of the axles has advantages in terms of ensuring stability within physical limits, the load that results puts a greater strain on frames and auxiliary frames.

Vehicles with air suspension
This section applies to vehicles fitted with at least one air-sprung axle.
Completely raising the axles can lead to damage due to the resulting drop in pressure in the air-suspension bellows. In order to avoid such damage, MAN recommends special equipment 311PE (input of parameter ECAS for crane operation or parameter ECAS for lowering the air suspension to the buffer) in this case. Amongst other things, this regulates the residual pressure to approx. 0.5 bar in outrigger operation.

The functions provided by special equipment 311PE are deactivated when the engine / power take-off or similar is turned on or off and the standard control of the ECAS system activated (setting the air suspension to ride height).

1.7 Tolerances

The usual tolerances and hystereses must also be taken into consideration in designing the body.
These include, for example:

- Tyres
- Springs (including hysteresis in air-suspension systems)
- Frame

The tolerances in technical data published by MAN are in accordance with MAN standard M3264.
This can be obtained from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).

Deviations in dimensions are unavoidable. Further dimensional changes can be expected during the use of a vehicle. These include, for example:

- Settling of springs,
- Deformation of tyres,
- Deformation of bodywork.

1.8 Assembly

The chassis frame must not be deformed or detached before or during assembly.

Before the body is assembled, the vehicle should be driven backwards and forwards a few times to release any trapped stresses. This applies in particular to vehicles with driven tandem-axle units because of the secondary bending of the axles when cornering.

Place a vehicle on a level surface to install bodywork.

Different frame heights left/right of ≤ 1.5% of the distance from the ground to the frame top edge are within the range of the hysteresis and settling effects described in Chapter IV; Section 1.7. They may not be compensated by aligning the frame, shims in the springs or adjustment of the air suspension because they inevitably change during operation. Differences in height of > 1.5% must be reported to the MAN Customer Services department before any repairs are carried out. This department decides what measures are to be taken by the bodybuilder and/or the MAN Service workshop.

The body must sit torsionally flexible on the frame main members.

Renewed checks or adjustments will be necessary on a vehicle after installing the body.
This applies in particular to the headlights, sensors fitted to the front of the vehicle (e.g. radar sensor for the emergency-braking assistant) as well as rear and side underride protection.

1.9 Corrosion protection of bodywork

Surface and corrosion protection influence the service life and appearance of a product.
The coating quality of bodywork should consequently be that of a chassis.
In order to fulfil this requirement, MAN works standard M3297 “Corrosion protection and coating systems for non-MAN bodies” is binding for bodies that are ordered by MAN. If the customer commissions the body, this standard becomes a recommendation only. Should the standard not be observed, MAN provides no warranty for any consequences.
MAN works standards can be obtained from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).
Series-production MAN chassis are coated with environmentally friendly, water-based two-component chassis top-coat paints at approx. 80°C. To ensure uniform coating, the following coating structure is required for all metal component assemblies on the body and auxiliary frame and subsequent to frame modifications on the chassis.

- Bare metal or blasted component surface (SA 2.5)
- Priming: two-component epoxy primer, approved in accordance with MAN works standard M3162-C or, if possible, cathodic dip painting to MAN works standard M3078-2, with zinc phosphate pre-treatment.
- Top coat: two-component top-coat paint to MAN works standard M3094, preferably water-based; if there are no facilities for this, then solvent-based paint is also permitted.

Instead of priming and painting the vehicle with a top coat, the substructure of the body (e.g. longitudinal and cross-members, corner plates) may also be galvanised with a layer thickness ≥ 80 µm. Refer to the data sheets of the paint manufacturer for details of curing and drying times and temperatures. When selecting and combining materials the compatibility of the different metals (e.g. aluminium and steel) must be taken into consideration as must the effects of the ‘electrochemical series’ (cause of contact corrosion).

After completing all work on a chassis:

- remove any drilling swarf,
- deburr edges,
- preserve cavities with wax.

Mechanical connecting elements (e.g. screws, nuts, washers, bolts) are to be optimally protected against corrosion. To prevent corrosion through salt while a vehicle is stationary during the bodybuilding phase, wash all chassis with fresh water upon arrival at the bodybuilder’s premises to remove salt residue.

1.10 Standards, directives and regulations

The following section lists examples of standards, directives / guidelines and regulations applying to truck bodies. This overview is, however, not intended to be exhaustive. We wish to point out that the overall system consisting of chassis and body must comply with the conditions for registration in the respective country.

1.10.1 Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC)

The Machinery Directive is available from EUR-Lex under the following link http://eur-lex.europa.eu.

General
The Machinery Directive serves to ensure the health and safety of persons, in particular of employees, consumers and objects, in particular in relation to the risks inherent whilst using machinery.

It sets forth generally applicable, fundamental health and safety protection requirements in accordance with the state of the art at the time of design, together with technical and commercial requirements that are supplemented by a range of specific requirements for certain classes of machine.

There is an appropriate procedure for every type of machine with which compliance with the fundamental health and safety protection requirements can be checked. These include the conformity assessment procedures, the CE conformity markings and a risk assessment. Furthermore, the manufacturer of the machine must prepare technical documentation for each machine.

Scope and purpose
In addition to these guidelines to fitting bodies, bodybuilders must also observe the Machinery Directive.
The Machinery Directive is fundamentally not applicable to the truck's chassis because the applicable statutory requirements are defined in the Directive on type-approval of motor vehicles and their trailers (70/156/EEC).
The Machinery Directive does, however, apply to various bodies. The products (truck bodies) that fall under this scope of application are defined in Article 1 of the Directive ("Scope").

The Machinery Directive applies fundamentally to:

- Machines
- Interchangeable equipment
- Safety components
- Lifting accessories
- Chains, ropes and webbing
- Removable mechanical transmission devices
- Partly completed machinery

Examples include:

- Loading cranes
- Liftgates (tail-lifts)
- Tipper bodies
- Flushing and suction bodies
- Recovery platform bodies
- Compressors fitted to the body
- Garbage compactors
- Concrete / cement drums
- Troughs
- Mechanically driven cable winches
- Roll-off and set-down skip loader bodies
- Aerial work platforms / skylifters
- Tank bodies

Among others, exceptions include:

- Agricultural and forestry tractor units
- Motor vehicles and their trailers (70/156/EEC)

If such a product (body/fitting) is installed on the truck chassis, the Machinery Directive does not apply to the truck chassis but to the body. The Machinery Directive also applies to **the interfaces between the truck chassis and the body** that are responsible for the safe movement and operation of the machine. A distinction should, therefore, be made between **self-propelled working machines**, which **fall fully** under the Machinery Directive and **truck chassis with machinery fitted or mounted on them.**

Examples of self-propelled machines include:

- Self-propelled construction machines
- Concrete pumps
- Truck-mounted crane
- Gully emptiers
- Drilling rig carrier vehicles

Definition of machinery in accordance with 2006/42/EC

" — an assembly, fitted with or intended to be fitted with a drive system other than directly applied human or animal effort, consisting of linked parts or components, at least one of which moves, and which are joined together for a specific application;

— an assembly referred to in the first indent, missing only the components to connect it on site or to sources of energy and motion;

— an assembly referred to in the first and second indents, ready to be installed and able to function as it stands only if mounted on a means of transport, or installed in a building or a structure;

— assemblies of machinery referred to in the first, second and third indents or partly completed machinery referred to in point (g) which, in order to achieve the same end, are arranged and controlled so that they function as an integral whole;

— an assembly of linked parts or components, at least one of which moves and which are joined together, intended for lifting loads and whose only power source is directly applied human effort;"

Source: Excerpt from 2006/42/EC

CE marking (CE conformity marking in accordance with 2006/42/EC)
The bodybuilder must ensure that the body, along with its attachments and accessories, complies with the statutory requirements. The Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC) lays down the types of machinery requiring a CE marking.

As a basic principle, the following apply to the body:

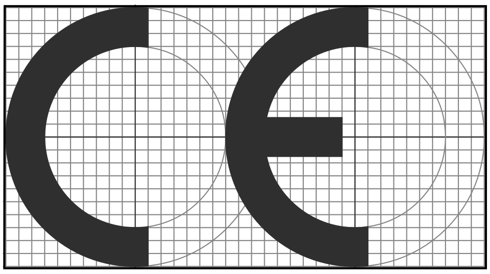
- All machinery must carry the CE mark. In other words, this includes all components relevant to safety, removable mechanical transmission devices, chains, ropes and webbing.
- Partly completed machinery may not carry a CE mark.

For the CE marking on machinery, the following apply:

- The CE marking shall be affixed to the machinery visibly, legibly and indelibly.
- The affixing on machinery of markings, signs and inscriptions that are likely to mislead third parties as to the meaning or form of the CE marking, or both, shall be prohibited.
- Any other marking may be affixed to the machinery provided that the visibility, legibility and meaning of the CE marking is not thereby impaired.

- In order to ensure the same quality for the CE marking and the manufacturer's mark, it is important that they be affixed according to the same techniques. In order to avoid confusion between any CE markings which might appear on certain components and the CE marking corresponding to the machinery, it is important that the latter marking be affixed alongside the name of the person who has taken responsibility for it, namely the manufacturer or his authorised representative.
- It is prohibited to pre-date or post-date the date of manufacture of the machinery when affixing the CE marking.
- If the CE marking is reduced or enlarged the proportions shown in the drawing reproduced here must be maintained.
- The various components of the CE marking must have approximately the same vertical dimensions, which may not be less than 5 mm. The minimum dimension may be waived for small-scale machinery.

The CE conformity marking shall consist of the initials "CE" taking the following form:



T_998_000002_0001_G

Where machinery is also the subject of other Directives relating to other aspects and providing for the affixing of the CE marking, the marking shall indicate that the machinery also conforms to the provisions of those other Directives. However, where one or more of those Directives allow the manufacturer or his authorised representative to choose, during a transitional period, the system to be applied, the CE marking shall indicate conformity only to the provisions of those Directives applied by the manufacturer or his authorised representative.

Particulars of the Directives applied, as published in the Official Journal of the European Union, shall be given on the EC declaration of conformity. Where the full quality assurance procedure referred to in 2006/42/EC, 12(3)(c) and 12(4)(b) has been applied, the CE marking must be followed by the identification number of the notified body.

Model plate on body
For identification purposes, each body must be fitted with a model plate that must contain the following data as a minimum:

- Full name of body manufacturer
- Full type-approval number

The characters must be at least 4 mm high. The details on the model plate must be durable.

1.10.2 Securing of cargo

The standards applicable to the securing of cargo on commercial vehicles must be observed.
In Europe, these are in particular EN12640 (lashing points), EN12641 (tarpaulins) and EN12642 (bodies).

1.10.3 Contour markings

If required under the national conditions for registration, contour markings as per ECE-R48 or 76/756 EEC are to be affixed.

1.10.4 Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU

The directive is available to read on the EUR-Lex website at the following link http://eur-lex.europa.eu

General

The Radio Equipment Directive aims to ensure radio equipment uses the radio spectrum efficiently and does not cause harmful interference. Furthermore, the Directive is intended to ensure the protection of health and safety of persons, pets and livestock and the protection of property. To achieve this objective, all devices should fall within the scope of this Directive.

Although receivers do not themselves cause harmful interference, reception capabilities are an increasingly important factor in ensuring the efficient use of radio spectrum by way of an increased resilience of receivers against harmful interference and unwanted signals on the basis of the relevant essential requirements of Union harmonisation legislation.

The compliance of some categories of radio equipment with the essential requirements set out in this Directive may be affected by the inclusion of software or modification of its existing software. The user, the radio equipment or a third party should only be able to load software into the radio equipment where this does not compromise the subsequent compliance of that radio equipment with the applicable essential requirements.

The manufacturer should provide sufficient information on the intended use of the radio equipment so as to allow its use in compliance with the essential requirements. Such information may need to include a description of accessories such as antennas and of components such as software, and specifications of the installation process of the radio equipment.

Distributors and importers, being close to the market place, should be involved in market surveillance tasks carried out by the competent national authorities, and should be prepared to participate actively, providing those authorities with all necessary information relating to the radio equipment concerned. Distributors and importers have a special obligation to verify equipment labelling and the accompanying documents.

Ensuring traceability of radio equipment throughout the whole supply chain helps to make market surveillance simpler and more efficient. An efficient traceability system facilitates market surveillance authorities' task of tracing economic operators who have made non-compliant radio equipment available on the market. When storing the information required by the RED for the purposes of identifying other industry players, the latter are not obliged to update the information they hold on other industry players from whom they have purchased radio equipment or to whom they have sold it.

Manufacturers must draw up and have available an EU declaration of conformity to provide information required under this Directive on the conformity of radio equipment with the requirements of this Directive and of the other relevant Union harmonisation legislation. Manufacturers are responsible for device labelling in accordance with the Radio Equipment Directive.

Scope and purpose

The RED defines a regulatory framework for the market launch and commissioning of radio equipment on the EU market.

Explanation of terms:

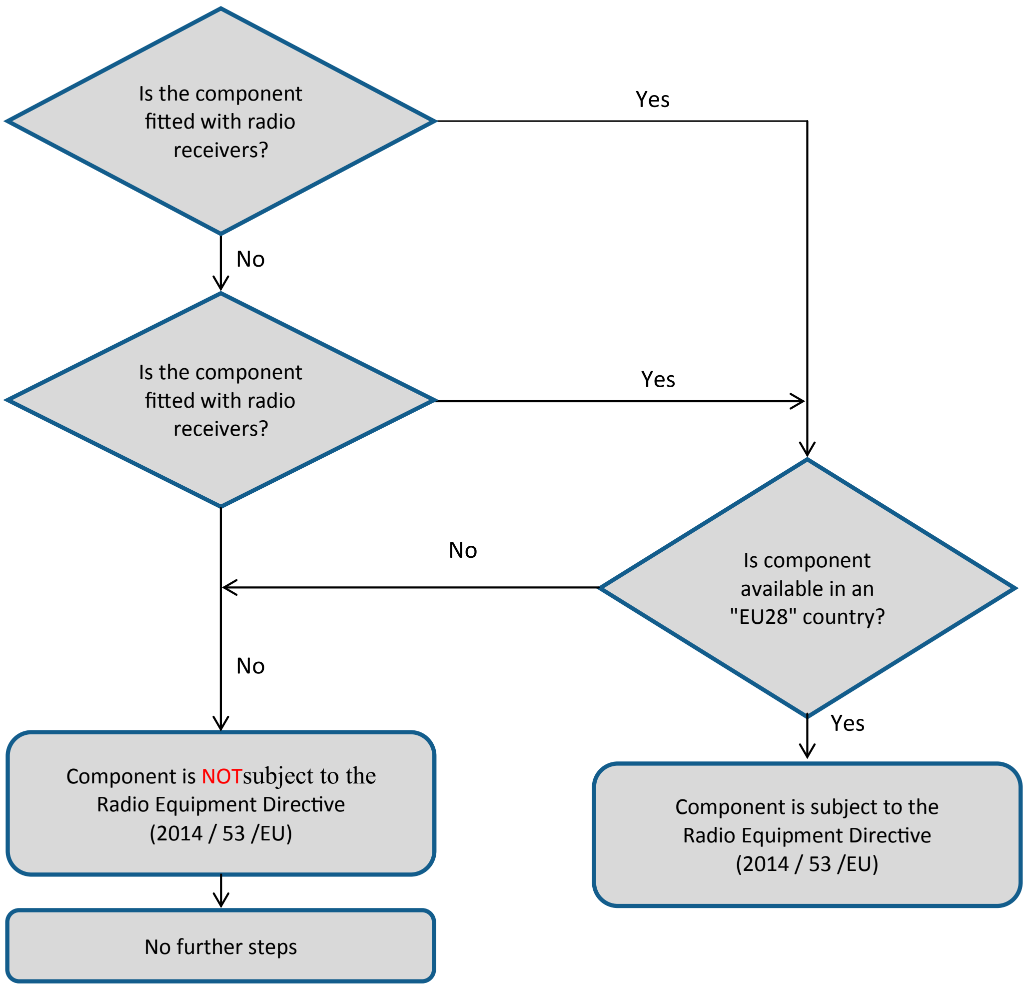
'Radio equipment' means electrical or electronic products, which intentionally emit and/or receive radio waves for the purpose of radio communication and/or radiodetermination, or electrical or electronic products which must be completed with an accessory, such as antenna, so as to intentionally emit and/or receive radio waves for the purpose of radio communication and/or radiodetermination.

'Radio waves' are electromagnetic waves of frequencies lower than 3,000 GHz, propagated in space without an artificial guide.

Use cases

With the aid of the decision-making aids described below, it is necessary to verify whether retrofitted components are affected by the Radio Equipment Directive. The description is only intended as an aid, and the relevance must be established in principle in accordance with the Radio Equipment Directive.

RED relevance decision-making aid



Examples of components that could fall under the Radio Equipment Directive:

- Radio equipment
- Radio remote controls
- Radar sensors
- SAT receivers
- DVB-T/DVB-T2 receivers
- Aerials
- Radios
- Navigation units
- Alarm systems
- Tyre pressure monitoring systems
- Fleet management systems/components

Procedure:

If a component is subject to the RED and is installed in or mounted onto a vehicle, the workshop carrying out the work is obliged to enclose the manufacturer‘s EU declaration of conformity for these components with the vehicle documents/the operator‘s manual in the vehicle.

Information

It is recommended to document the handover of the manufacturer's EU declaration of conformity for this component for traceability purposes.

2.0 Body and auxiliary-frame design

2.1 General requirements

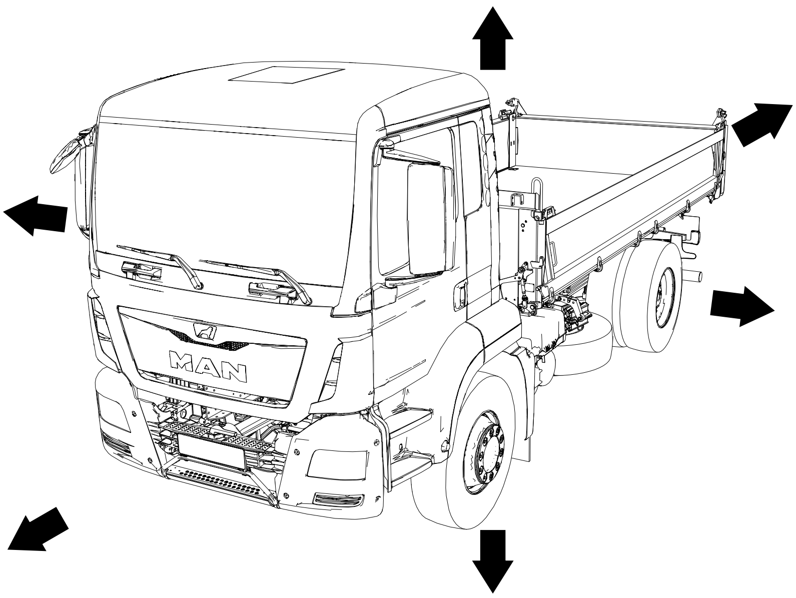
Bodies are assembled on a continuous or multi-part auxiliary frame or without an auxiliary frame on the truck chassis according to the type of load occurring and the design of the body. The following sections deal with the requirements to be met by various designs and their connection to the chassis frame.

Introduction of force from body to chassis frame
A commercial vehicle is subject to very different stresses in operation.

These include, for example:

- static and dynamic loads exerted by mass forces (e.g. by the cargo),
- loads when cornering,
- loads when braking and when pulling away.

Fig. 02-IV: The loads exerted on a commercial vehicle



T_995_000022_0001_G

These loads must be carried equally by the chassis and the body. In most cases, the loads can be carried only by the combination of chassis and body. For this reason it is imperative in body design that the body and the chassis as well as their connection are taken into consideration.

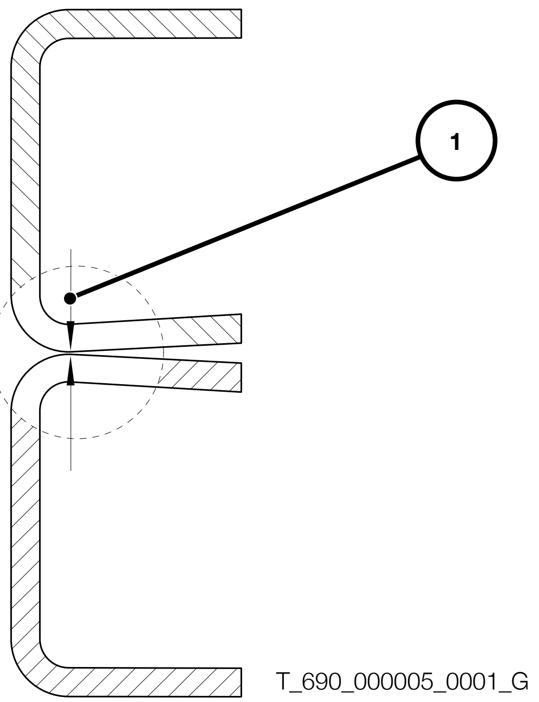
The basic principles applying to the vertical and horizontal transmission of force between body and chassis are as follows.

- Forces shall be transmitted as evenly as possible over areas as large as possible (e.g. over a continuous auxiliary frame).
- If the body is fitted on a multi-part auxiliary frame or without an auxiliary frame, it must be ensured that the force is transmitted as evenly as possible to all parts of the auxiliary frame or all parts of the body.
- The transmission of horizontal forces must be as even as possible along the entire length of the body and on both sides of the vehicle. This applies to bodies with continuous or multi-part auxiliary frames as well as to bodies without auxiliary frames.

Force transmission: Hertzian contact stress

Irrespective of whether an auxiliary frame is used or not, the minimum lengths of the supports on the frame must be calculated according to the rules of Hertzian contact stresses. The assumption is linear contact between two cylinders. Fig. 03-IV is an exaggerated presentation of
the deformation of two U-profiles on top of one another, which can occur in a combination of auxiliary frame and chassis frame. Position no. 1 in Fig. 03-IV shows the linear contact. A calculation example can be found in Chapter V, Section 1.11.0 “Support length for body without auxiliary frame”.

Fig. 03-IV: Deformation of two U-profiles



Frame deflection and torsion

Frame deflection and torsion may not cause any undesirable characteristics in either the body or the vehicle.
The body and chassis must be able to absorb such forces safely.

Formula 01-IV gives a rough estimate of permissible deflection.

Formula 01-IV: Permissible deflection

$$f = \frac{l_t}{250}$$

Where:

f = Maximum deflection [mm]
l_t = Theoretical wheelbase [mm] (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.1)

2.2 Body with auxiliary frame

The section applies both to continuous and multi-part auxiliary frames.

2.2.1 Permissible materials

Taking into account safety coefficients, the yield point, also known as the elongation limit or $\sigma_{0.2}$ limit, must not be exceeded in any driving or load state. The materials most commonly used for auxiliary frames are listed in Table 02-IV Higher-quality materials or materials with comparable characteristics not listed here can also be used.

Should point loads arise or if units are to be fitted that exert localised forces, e.g. liftgates, cranes and cable winches, then steels with a yield point of $\sigma_{0.2}$ > 350 N/mm² must always be used. Rolled sections are not permitted.

Table 02-IV: Subframe materials (examples), standard designations and yield points

Material number	Material designation, old	Material designation, new	Yield point N/mm²	Tensile strength N/mm²	Suitability for auxiliary frames
1.0570	St52-3	S355J2G3	≥ 355	Approx. 490-630	Highly suitable
1.0974	QStE340TM		≥ 340	Approx. 420-540	Not for point loads
1.0976		S355MC	≥ 355	Approx. 430-550	Highly suitable
1.0978	QStE380TM		≥ 380	Approx. 450-590	Highly suitable
1.0980	QStE420TM	S420MC	≥ 420	Approx. 480-620	Highly suitable
1.0984	QStE500TM	S500MC	≥ 500	Approx. 550-700	Highly suitable

2.2.2 Auxiliary-frame design

No moving parts may be restricted in their freedom of movement by the auxiliary-frame structure.

The auxiliary frame must have the same outer width as the chassis frame and follow its outer contour.

As far as possible the auxiliary frame should be designed to be flexible. The chamfered U-profiles commonly used in vehicle construction comply with this requirement.

In order to reduce variations in rigidity, the auxiliary frame must be chamfered or recessed at the front (for examples, see Fig. 04-IV and Fig. 05-IV).

Fig. 04-IV: Auxiliary-frame chamfer at the front

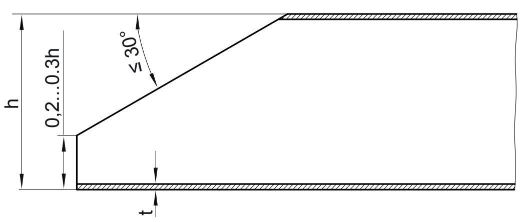
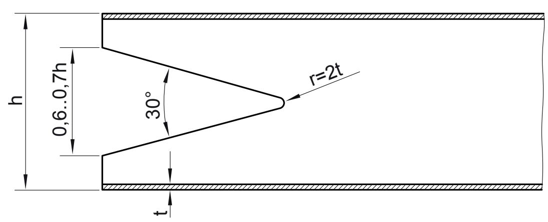


Fig. 05-IV: Auxiliary-frame recess at the front

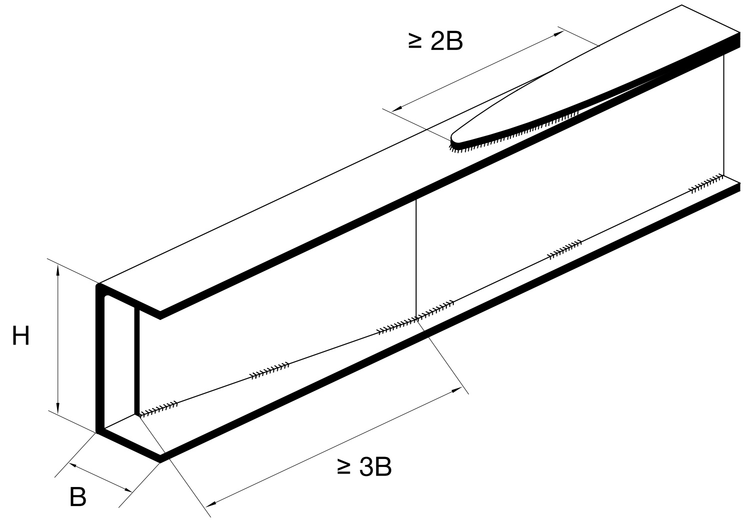


T_690_000002_0002_G

If an auxiliary-frame side member is closed at various points to form a box in order to increase rigidity, a gradual transition from the closed profile to the opened profile must be ensured. The length of the transition must be at least three times the width of the profile (see Fig. 06-IV).

If the planned body (e.g. loading crane body) necessitates additional anti-wear plates on the upper flange of the auxiliary frame, variations in the rigidity of these plates must be avoided (see Fig. 06-IV).

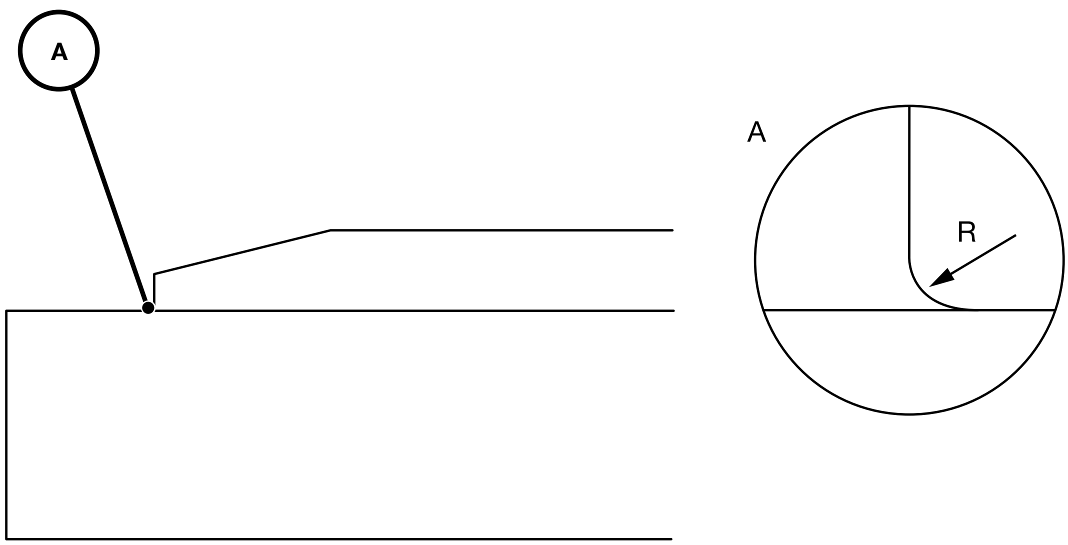
Fig. 06-IV: Transition from box to U-profile



T_998_000001_0001_G

On the projections of auxiliary frames, the end edges of the lower flange of the auxiliary frame shall exhibit a radius (radius = 0.5 * thickness of auxiliary-frame material) (see Fig. 07-IV - Pos. A). Sharp edges are to be avoided in order to reduce the risk involved in incorporating the auxiliary frame into the chassis frame.

Fig. 07-IV: End edge of auxiliary-frame lower flange

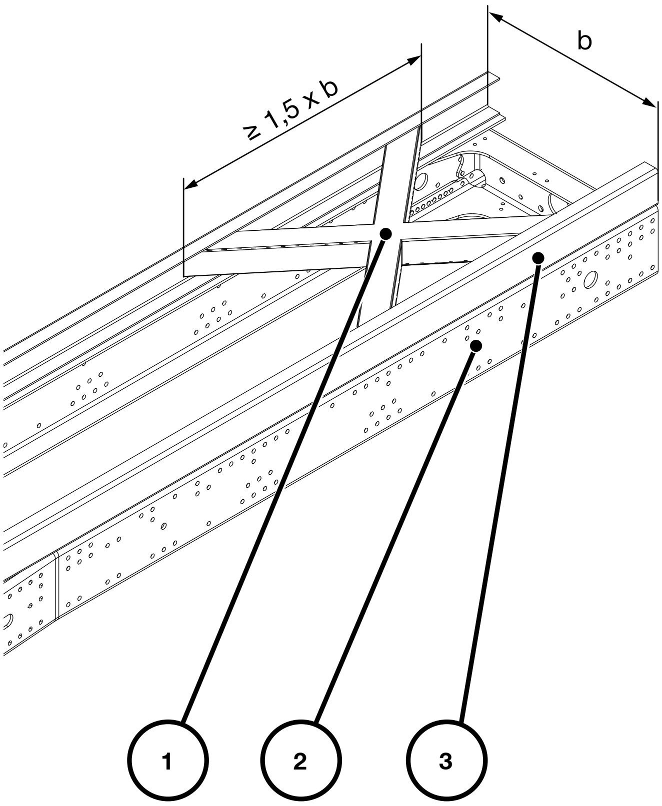


T_690_000003_0002_G

Where possible, the auxiliary-frame cross members are to be arranged above the locations of the frame cross members. There shall be cross members at the kinks in the auxiliary-frame side members.

In the case of rear loads concentrated at a particular point (e.g. rear loading crane, transportable forklift, liftgate) or back-heavy body concepts (e.g. refuse collectors), MAN recommends employing one or more diagonal cross braces or similar to increase the rigidity of the auxiliary frame structure. These must extend from the rear-axle guides to the load application point of the body at the rear (see Fig. 08-IV).

Fig. 08-IV: Example of diagonal cross-bracing



T_690_000006_0001_G

1) Diagonal brace
2) Chassis frame
3) Auxiliary frame

2.2.3 Connection to chassis frame

The auxiliary frame side members must be positioned level and flat on the upper flange of the frame side member.

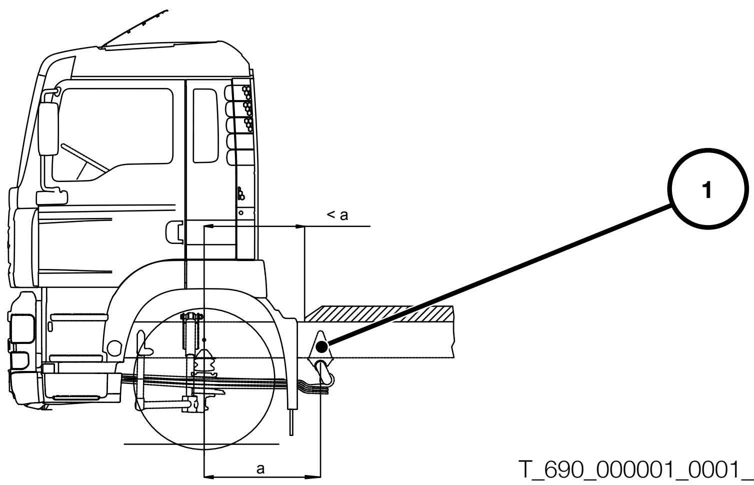
Transverse weld seams at the kinks are to be avoided. If thrust plates are necessary in these areas, they shall be located in front of and behind the kinks.

The auxiliary frame must extend as far forward as possible, at least beyond the rearmost front spring hanger (see Fig. 09-IV – Pos. 1 and Dimension a).

In the case of an air-sprung front axle, we recommend a clearance of ≤ 600 mm between the centerline of the first axle and the auxiliary frame.

Examples of how this is done can be found in Chapter IV Section 2.6 and Section 2.7.

Fig. 09-IV: Auxiliary frame distance from center of first axle



T_690_000001_0001_G

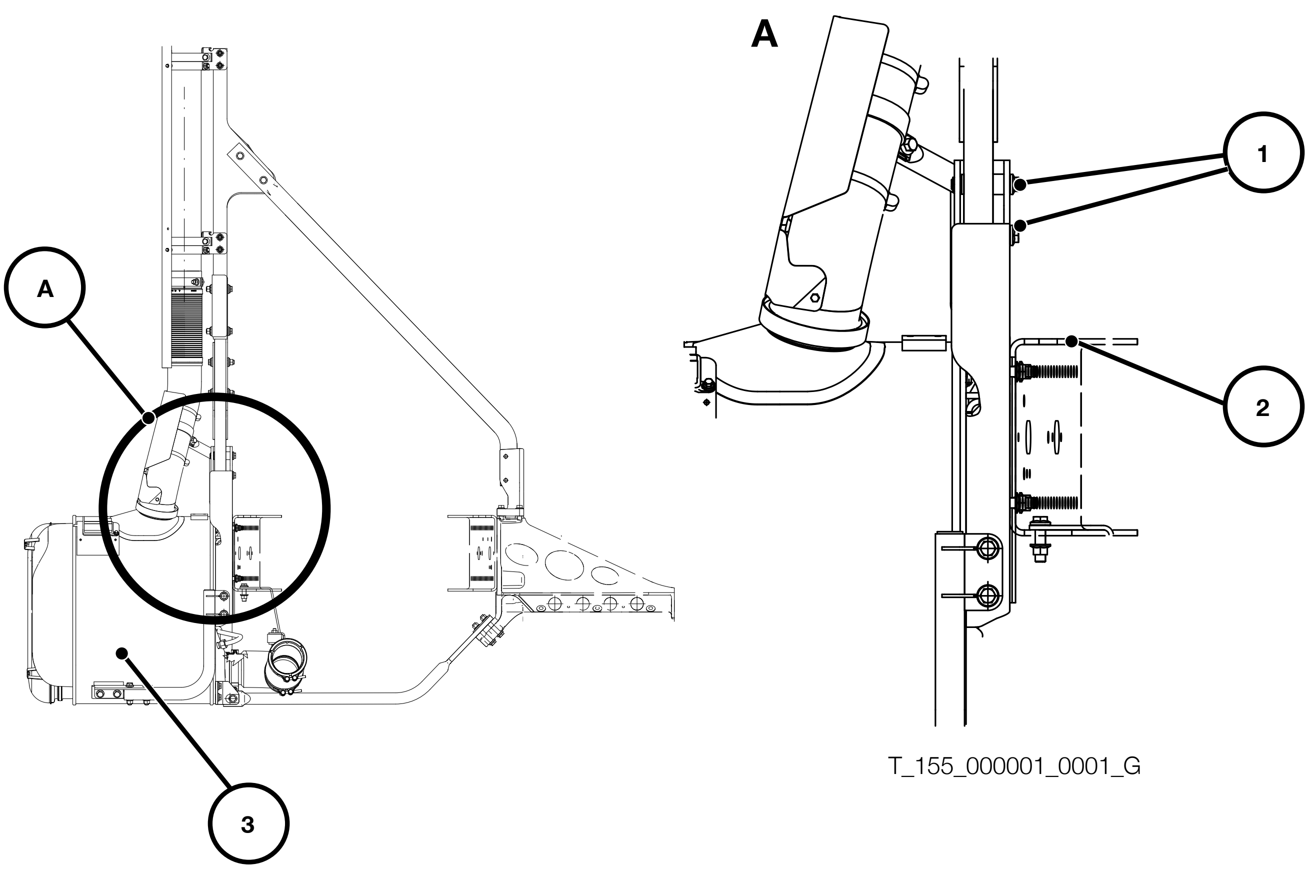
1) Rear front spring hanger

2.2.4 Notes and restrictions due to equipment

Upswept exhaust

If the vehicle is equipped ex works with a upswept exhaust pipe, it must be determined whether installation-space problems will arise during assembly of the auxiliary frame due to the fastening of the exhaust pipe (incl. support) for an illustration showing an example, please see Fig. 10-IV. If this is the case, the auxiliary frame has to be adapted as necessary.

Fig. 10-IV: Space for auxiliary frame with upswept exhaust pipe Euro 6



T_155_000001_0001_G

A) Detail
1) Bolt connection of exhaust pipe
2) Frame side member
3) Exhaust silencer

2.3 Body without auxiliary frame

Information

Assembly without an auxiliary frame must be authorised by MAN (for address, see “Issuer” above) for all body types where an auxiliary frame is strictly necessary according to these guidelines.

An auxiliary frame may not be necessary if:

- The force transmission between the body and chassis occurs on a large area
- The combination of the chassis and body provides sufficient horizontal and vertical bending stiffness
- The combination of the chassis and body provides sufficient shear stiffness
- The torsional stiffness of the body does not impair the required frame torsion of the chassis in an impermissible manner

Due to a body connection without auxiliary frame, the force transmission between the body and chassis takes place in few areas. This leads to increased local loads on the chassis frame. This must be carefully checked during design. The following influencing factors must be strictly observed in order to avoid overstraining the chassis components.

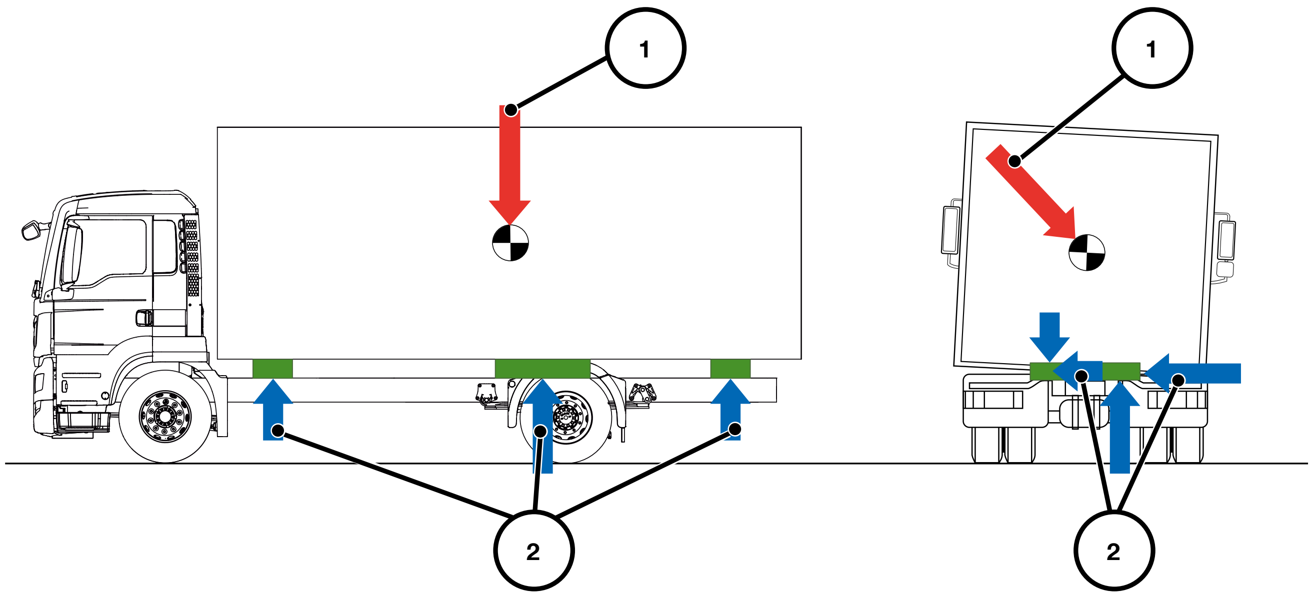
The actual load is dependent on:

- The number of body mounts
- Position of the body mounts
- Size of the body weight and the load
- Position of the body and payload centre of gravity (in all coordinate directions)
- Body operation (e.g. loading and unloading processes)
- Driving manoeuvres (e.g. cornering)

Important notice

The actual loads of the body mounts fluctuate greatly during operation. For example, loads occur due to driving dynamics that are greater than in the case of static loads.

Fig. 11-IV: A: Reaction forces in the case of a static load B: Reaction forces in the case of a dynamic load (left-hand bends))



1) Body and payload centre of gravity
2) Reaction forces on the body mounts

The body connection must ensure firm support between the body and chassis frame in both the longitudinal and transverse direction. It must be ensured that there is a large, transversely rigid body connection in the area of the rear axle in particular.

Information
Chassis are subjected to higher loads by a body without an auxiliary frame than with bodies with auxiliary frames. Driving characteristics may be negatively influenced by bodies without an auxiliary frame. They must be checked and secured by the body manufacturer after completion of the body work. We recommend equipping deployed chassis with the available stabilisation packages (refer to Chapter III Section 7.3).

Increased shear stiffness between the body mounts on the chassis frame can have a positive influence on driving characteristics, alongside the increased effect on the chassis frame. The shear stiffness can, for example, be increased by additional built-in diagonal crosses (see Chapter IV, Section 2.2.2). Appropriate positions for them are usually in the area of the rear axles and in areas with a fixed body connection.

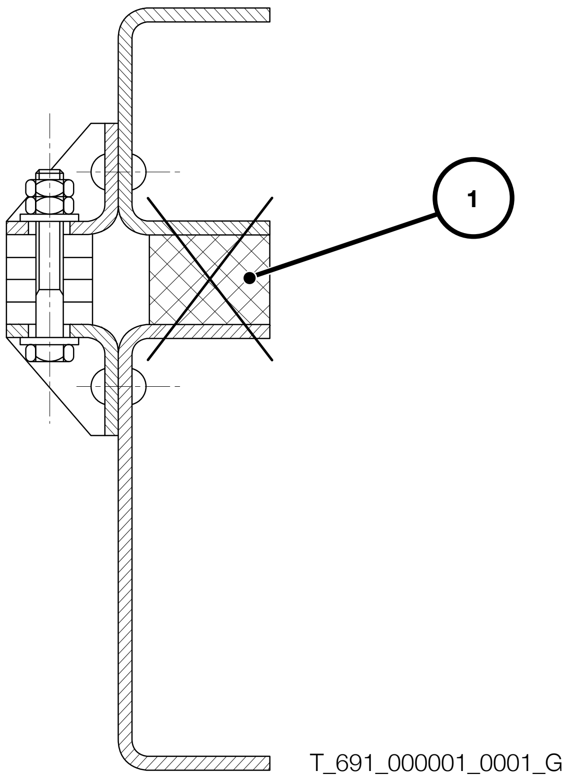
A large level of flexibility of the body bearings in the longitudinal and transverse direction generally has a negative influence on the driving characteristics.

2.4 Attaching auxiliary frames and bodies

Auxiliary frames and chassis frames must be connected to one another with rigid or flexible connections. Both connection types are to be combined depending on body situation.

Elastic shims (e.g. wooden shims) between frame and auxiliary frame or frame and body are prohibited (see Fig. 12-IV - Pos. 1).

Fig. 12-IV: Elastic shims



Justified exceptions are possible provided MAN is able to issue written approval (for address see “Publisher” above)..

2.5 Bolt connections and riveted joints

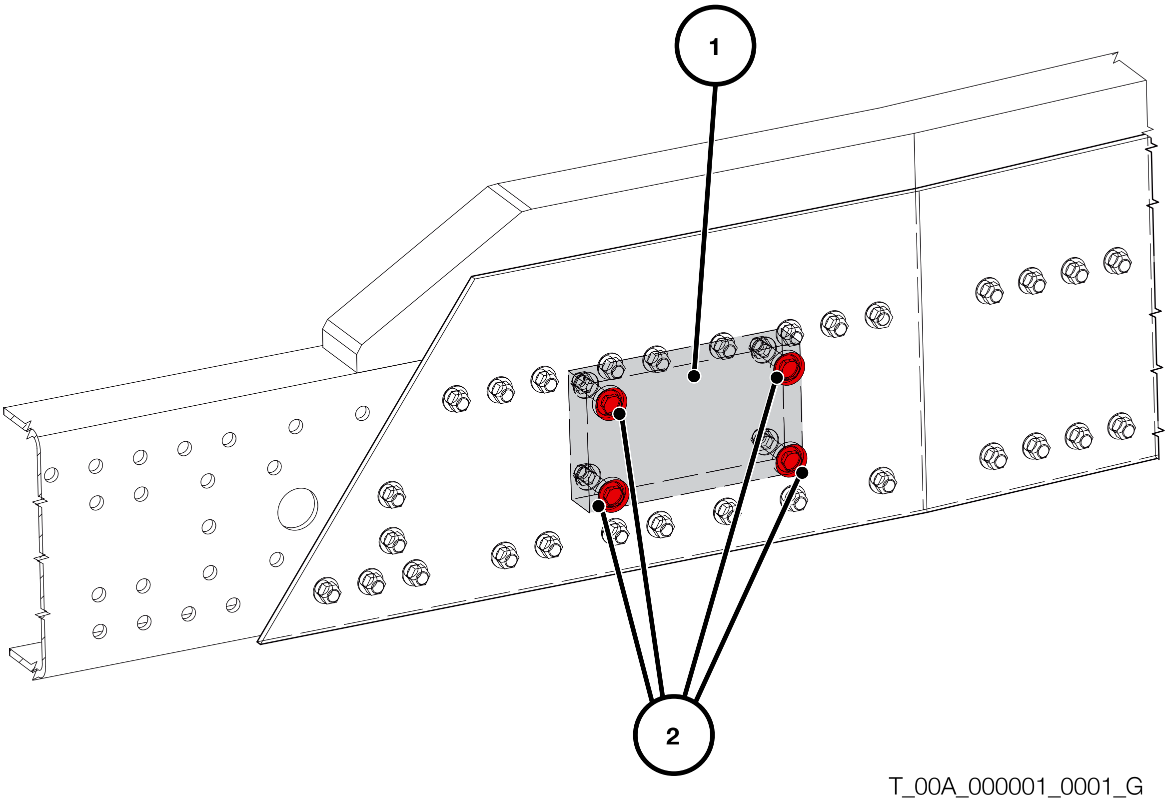
The bodybuilder is responsible for the design of the bolt connection between the auxiliary frame and the chassis frame. It must also be ensured that the bolted connections are regularly inspected, and tightened if necessary. Particularly with body fastenings susceptible to shear force, there is a risk of bolted connections coming loose.

Chapter III, Section 1.3.3 applies to bolt connections present ex works that must be loosened during construction work on the body.

Important notice
The bolt connections of the engine and gearbox mount must not be loosened or removed as the vibration behaviour of the vehicle can be negatively altered by doing so.

If an overlap with body or attachment fasteners is necessary in the areas of the engine or gearbox mount, the fastening elements must be removed at these points (see an example in Fig. 13-IV).

Fig. 13-IV: Attachment for engine or gearbox mount



1) Engine or gearbox mount
2) Bolt connections for engine or gearbox mount

MAN recommends bolts of Strength Class 10.9 and a mechanical locking device for bolt connections between the auxiliary frame and the chassis frame.

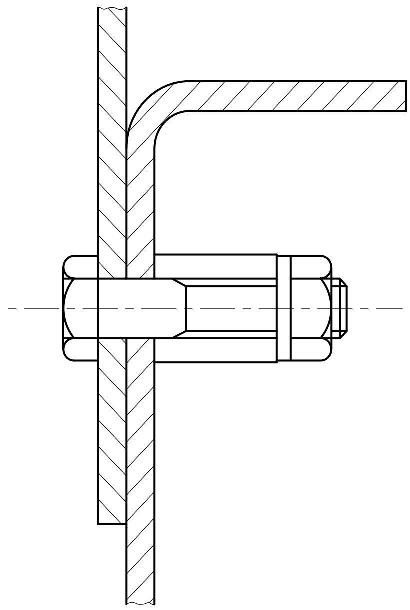
It is also possible to use high-strength rivets (e.g. Huck-BOM, blind fasteners) – manufacturers' installation instructions must be followed.

A riveted joint must be at least equivalent to a bolt connection in terms of design and strength.

Note

If a larger clamping length is required due to the bolt design, spacer sleeves (as in Fig. 14-IV) may be applied.

Fig. 14-IV: Bolt connection with spacer sleeve



T_993_000007_0002_G

2.6 Flexible connection

A flexible joint is friction-locked. Relative movement between the frame and subframe is possible to a certain degree.

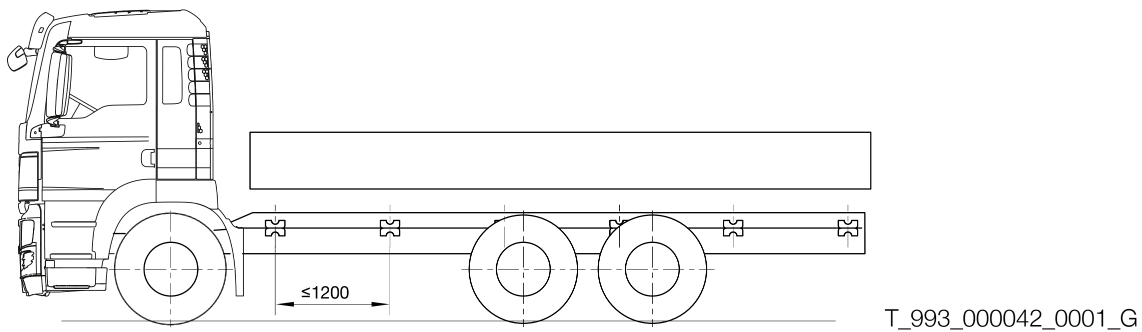
In practice there are various options for creating a flexible connection between the chassis frame and the auxiliary or mounting frame. The most important aspects to be considered are dealt with below.

2.6.1 General requirements for flexible body fasteners

The flexible body fastener must ensure the transmission of force between the body and the chassis frame in both the vertical and horizontal directions despite its flexibility.

As a basic principle, the number of fasteners must be selected that the distance between the centers of the attachment points does not exceed 1,200 mm (see Fig. 15-IV).

Fig. 15-IV: Distance between auxiliary-frame fasteners

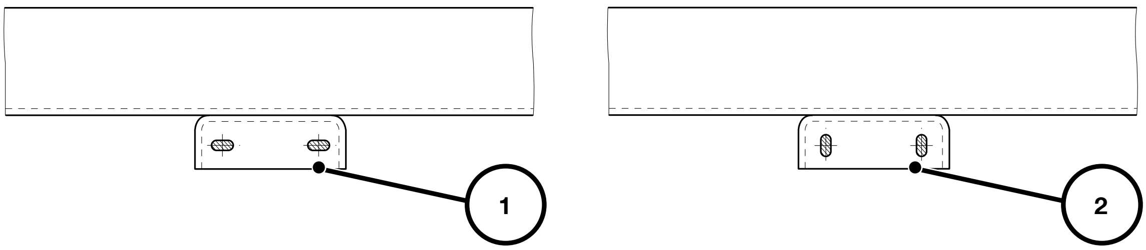


Retaining brackets supplied by MAN are intended for the flexible fitting of loading platforms and box bodies. Suitability for other additions and bodies is not expressly ruled out. It is, however, necessary to examine whether they are strong enough for the installation of equipment and machines, hoists, tanker bodies, etc.

Important notice
If MAN retaining brackets are supplied loose or fitted to the vehicle, the bodybuilder is still responsible for ensuring that the number and arrangement (existing frame drill holes) are correct or adequate for its particular body.

The retaining brackets on MAN vehicles have oblong holes running in the longitudinal direction of the vehicle (see Fig. 16-IV– Pos. 1). They compensate for any tolerances and in the case of flexible connections permit the inevitable longitudinal movement between the frame and the auxiliary frame or the frame and body.
To compensate for the width clearances, the retaining brackets of the auxiliary frame can also be provided with oblong holes, which must then be arranged crosswise to the longitudinal direction of the vehicle (see Fig. 16-IV – Pos. 2).

Fig. 16-IV: Retaining bracket with oblong holes



1) Retaining bracket on chassis frame
2) Retaining bracket on auxiliary frame

For a flexible joint the attachment points provided on the chassis are used first. If these are inadequate or unsuitable for design reasons, additional means of attachment must be provided at suitable points. If additional drill holes in the frame are required, the requirements set out in Chapter III, Section 1.3.3 must be observed.

2.6.2 Implementations of flexible body fasteners

As a basic principle, flexible body fasteners are fitted with bolt connections that are either fixed or flexible in the vertical direction. Flexible body fasteners are to be employed primarily in the area behind the cab. The connecting elements in the area of rear axle are to be implemented with fixed bolt connections. This calls for the use of thrust plates.

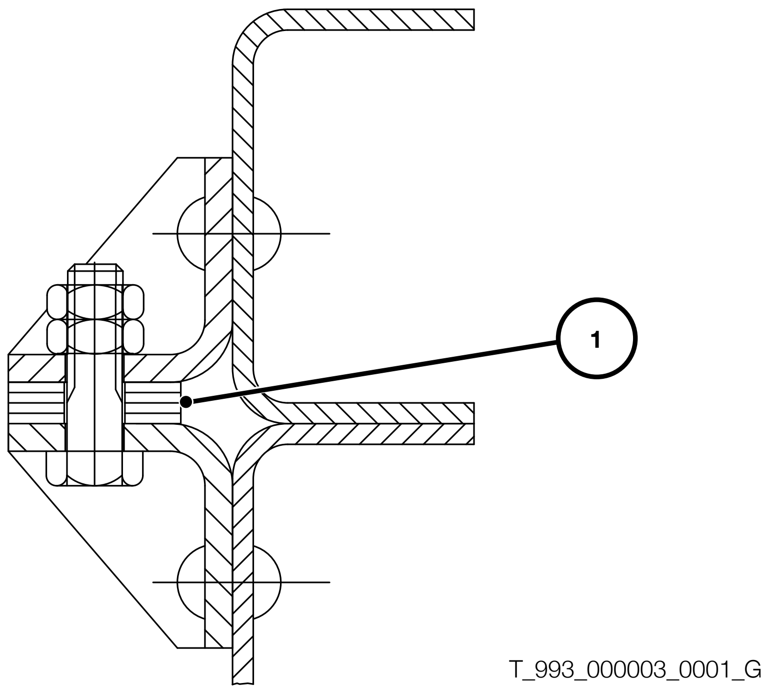
Implementations with fixed bolt connection

The following must be observed for flexible body fastening in the areas with fixed bolt connections. The different space between the retaining brackets of the frame and auxiliary frame shall be compensated by inserting shims of appropriate thickness (see Fig. 17-IV).

The shims must be of steel, grade S235JR (= St37-2) being sufficient. Avoid using more than four shims on any one attachment point (see Fig. 17-IV, Pos. 1).

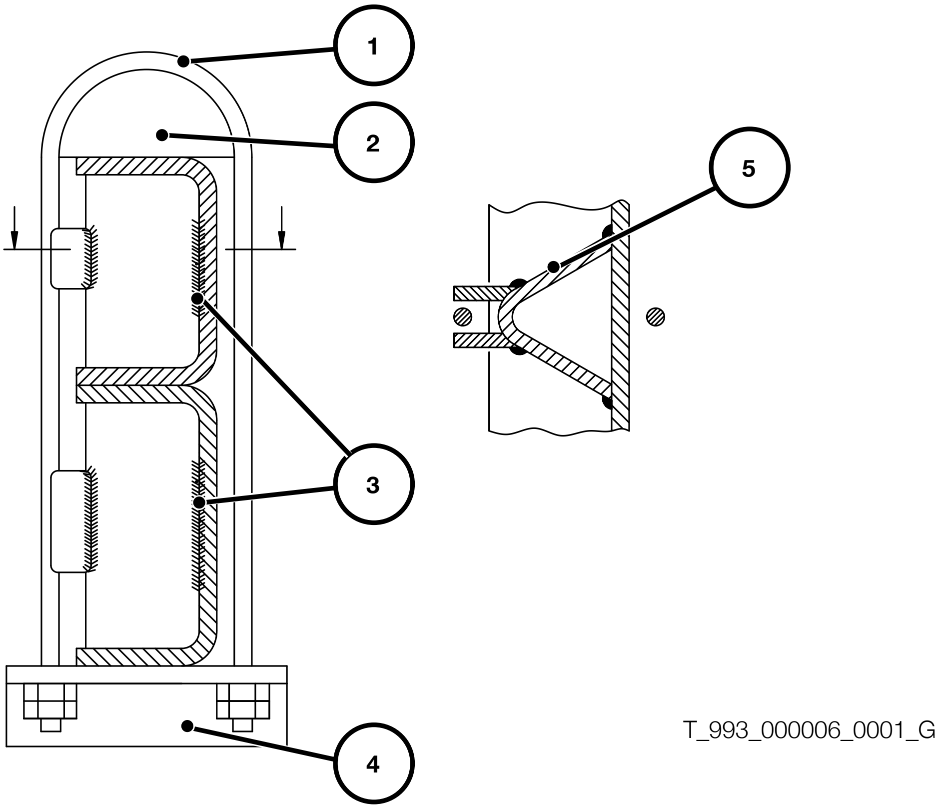
An air gap of max. 1 mm is permissible.

Fig. 17-IV: Shims between retaining brackets



For another example of a flexible connection, see Fig. 18-IV.

Fig. 18-IV: Shackle fastening



1) Shackle, strength 8.8
2) Spacer non-elastic
3) Attached on frame web only
4) Angular bracket or U-shaped bridging piece
5) Angle plate, approx. 5 mm thick, fitted

Vertically flexible implementations

The implementation of vertically flexible body fasteners depends in the first instance on the respective body. The torsional stiffness of the body plays a decisive role here. The following context applies.

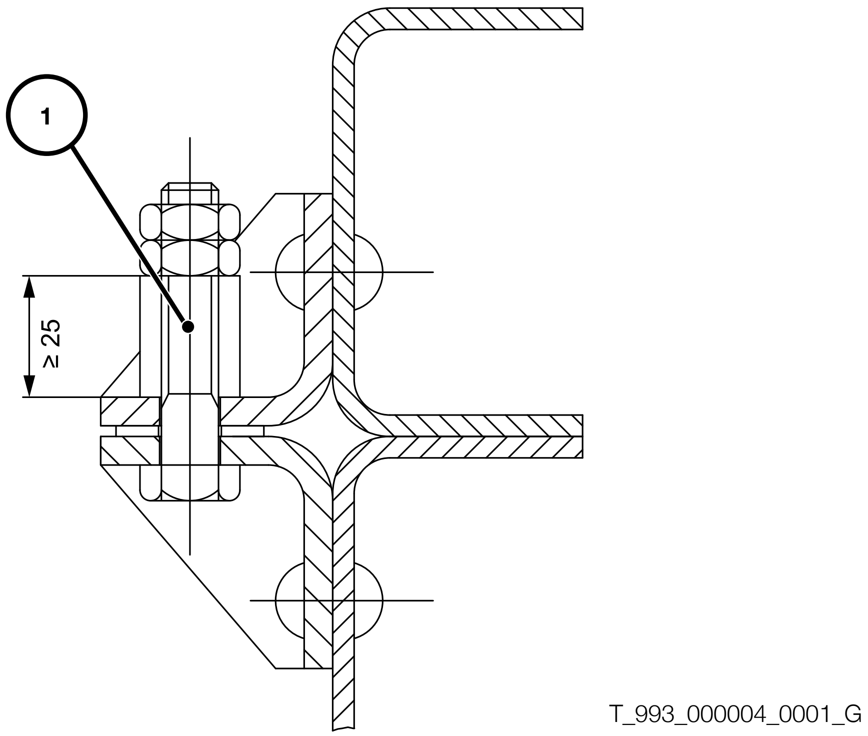
A) Torsionally flexible body --> the requisite flexibility of the connection in the vertical direction is low (e.g. open platform body)
B) Torsionally stiff body --> the requisite flexibility of the connection in the vertical direction is high (e.g. closed box body)

The flexibility of the connection in the vertical direction can be increased by using long bolts, springs or elastomers. This applies especially to the bolt connections of the first retaining brackets behind the cab because these are subject to high vertical loads.

A) Torsionally flexible body

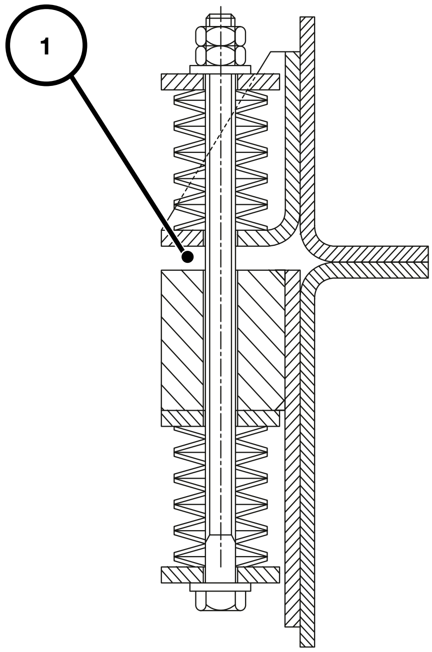
The implementation shown in Fig. 19-IV is suitable primarily for the area behind the cab in the case of torsionally flexible bodies.
For this reason, to allow more room for expansion for the front auxiliary-frame fasteners of flexibly connected auxiliary frames (for example long bolts with spacer sleeves (≥ 25 mm in length) are to be installed (see Fig. 19-IV – Pos. 1). This reduces the risk of them working loose because correspondingly longer bolts possess greater elastic elongation properties.
The outside diameter of the spacer sleeves should be the same as the width across the bolt head (across corners).

Fig. 19-IV: Increased elongation capacity through long bolts and spacer sleeves



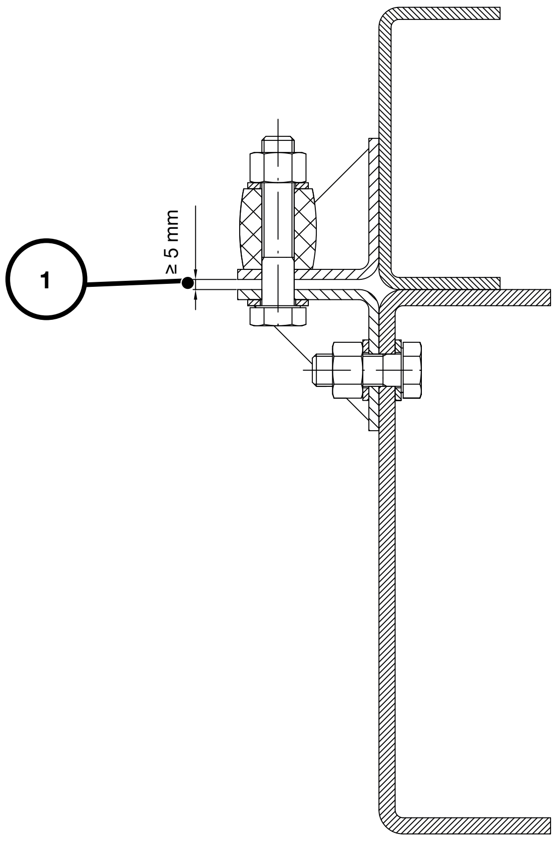
B) Torsionally stiff body
Fasteners as per Fig. 20-IV andFig. 21-IV are recommended for the area behind the cab in the case of torsionally stiff bodies. This type of fastener allows a limited and controlled raising of the body during frame torsion. A distance of at least 5 mm must be provided between the upper and lower fastening elements (see Fig. 20-IV Pos. 1 and Fig. 21-IV Pos. 1).

Fig. 20-IV: Long bolts and cup springs



T_993_000005_0001_G

Fig. 21-IV: Flexible fastener with elastomer



T_993_000037_0001_G

In this case, additional measures must be taken to support lateral (i.e. horizontal) forces.
This can be done in a number of different ways.
Examples are shown in Fig. 22-IV and Fig. 23-IV (see Pos. 1).

Fig. 22-IV: Flexible body fastener with guide plate

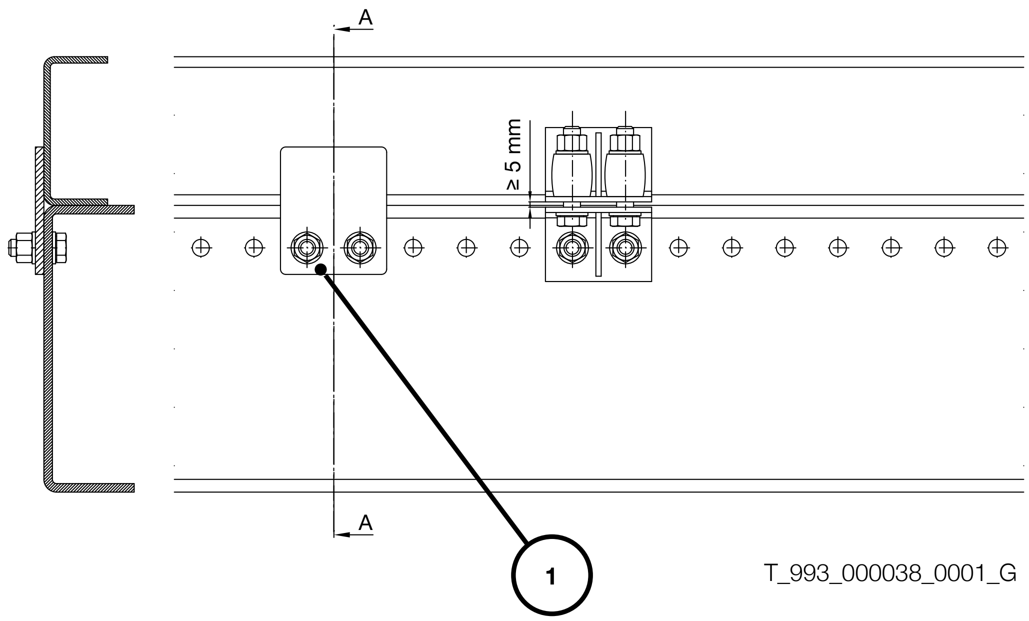
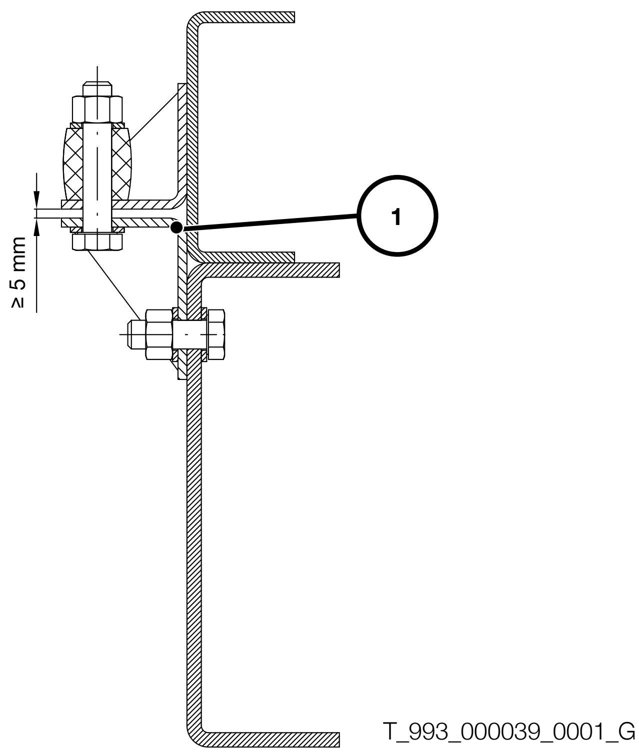


Fig. 23-IV: Flexible body fastener with projecting platform corner pieces



The support of lateral forces must be ensured by the measures described above in all types of operation conducted by the vehicle. For this reason it is especially important to harmonise the projection above the frame top edge with the maximum spring travel of the flexible body fastener.

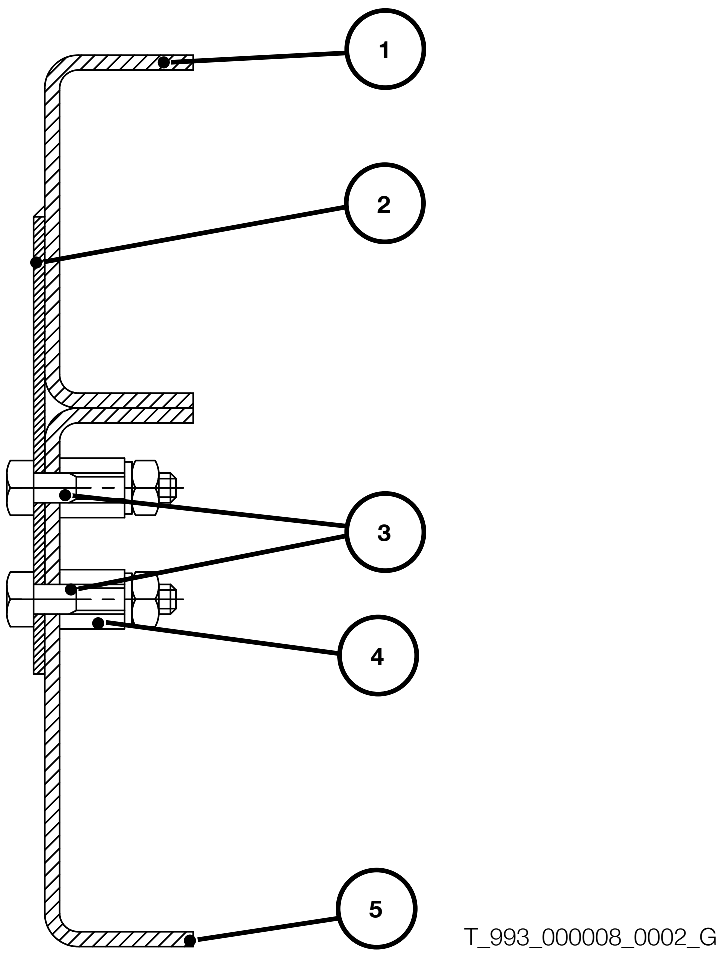
2.7 Rigid connection

With a rigid connection relative movement between the frame and auxiliary frame is no longer possible. The auxiliary frame consequently follows all movement of the frame. If the connection is completely rigid, frame and auxiliary frame profile in the vicinity of the rigid connection are regarded as a single profile for calculation purposes.

The use of thrust plates does not necessarily result in a rigid connection. Thrust-plate connections should be regarded as flexible should they not comply with the requirements of a rigid connection. Positive-locking connecting elements are by definition optimally rigid. Different types of positive-locking connecting elements can be employed (see Fig. 24-IV).
In order to establish a rigid connection, there are further possibilities (e.g. force/friction connection or other bolt connection). For this purpose, the bodybuilder must ensure by means of appropriate design that the connection made withstands all load that arise and prevents relative movement between the frame and the auxiliary frame.

Example of a rigid bolt connection with a headless bolt:
A rigid bolt connection can be achieved if a hole tolerance of ≤ 0.3 mm is observed in accordance with DIN 18800. If bolts with threads up to the head are employed, it must be ensured that the thread does not come into contact with the hole wall (avoidance of shear stress).

Fig. 24-IV: Example of thrust-plate assembly with headless bolt



1) Auxiliary frame
2) Thrust plate
3) Hole tolerance ≤ 0.3 mm
4) Spacer sleeves
5) Frame side member

Notes on thrust-plate design and connection:

Thrust plates can be of one piece on each side of the frame, but single ones are preferable.

The thickness of the thrust plate must be the same as the thickness of the frame web; a tolerance of +1 mm is permitted.

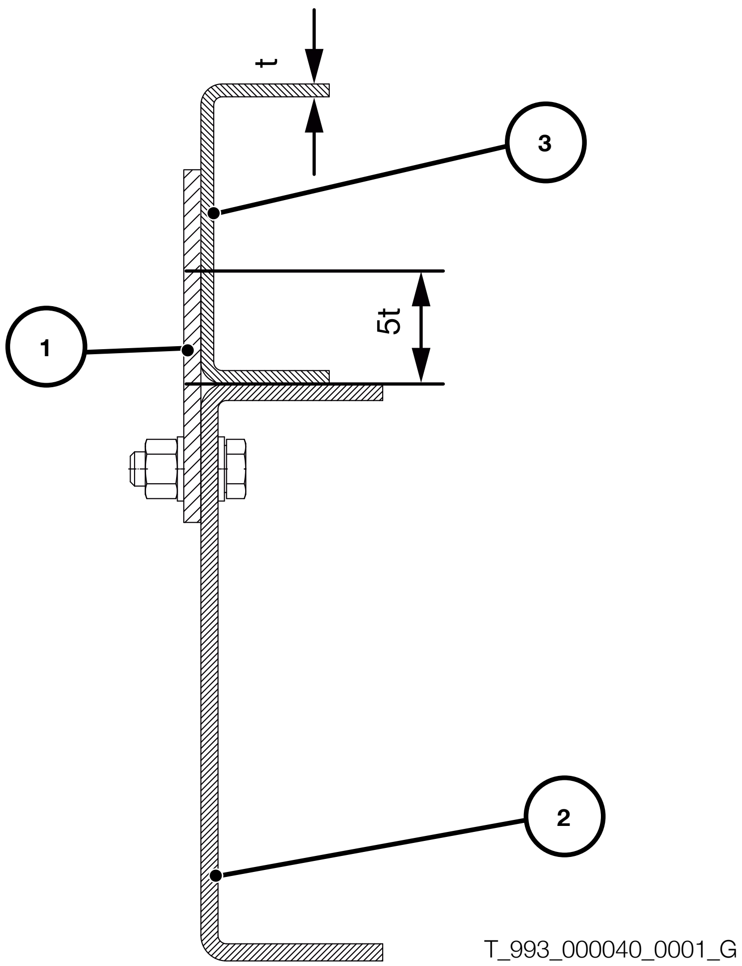
In order for the frame's ability to twist to be impaired as little as possible, thrust plates are to be located only where they are essential. The beginning, end and required length of a rigid connection can be calculated. The fastener is to be designed on the basis of this calculation. Flexible fasteners can be selected for the remaining attachment points outside the defined rigid area.

The thrust plates can either be bolted or welded onto the side of the auxiliary frame (for an example, see Fig. 26-IV). Welding onto the chassis frame is not permitted (cf. Chapter III, Section 1.3.2).

Notes on welding:

- Select position of the welding seams in order to avoid seam clusters.
- Do not set welding seams in highly stressed areas.
- When welding in cold-formed areas, the distance must comply with DIN 18800 (Fig. 25-IV).

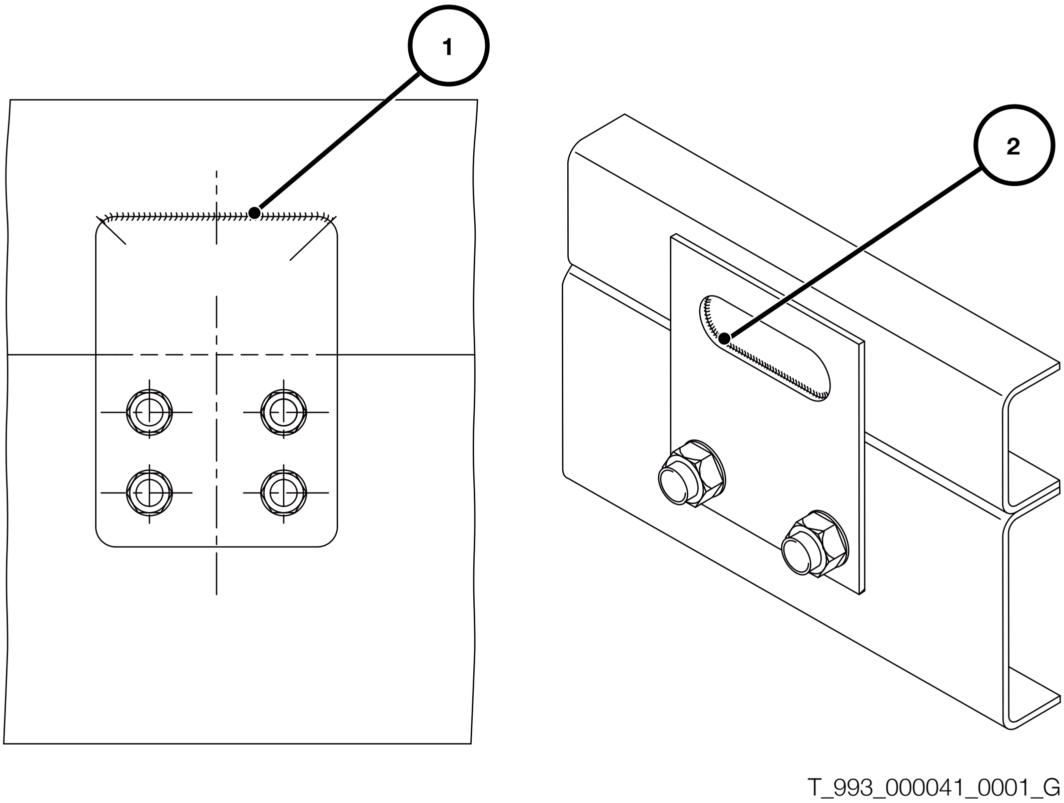
Fig. 25-IV: Welding distance in cold-formed areas



T_993_000040_0001_G

1) Thrust plate
2) Chassis frame
3) Auxiliary frame

Fig. 26-IV: Examples of thrust-plate welding options



1) Edge and angle fillet weld
2) Plug welding

3.0 Bodies

3.1 Semitrailer tractors

MAN offers different semitrailer tractor variants. These range from the standard semitrailer tractor to chassis especially developed for heavy-duty transport. Various fifth-wheel couplings and pick-up plates are also available.

3.1.1 Chassis and equipment

The fifth-wheel lead stated in the sales documents or chassis drawings is valid only for the standard vehicle. Items of equipment that affect the vehicle's dead weight or dimensions may necessitate a change in the fifth-wheel lead. This may in turn entail a change in the fifth-wheel load and the overall train length.

If a truck chassis is to be used as a semitrailer tractor or deployed optionally as a semitrailer tractor or a truck, please refer to Chapter III, Section 2.3.5.

3.1.2 Requirements for bodies

The general requirements for the design of bodies as stated in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be heeded.

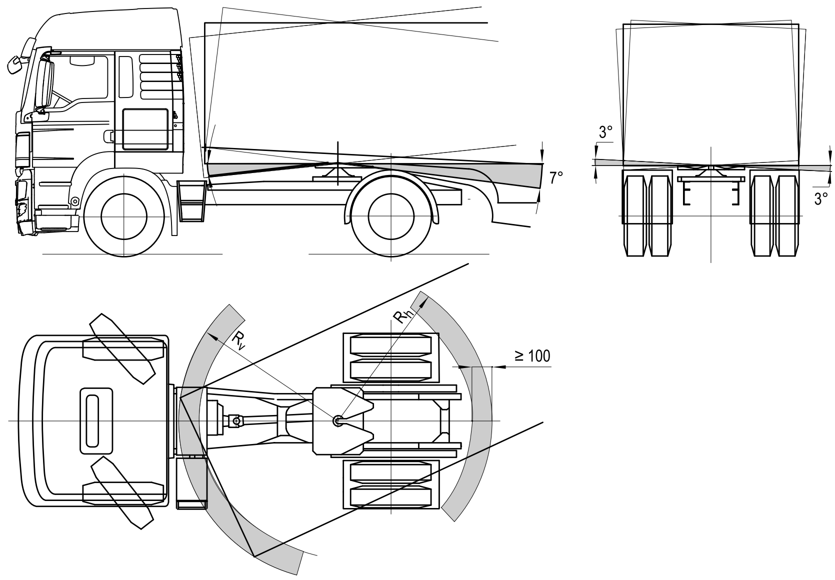
Important notice
The semitrailer and the semitrailer tractor together form a unit. Careful matching of weights and dimensions is therefore necessary so that overloading or damage can be ruled out.

The following points must therefore be checked:

- Slew radii
- Fifth-wheel height
- Fifth-wheel load
- Freedom of movement of all parts
- Statutory requirements.

The angles of inclination required by ISO 1726 are 6° towards the front, 7° towards the rear and 3° to the side. Different tyre sizes, spring rates or fifth-wheel heights between tractor and semitrailer may reduce these angles so much that they no longer meet the standard. Apart from the inclination of the semitrailer towards the rear its inclination to the side during cornering, the spring compression (axle location, brake cylinders, wheel caps), snow chains, swinging movement of a tandem axle unit (if present) and slew radii must also be taken into account (see Fig. 27-IV). The values for high-cube bodies with low semitrailer tractors may differ from those stated.

Fig. 27-IV: Dimensions on semitrailer tractors



T_995_000002_0001_G

If a fifth-wheel coupling is to be fitted, we recommend the following procedure before the vehicle is put into operation. This will ensure that the maximum possible fifth-wheel load is adhered to while the permissible and minimum axle loads are complied with. It will also guarantee the necessary clearance between semitrailer tractor and semitrailer and ensure that the statutory requirements are met:

- Weigh the vehicle
- Draw up an axle load calculation
- Determine the optimum fifth-wheel lead
- Check the front slew radius
- Check the rear slew radius
- Check the angle of inclination towards the front
- Check the angle of inclination towards the rear
- Check the overall length of the tractor-semitrailer combination
- Fit the fifth-wheel coupling accordingly.

Information
Only type-tested fifth-wheel couplings and mounting plates that meet EC directive 94/20/EC may be used.

The fifth-wheel coupling to be fitted depends on a number of factors. As with trailer couplings, the decisive factor is the D value. For the tractor-semitrailer combination the smaller D values of the kingpin, fifth-wheel coupling and mounting plate apply. The D value can be found on the respective type plates. The formulae for calculating the D value for semitrailer trains can be found in the booklet “Coupling devices TG”.

At permissible fifth-wheel load the plane of the pickup plate on the semitrailer should be parallel to the road. The height of the fifth-wheel coupling and/or mounting plate must be designed accordingly.

A fifth-wheel coupling must not be fitted without a subframe. Under certain circumstances so-called direct fitting of a fifth-wheel coupling is possible: here a fifth-wheel coupling is fitted to the subframe with special bearing mounts together with a reinforcement plate (not subject to type-testing), and no mounting plate is necessary. The subframe dimensions and the material quality used must be as stated in Chapter IV, Section 2.2.

The fifth-wheel coupling mounting plate must not rest on the frame main members but solely on the fifth-wheel subframe. Only bolts approved by MAN or by the manufacturer of the mounting plate may be used to fasten the mounting plate.

Information

When fitting fifth-wheel couplings and mounting plates, follow the instructions/guidelines of the manufacturer of the fifth-wheel coupling.

For semitrailer tractors with three axles which are fitted with a sliding fifth-wheel coupling, an additional cross support must be provided in the tractor subframe installed ex works.
This can be achieved by installing additional cross members. The cross members are available under item number 81.42720-5014 from the MAN spare part service. In this case, the number of cross members to be installed depends on the wheelbase of the vehicle.

Table 03-IV: Number of cross members to be installed

Wheelbase	Number of cross members
<= 3600 mm	2
> 3600 mm	3

The retrofitting of additional cross members is shown as an example in images Fig. 28-IV and Fig. 29-IV.
The bolt connection between the tractor subframe and the cross member must be completed as specified in Chapter III 1.3.3.

Fig. 28-IV: Variant with two cross members

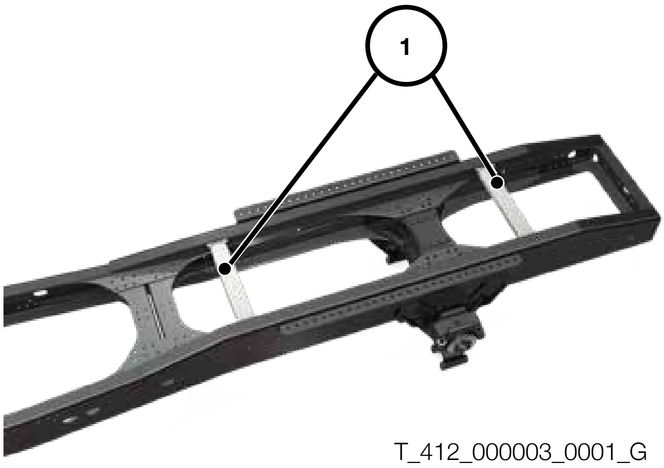
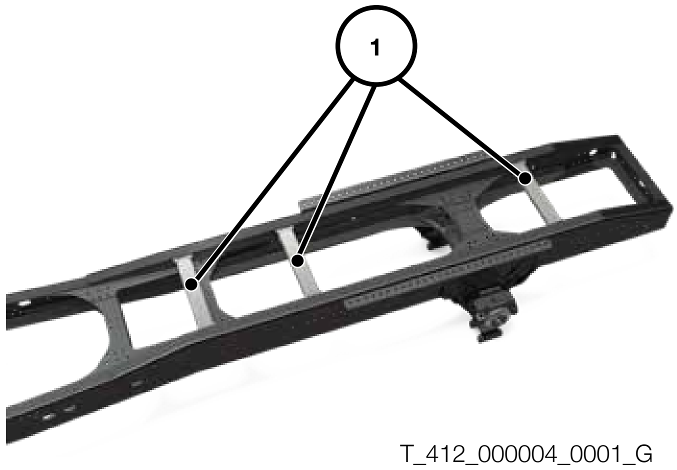


Fig. 29-IV: Variant with three cross members



1) Cross member 81.42720-5014

Alternatively, other cross braces may be installed such as closed fifth-wheel pick-up plates or diagonal cross braces (see chapter IV 2.2). The design of these must be comparable in terms of cross bracing to that of the additional cross members described above.

Connecting lines for the air supply, brakes, electrics and ABS must not chafe against the coupling or semitrailer or be trapped or caught during cornering. For this reason freedom of movement of all lines during cornering must be checked by the body manufacturer with the semitrailer. If the tractor is to be operated without a semitrailer, all lines must be securely fastened in dummy couplings (susies) or plugs. These connections must also be fitted so that the semitrailer can be hitched up and unhitched safely. If it is not possible to connect up air and electric connections from the road, a suitable working area and steps up to it must be provided.

3.2 Platform and box bodies

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

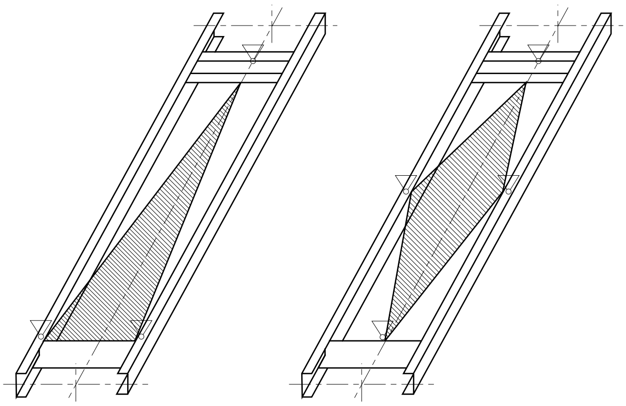
Requirements to be met by the body
The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

For even distribution of the load on the chassis the body is normally attached through a subframe.

Closed bodies such as a box body are designed torsionally stiff in relation to the chassis frame. To prevent the desired torsion of the frame, for example when cornering, from atng hindered by the body, the body should be fastened flexibly at the front and rigidly at the rear.

If the vehicle is to be capable of off-road operation, we recommend using a three-point or diamond-shaped mounting to fasten the body (see Fig. 30-IV).

Fig. 30-IV: Options for torsionally rigid bodies compared to flexible chassis with three-point and diamond-shaped mounting



T_995_000003_0001_G

When planning the body, special attention must be paid to the free movement of the wheels.
Additional space may be required for any of the following reasons, amongst others.

- Lowering of air suspension
- Fully compressed running-gear suspension
- axle twist
- Operation with snow chains
- Side tilt of the vehicle

Hinged vehicle sides may not contact the road surface even at full suspension compression.

Chapter IV, Section 3.9 “Loading canes“ must be observed when fitting retaining brackets for forklifts carried on the vehicle. They are to be treated as detachable loading cranes.

3.3 Swap body fittings

3.3.1 Chassis and equipment

The TGS and TGX model ranges include fully air-sprung chassis that can be delivered ex works with a rack for swap containers. Connection dimensions and centering mechanisms comply with the EN 284 standard. These chassis were developed especially for on-road operation.

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

3.3.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

Using MAN swap body fittings

Unrestricted use of MAN swap body fittings available ex works is not possible to fasten other types of bodies.

Subsequent modifications to MAN swap body fittings are not permitted.

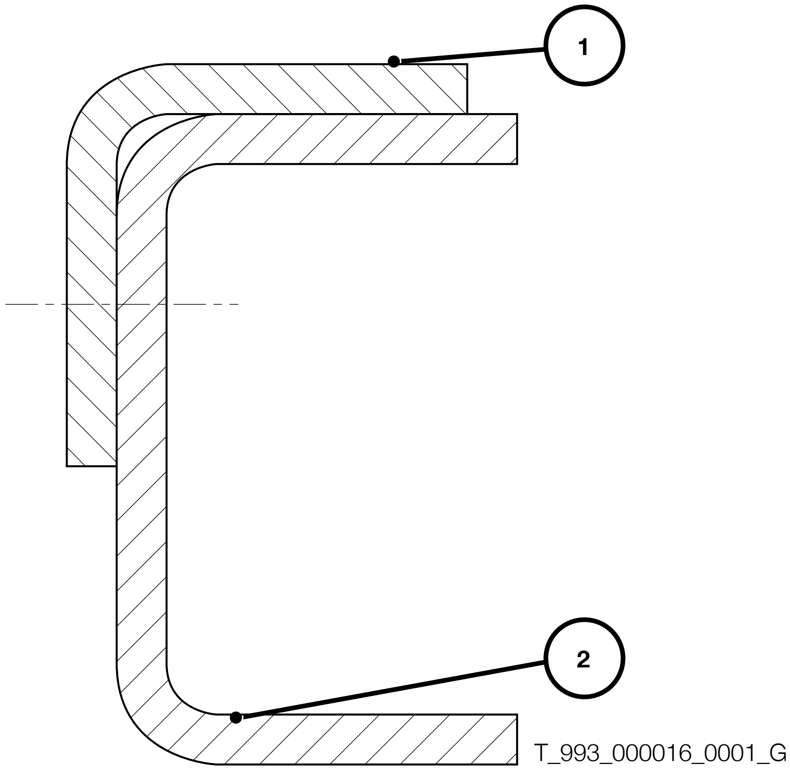
The center supports may not be dispensed with.

Technical drawings of the MAN swap body fittings can be obtained from MANTED (www.manted.de) in the "Swap body fittings" module.

Use of non-MAN swap body fittings
Swap bodies should rest on the entire length of the frame on the chassis frame. For this reason, a continuous auxiliary frame is recommended.

An auxiliary frame can be omitted if the requirements in Chapter IV, Section 2.3 are met. In this case, however, the frame side members (Fig. 31-IV – Pos. 2) are to be protected against wear (e.g. by means of an anti-wear profile as shown in Fig. 31-IV – Pos. 1).

Fig. 31-IV: Anti-wear profile with swap container



Materials with a yield point of ≤ 350 N/mm² may be used for the anti-wear profile. An anti-wear profile can only assume the function of an auxiliary frame when suitable materials are employed (see Chapter IV, Section 2.2) and the bodybuilder has verified its suitability by calculation.

The usual mountings for swap containers are provided specifically for swap-body mountings. If these mountings are to be used to fasten different types of bodies (e.g. transport concrete mixers, tippers, semitrailer bodies and so on), their suitability must be confirmed by the manufacturer or by the bodybuilder.

3.4 Liftgates

Before fitting a liftgate (or hydraulic loading platform, lifting loading tailgate, loading platform), compatibility with, the design of the vehicle, the chassis and the body must be checked.

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Sections 1.0 and 2.0 apply.

The fitting of a liftgate influences:

- Axle-load distribution
- Body and overall length
- Frame flexing
- Subframe flexing
- Type of connection between frame and auxiliary frame
- Vehicle electrical system (battery, alternator, cabling)

Prior to the assembly of a liftgate, the body builder must:

- Calculate the axle loads.
- Check compliance with the stipulated minimum front-axle load (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.6 “Minimum front-axle load”).
- Ensure that exceeding the permissible axle loads is precluded.
- Include nose weights in addition to the liftgate in vehicle design.
- If necessary, shorten the body length and rear overhang, or lengthen the wheelbase.
- Provide outriggers should they prove necessary for reasons of strength, rigidity or stability.
- Provide batteries of adequate capacity ≥ 175 Ah, preferably 225 Ah and sufficiently powerful alternator (at least 28 V/80 A, preferably 28 V/110 A); available as special equipment ex works.
- Install an electrical interface for the liftgate (available as special equipment ex works; circuit diagrams/pin-out Chapter III Section 8.3.2).
- Observe the country-specific regulations and laws.

Auxiliary-frame design and connection between frame and auxiliary frame

The auxiliary frame is to be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter IV Section 2.0.
It is the responsibility of the bodybuilder.

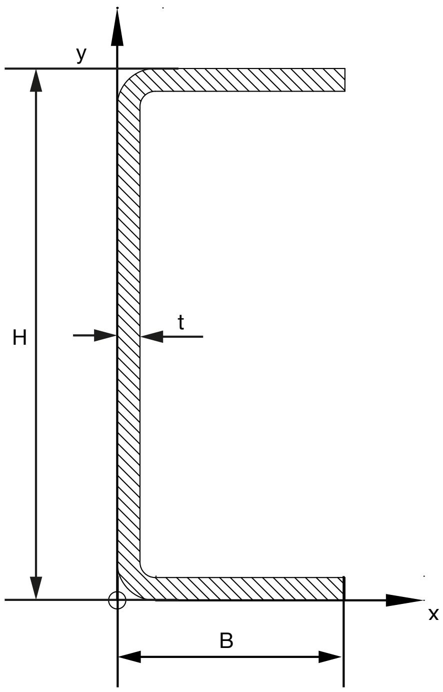
The final cross member on the chassis frame must be retained. If no final cross member is installed as standard, one must be retrofitted (obtainable from MAN Spare-parts Service). A liftgate may not be fitted without a final cross member.

The table below lists some auxiliary frame profiles This list (Table 04-IV) does not claim to be exhaustive, however. All information necessary for design must also be checked.
Other steel profiles are acceptable if they have at least equivalent values in respect of the moment of inertia I_x, moment of resistance W_x and yield point $\sigma_{0.2}$.
MAN does not accept profiles made from non-ferrous metals for the construction of auxiliary frames.

Table 04-IV: Technical data of subframe profiles

Profile	Height	Width	Thickness	I_x	W_x	$\sigma_{0,2}$	σ_B	Ground
U100/50/5	100 mm	50 mm	5 mm	136 cm^4	27 cm^3	355 N/mm^2	520 N/mm^2	7,2 kg/m
U100/60/6	100 mm	60 mm	6 mm	182 cm^4	36 cm^3	355 N/mm^2	520 N/mm^2	9,4 kg/m
U120/60/6	120 mm	60 mm	6 mm	281 cm^4	47 cm^3	355 N/mm^2	520 N/mm^2	10,4 kg/m
U140/60/6	140 mm	60 mm	6 mm	406 cm^4	58 cm^3	355 N/mm^2	520 N/mm^2	11,3 kg/m
U160/60/6	160 mm	60 mm	6 mm	561 cm^4	70 cm^3	355 N/mm^2	520 N/mm^2	12,3 kg/m
U160/70/7	160 mm	70 mm	7 mm	716 cm^4	90 cm^3	355 N/mm^2	520 N/mm^2	15,3 kg/m
U180/70/7	180 mm	70 mm	7 mm	951 cm^4	106 cm^3	355 N/mm^2	520 N/mm^2	16,3 kg/m

Fig. 32-IV: Coordinate system and dimensions of the auxiliary-frame profile



T_678_000001_0001_G

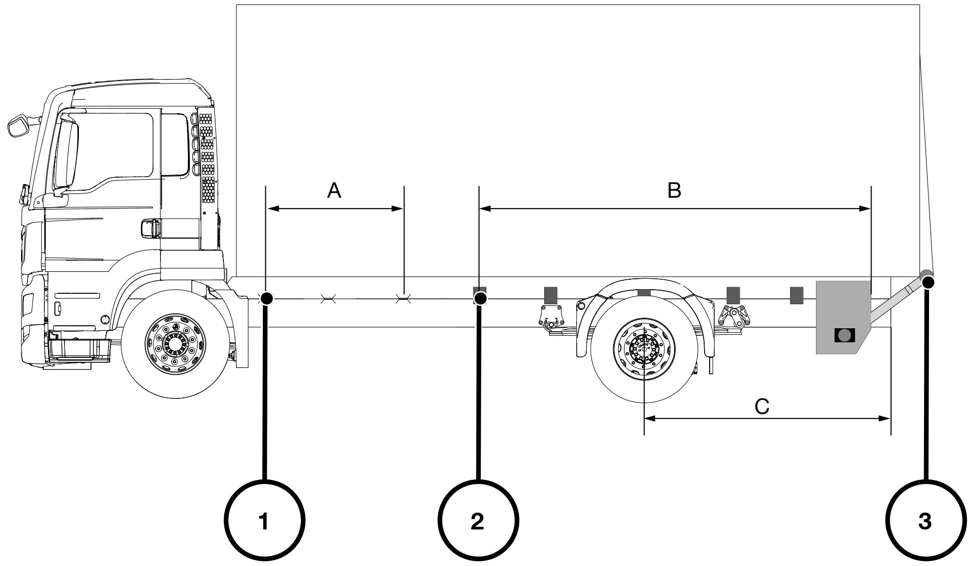
H) **Height** auxiliary-frame profile
B) **Width** auxiliary-frame profile
t) **Thickness** auxiliary-frame profile

In order to guarantee optimum power transmission to the vehicle chassis, the connection between the vehicle chassis and auxiliary frame must be implemented as a partly rigid connection. This means that the auxiliary frame must be rigidly connected in front of the rear axle of the vehicle up until the frame end (area B Fig. 33-IV).
The rigid connection must extend forwards at least to the front longitudinal control arm bracket of the rear axle (in the case of air suspension) or to the front spring bearing of the rear axle (in the case of leaf suspension) (Pos. 2, Fig. 33-IV). In the front area of the auxiliary frame behind the cab, the connection to the frame is to be implemented in a flexible manner (Area A, Fig. 33-IV). Chapter IV Sections 2.4 to 2.7 must be observed in this regard.
The specifications with regard to fastening the auxiliary frame apply to both two- and three-axle vehicles.

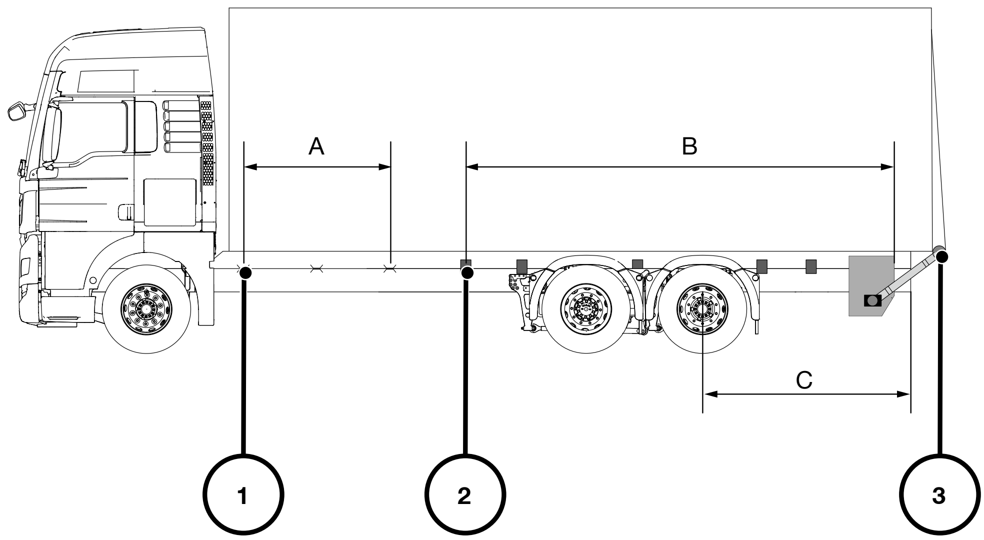
Information

The installation guidelines of the liftgate manufacturer must also be observed when assembling the liftgate attachment plates.

Fig. 33-IV: Example of liftgate installation on two- and three-axle vehicles



T_678_000002_0001_G



T_678_000003_0001_G

A) Flexible area
B) Rigid area due to thrust-plate arrangement
C) Frame overhang (distance from end of frame to center of rearmost axle)

1) Body attachment bracket
2) Thrust plate
3) Liftgate facility

Basic information on the use of the liftgate tables

The values in the tables are the benchmark values for which, due to strength/rigidity reasons, no outriggers are required. They are regarded as guideline values. MAN recommends compliance with the limit values in order to prevent damage to the frame and to ensure optimal utilisation of the vehicle.
The tables list some of the usual liftgate sizes in conjunction with usual vehicle models. If liftgates with bigger payloads are to be fitted they must be considered separately.
The liftgate tables are based on the optimal utilisation of a vehicle with regard to its permissible axle loads. Axle-load distribution is decisively affected by frame overhang and body length. The tables reference the series-production status (unladen weight, axle-load distribution) of the vehicles. The stated frame overhangs are calculated so that under the given boundary conditions, utilisation with regard to minimum front-axle load and permissible rear-axle load is nearly optimal.

The stated auxiliary frames to be used as a minimum have been tested with regard to the maximum permissible tension and permissible deflection.
Wheels protruding above the edge of the frame on some series-production vehicles when the rear axle is fully compressed have not been taken into consideration. To bridge the frame overhang and ensure smooth assembly of the body, in these cases an auxiliary frame profile of an adequate height must be selected (as opposed to what is stated in the liftgate tables).

If the values listed are not complied with, the bodybuilder bears responsibility for ensuring the permissible deflections and tension are complied with by an adequately dimensioned auxiliary frame.

Under certain circumstances, it may be necessary to modify the wheelbase or the rear frame overhang in order to comply with the permissible axle loads. The frame overhangs listed in the tables are not the frame overhangs available ex works as standard.
The values listed in the tables are not to be used in cases where the permissible frame overhang is exceeded by the planned body concept. The chassis frame and the auxiliary frame are to be separately dimensioned by the bodybuilder.

Operation of the liftgate on vehicles with leading or trailing axles is permitted only when the respective axle is lowered.

Table 05-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGS/TGX (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: 03S, 06S, 10S, 22S, 06X, 10X, 22X

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
3600	≤ 1000	M	1750	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1550	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	1700	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1500	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	M	1700	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1500	100x50x5
3900	≤ 1000	M	1950	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1750	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	1900	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1700	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	M	1850	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1650	100x50x5
4200	≤ 1000	M	2150	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1950	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	2100	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1900	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	M	2050	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1850	100x50x5
4500	≤ 1000	M	2350	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2150	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	2300	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2100	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	M	2250	100x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2050	100x50x5
4800	≤ 1000	M	2550	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2350	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	2500	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2300	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	M	2450	120x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2250	100x50x5
5100	≤ 1000	M	2700	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2550	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	2650	100x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2500	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	M	2600	140x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2450	100x60x6

Table 05-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGS/TGX (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: 03S, 06S, 10S, 22S, 06X, 10X, 22X

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
5500	≤ 1000	M	2950	100x50x5
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2800	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	2900	140x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2750	100x60x6
	≤ 2000	M	2850	160x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2700	140x60x6
5900	≤ 1000	M	3200	100x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3050	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	M	3150	160x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3000	140x60x6
	≤ 2000	M	3100	180x70x7
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2950	160x70x7
6300	≤ 1000	M	3450	120x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3300	100x60x6
	≤ 1500	M	3400	160x70x7
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3250	160x60x6
	≤ 2000	M	3000	180x70x7
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3000	180x70x7
6700	≤ 1000	M	3700	160x60x6
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3600	140x60x6
	≤ 1500	M	3400	180x70x7
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3550	180x70x7
	≤ 2000	M	3050	180x70x7
		L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3050	180x70x7

Example for using the liftgate table for two-axle TGS/TGX:

Vehicle model:	06S
Description of vehicle variant:	TGS 18.400 4x2 BL
Cab:	M
Wheelbase between first and second axles:	5100 mm
Standard frame overhang:	2900 mm
Liftgate payload:	1500 kg

From the table: Permissible frame overhang 2650 mm
Min. auxiliary frame profile 100x60x6 (Wx =36 cm³, I_x =182 cm⁴), semi-rigid connection to chassis frame; profiles with comparable technical specifications are also permissible.

Table 06-IV: Liftgate table for three-axle TGS/TGX (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: 18S, 21S, 35S, 71S, 74S, 89S, 18X, 21X, 89X

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Wheel base 2. and 3. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
3600	1350	≤ 1000	M	1800	100x50x5
		≤ 1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1550	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	M	1800	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1550	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	M	1750	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1500	100x50x5
3900	1350	≤ 1000	M	1850	100x50x5
		≤ 1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1550	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	M	1800	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1550	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	M	1800	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1550	100x50x5
4200	1350	≤ 1000	M	2050	100x50x5
		≤ 1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1800	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	M	2050	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1800	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	M	2000	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1750	100x50x5
4500	1350	≤ 1000	M	2300	100x50x5
		≤ 1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2000	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	M	2250	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1950	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	M	2200	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	1950	100x50x5
4800	1350	≤ 1000	M	2450	100x50x5
		≤ 1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2200	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	M	2450	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2150	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	M	2400	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2150	100x50x5
5100	1350	≤ 1000	M	2700	100x50x5
		≤ 1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2400	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	M	2650	100x50x5
		≤ 1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2400	100x50x5
		≤ 2000	M	2600	120x60x6
		≤ 2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2350	100x50x5

Table 06-IV: Liftgate table for three-axle TGS/TGX (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: 18S, 21S, 35S, 71S, 74S, 89S, 18X, 21X, 89X

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Wheel base 2. and 3. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
5500	1350	≤1000	M	3000	100x50x5
		≤1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2750	100x50x5
		≤1500	M	2950	120x60x6
		≤1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2700	100x50x5
		≤2000	M	2900	160x60x6
		≤2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2650	120x60x6
5900	1350	≤1000	M	3250	100x50x5
		≤1000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3050	100x50x5
		≤1500	M	3200	140x60x6
		≤1500	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	3000	120x60x6
		≤2000	M	3150	160x70x7
		≤2000	L / LX / XL / XLX / XXL	2950	160x60x6

Example for using the liftgate table for three-axle TGS/TGX:

Vehicle model:	21X
Description of vehicle variant:	TGX 26.440 6x2-2 LL
Cab:	XL
Wheelbase between first and second axles:	5500 mm
Wheelbase between second and third axles:	1350 mm
Standard frame overhang:	2400 mm
Liftgate payload:	2000 kg

From the table:

Permissible frame overhang 2650 mm
Min. auxiliary frame profile 120x60x6 (W_x =47 cm³, I_x =281 cm⁴), semi-rigid connection to chassis frame; profiles with comparable technical specifications are also permissible.

3.5 Tank and container bodies

Depending on the kind of goods transported, vehicles must be equipped by those responsible in line with national stipulations, directives, rules and regulations. In Germany, the hazardous materials/dangerous goods officers employed by technical monitoring bodies (e.g. DEKRA, TÜV) provide information about the transport of dangerous goods (in accordance with the currently applicable legal requirements).

3.5.1 Chassis and equipment

Due to the high centres of gravity exhibited by tank and container bodies, we recommend equipping chassis with the stabilisation packages available ex works for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity. These packages for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

With some bodies, it may be necessary to heat boxes or storage spaces. Tapping coolant from the cab heating circuit can provide heating in accordance with Chapter III Section 6.3.3.

Another option is to supply heat using a diesel-operated air heater. If the vehicle has only had a diesel-driven auxiliary heater installed ex works, then fuel can be supplied via the vehicle fuel tank. Chapter III, Section 5.5.2 “Changes to fuel lines” applies in this case. An additional fuel tank may otherwise be installed on the vehicle for the operation of the auxiliary heater. Chapter III, Section 5.5 “Fuel tanks” and the tank manufacturer specification apply in this case.

3.5.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

Tank and container bodies generally require a continuous auxiliary frame.

The joint between the body and chassis at the front must be such that the twisting ability of the frame is not affected. This can be achieved by front mountings that are as flexible as possible, e.g.

- Pendulum mounting (Fig. 34-IV)
- Elastic mounting (Fig. 35-IV)

Fig. 34-IV: Front pendulum mounting

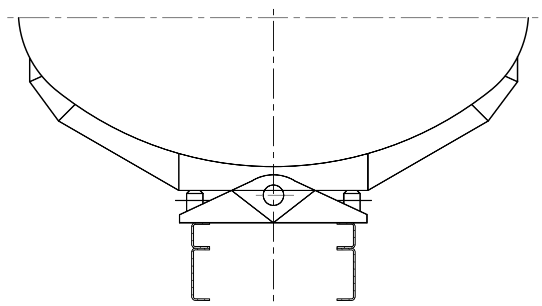
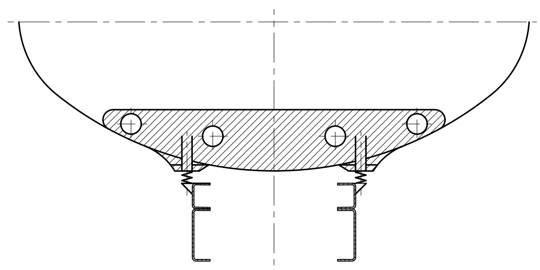


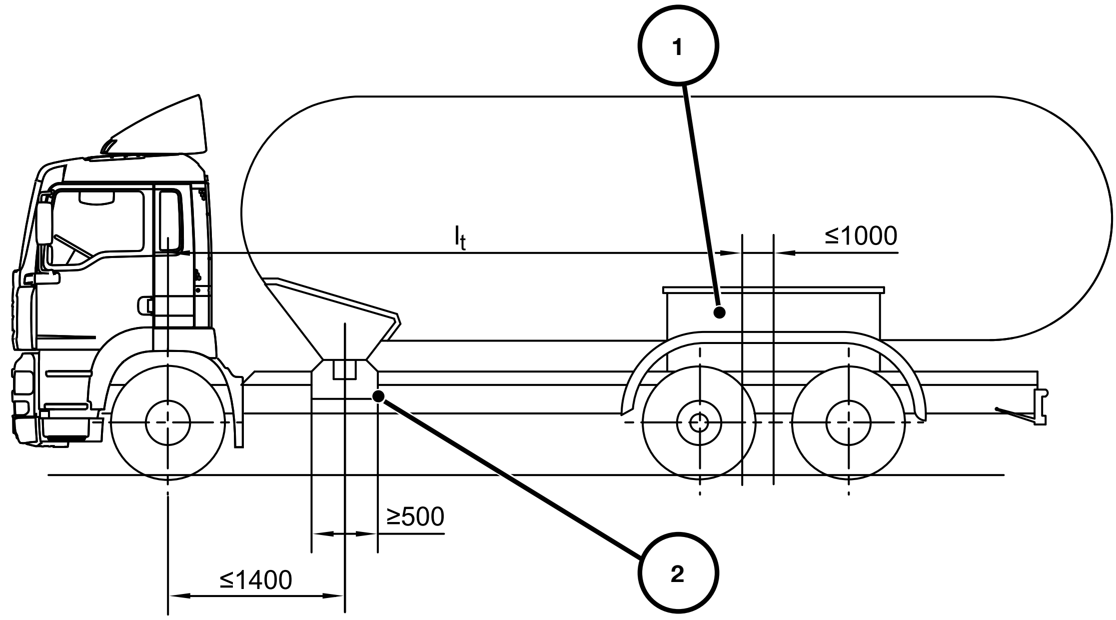
Fig. 35-IV: Front elastic mounting



T_995_000004_0001_G

The front mounting point should extend as close as possible to the front-axle centerline. A laterally rigid body support must be provided in the area of the theoretical rear-axle centerline (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.1). At this point also ensure an adequately scaled joint with the frame. The distance between the theoretical rear-axle centerline and the middle of the support must be ≤ 1000 mm (see Fig. 36-IV Pos. 1). The connection behind the cab must be realised in such a manner that frame torsion is impaired as little as possible (see Fig. 36-IV – Pos. 2).

Fig. 36-IV: Arrangement of tank and bulk container mounting



T_995_000005_0001_G

Tank and container bodies without auxiliary frame

The general requirements for bodies with no auxiliary frame as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.3 must be observed.

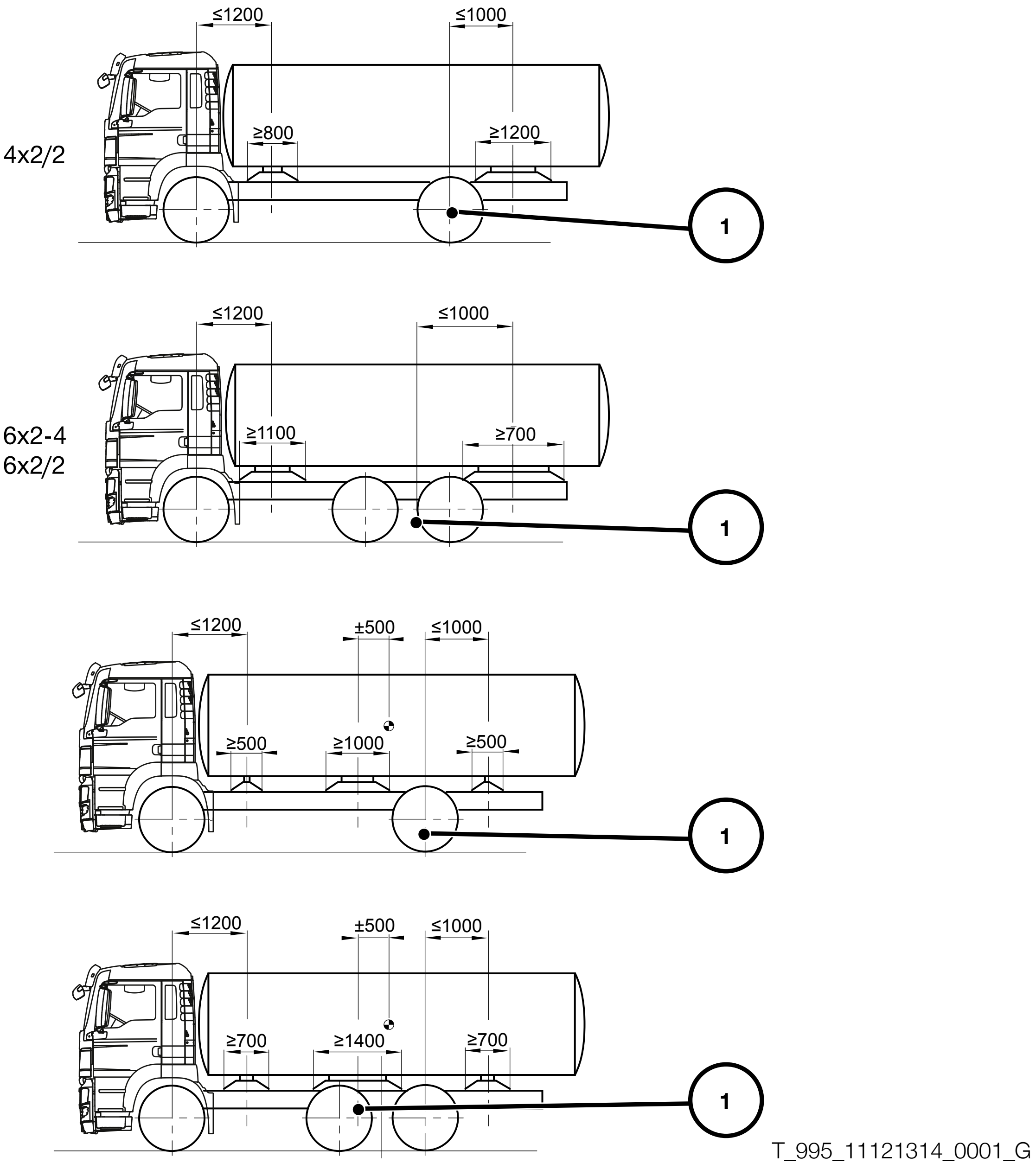
Tank and container bodies without auxiliary frames are permitted for the chassis listed in Table 07-IV.

In addition, it is mandatory to adhere to the number of mounting points and the dimensions shown in Fig. 37-IV. The dimensions for locating the tank mountings refer to the centerline of the first axle or the theoretical rear-axle centerline (see Fig. 37-IV – Pos. 1).

Table 07-IV: Chassis for tank bodies without auxiliary frame using the corresponding number of mounting points

<table>
<tr><th>Type</th><th>Wheel configuration</th><th>Suspension</th><th>Wheelbase</th></tr>
<tr><td>06S</td><td rowspan="4">4x2 4x4H</td><td rowspan="3">Leaf-air suspension</td><td rowspan="4">3.600-4.500</td></tr>
<tr><td>06X</td></tr>
<tr><td>22S
22X</td></tr>
<tr><td>10S
10X</td><td>Air suspension all round</td></tr>
<tr><td>18S</td><td rowspan="7">6x2-2
6x2-4
6x4H-2
6x4H-4
6x2-4</td><td rowspan="7">Leaf-air suspension</td><td rowspan="7">3.900-4.500
+ 1.350</td></tr>
<tr><td>18X, HV1</td></tr>
<tr><td>35S</td></tr>
<tr><td>35X</td></tr>
<tr><td>74S</td></tr>
<tr><td>89S</td></tr>
<tr><td>89X</td></tr>
<tr><td>21S</td><td rowspan="2"></td><td rowspan="2">Air suspension all round</td><td rowspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td>21X</td></tr>
<tr><td>42S</td><td rowspan="2">6x2/2
6x2/4
6x4H/2
6x4H/4</td><td rowspan="2">Leaf-air suspension</td><td rowspan="2">2.600-4.150
+ 1.350</td></tr>
<tr><td>42X</td></tr>
</table>

Fig. 37-IV: Tank mounting requirements for construction without an auxiliary frame



Should these dimensions be exceeded the frame may exhibit impermissibly high deflection and a continuous auxiliary frame can become necessary.

The stated conditions for bodies without an auxiliary frame apply exclusively to vehicles operated on paved roads.

After fitting the body be sure to check for vibration or other negative handling characteristics.
Vibration can be corrected by subframe design and arrangement of the tank mounting.

3.6 Refuse-collector body

Refuse-collector bodies can be realised as rear-loaders, side-loaders or front-loaders. In every case, the requirements to be met by chassis and body as well as the applicable standards and Directives (e.g. EN 1501) must be adhered to right from the concept phase.

3.6.1 Chassis and equipment

An MAN final cross member at the rear of the frame is mandatory for this type of body. If the frame overhang subsequently has to be shortened, Chapter III, Section 2.3.2 must be observed. The use of any other cross member at the end of the frame is not permitted.
If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

3.6.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

For refuse-collector bodies, continuous auxiliary frames are recommended. Bodies on multi-part auxiliary frames are possible.

Refuse-collector bodies with emptying systems (e.g. rear-loaders) require auxiliary frames with sufficient torsional and shear rigidity. This can be achieved by equipping the auxiliary frame with appropriate cross members, for example. In addition, the connection to the chassis frame at the rear is to be implemented over a large area, for example by means of thrust plates.

If further bodies such as loading cranes, for example, are added to the refuse-collector body, the relevant chapters in the guidelines must also be observed.

Refuse-collector vehicles are usually designed for operation on paved roads. This must be taken into account when selecting a chassis for applications on unpaved roads and reinforcement measures must be carried out.

3.7 Tippers

3.7.1 Chassis and equipment

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

To improve stability on vehicles with air suspension it must be ensured that the air suspension is lowered before commencing the tipping operation. Lowering can either be done manually via the ECAS control unit or it can be automatic using special equipment Sales Code 311PH (input of the ECAS parameters for air suspension lowering to 20 mm above the buffers).
Special equipment 311PH automatically lowers the vehicle to the defined level above the buffers if the power take-off is engaged when the vehicle is at a standstill. To ensure that the function provided by Sales Code 311PH is properly activated it is imperative that the correct order of operations is observed when engaging the power take-off (see operating instructions). A check must also be carried out to ensure that the message “No ride height” appears on the display and that the vehicle has actually lowered.
If an automatic lowering system is not fitted then the user/driver must be informed of the requirement to manually lower the air suspension.

If tipper bodies are fitted to chassis not intended for tipper bodies ex works, these chassis must be equipped for operation as tippers. This may result in the replacement of leaf springs or stabilisers, for example. In such cases, approval must be obtained from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

3.7.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

Tipper bodies require a chassis designed for their special purpose. MAN has corresponding chassis in its range, which can be found at MANTED (www.manted.de).
Factory-built tipper chassis require no additional work if it is ensured that the following points are observed.

- The permissible gross weight
- The permissible axle loads
- The standard tipper body length
- The standard frame overhang
- The standard vehicle overhang
- The maximum tipping angle of ≤ 50° to the rear or side

All tipper bodies requires a continuous auxiliary frame made from steel (see Chapter IV, Section 2.2).

Tipping operations may lead to increased torsional loads on the chassis frame and the auxiliary frame. Because of these loads, the auxiliary frame must be implemented with sufficient torsional stiffness. The torsional stiffness of an auxiliary frame can be increased by fitting a diagonal strut, for example, (see Chapter IV, Section 3.9.3).

Tipper rams and tipper mountings must be incorporated into the auxiliary frame.

The following design parameters must be observed.

- Tipping angle to the rear or side ≤ 50°
- During tipping to the rear, the center of gravity of the tipper body with payload may only move behind the centerline of the rearmost axle when the stability of the vehicle is ensured (see Fig. 38-IV– Pos. 1).
- The center of gravity (see Fig. 38-IV – Pos. 2) of the cargo has a great influence on the stability of the vehicle during tipping. A high center of gravity can have adverse effects on stability even when the vehicle is only slightly tilted. When checking the stability of the vehicle, the body builder must therefore pay attention to the possible center of gravity of the cargo during tipping. Special attention must be paid to heavy bulk goods, for example.

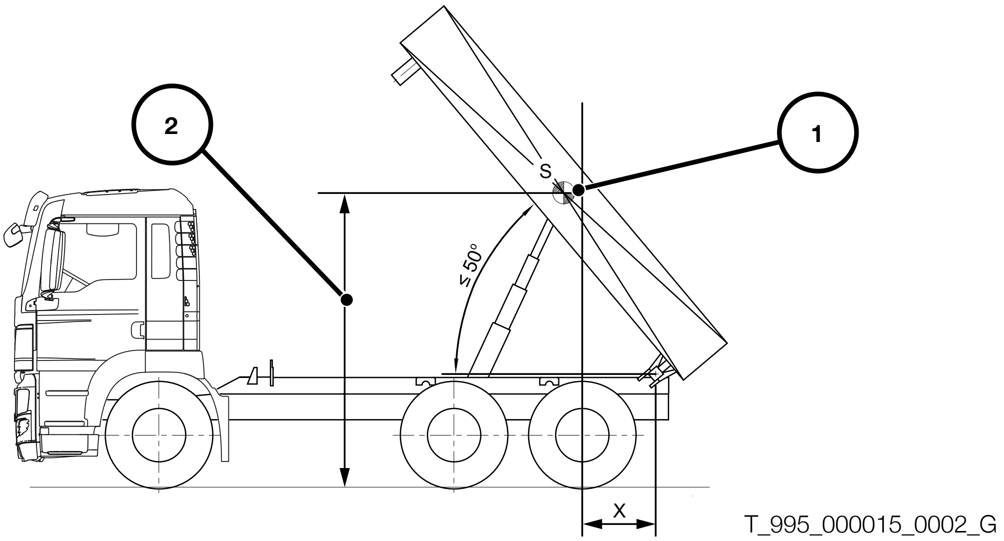
We recommend the following:

- The rear tipper mounting is to be located as close as possible to the rearmost axle (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.1) - Dimension “x”, see Table 08-IV and Fig. 38-IV).

Table 08-IV: Tipper: Maximum tipper-mounting distance

Chassis	Dimension x [mm]
Two axles	≤ 1200
Three- and four-axle vehicles	≤ 800

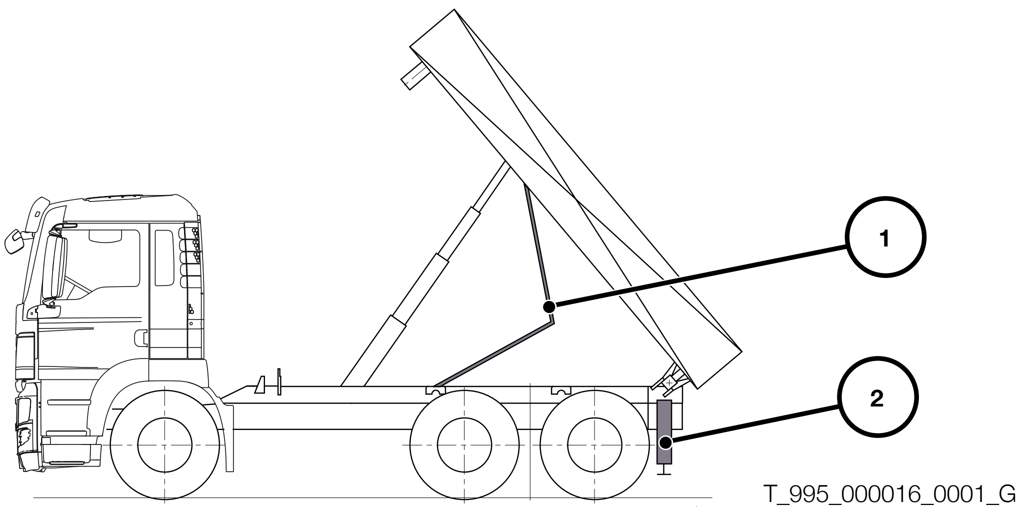
Fig. 38-IV: Tipper: Recommended dimension for tipper bodies



1) Center of gravity of tipper body
2) Height of center of gravity

For reasons of operating safety or operating conditions or in cases where the stated values are exceeded, supplementary measures may be required. For example, the use of hydraulic outriggers to improve stability or the relocation of certain units may be necessary. However, it is assumed that the bodybuilder itself will recognise the necessity for and take such measures.
Under certain circumstances, so-called “scissors” (see Fig. 39-IV – Pos. 1) fitted to rear dumpers for stabilisation of the tipper body in order to enhance stability and operational safety and/or a support at the end of the frame may be necessary (see Fig. 39-IV – Pos. 2).

Fig. 39-IV: Rear dumper with scissors and support



Important notice

Vehicles complying with the Euro 6 emission standard must be fitted with spacers on the vehicle side of the exhaust silencer. There would otherwise be a collision with components on the exhaust silencer when opening the drop-side panels.

Bodybuilders must provide supports for bodies capable of tipping in order to protect workers in the event of repairs having to be carried out beneath the tipped body.

3.8 Set-down and roll-off skip loaders

Chassis and equipment

Due to the high position of centre of gravity exhibited by transported containers, we recommend equipping chassis with the stabilisation packages available ex works for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity. These packages for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

MAN retaining brackets are designed for fastening loading platforms and box bodies. For this reason, they are not suitable for fastening set-down and roll-off skip loaders.

To improve stability on vehicles with air suspension it must be ensured that the air suspension is lowered before commencing the tipping operation. Lowering can either be done manually via the ECAS control unit or it can be automatic using special equipment Sales Code 311PH (input of the ECAS parameters for air suspension lowering to 20 mm above the buffers).
Special equipment 311PH automatically lowers the vehicle to the defined level above the buffers if the power take-off is engaged when the vehicle is at a standstill. To ensure that the function provided by Sales Code 311PH is properly activated it is imperative that the correct order of operations is observed when engaging the power take-off (see operating instructions). A check must also be carried out to ensure that the message “No ride height” appears on the display and that the vehicle has actually lowered.
If an automatic lowering system is not fitted then the user/driver must be informed of the requirement to manually lower the air suspension.

Requirements to be met by the body
The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

For these types of body, the design often means that the auxiliary frames cannot follow the contour of the main frame and special connections to the main frame must therefore be provided. Information regarding proven fasteners together with their design and fitting is available in the manufacturers’ installation instructions on bodies.

Due to the low substructure heights, the clearance of all moving parts attached to the chassis (such as brake cylinders, gearbox shift components, axle-guide components and so on) and the body (such as hydraulic cylinders, pipes, tipper frame and so on) must be checked and ensured. A reinforcing frame may need to be fitted. Modifications to the driving height or restrictions to the spring travel are not permitted. MAN offers special equipment that can reduce the axle-guide components protruding beyond the top edge of the frame.
Please refer to Chapter III Section 7.3 for further information.

When loading and unloading, outriggers are required at the end of the vehicle if:

- The rear-axle load is more than twice the technically permissible rear-axle load. Here, the tyre and rim load capacity must also be taken into account.
- The front axle loses contact with the ground. For safety reasons, lifting of this kind is strictly forbidden!
- The stability of the vehicle is not ensured. This can result from a high center of gravity, an impermissible side tilt when suspension compression occurs on one side, if the vehicle sinks into soft ground on one side, etc.

3.9 Loading crane

Loading cranes on truck chassis are usually fitted behind the cab or at the rear end of the vehicle. In addition, truck chassis are also employed as carrier vehicles for jib cranes.
Crane bodies place great demands on truck chassis and thus necessitate meticulous coordination of body and chassis.

Information

Approval of body
Approval for a crane body will be required if the framework set by these body guidelines is exceeded.

This applies to:

- Body specifications do not permit compliance with the requirements of body and auxiliary-frame design (see Chapter IV, Sections 2.0 and 3.9.3).
- The given maximum total crane moment as per Fig. 42-IV is exceeded (see Chapter IV, Sections 3.9.3).
- Four outriggers
- Special outriggers are fitted.

Acceptance of cranes
A crane body and its working are to be examined before the crane first goes into use in line with national specifications by a crane specialist or another person authorized to examine crane structures.

Warning notice

Responsibility for ensuring stability lies with the bodybuilder.

3.9.1 Chassis and equipment

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly.
The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

Crane bodies on chassis/semitrailer tractors with frame-profile no. 34 (see Chapter III, Section 4.3) are not permitted (model code nos.: 08S, 49S, 49W).

Reinforced axle equipment
Depending on the size of the crane (weight and centre of gravity) and its position (behind the cab or at the rear), vehicles must be fitted with reinforced springs where available. These measures will prevent the chassis from adopting a lopsided position (such as due to reduced compression of the reinforced springs).

Nevertheless, it is not always possible to avoid some lopsidedness on a crane body because of the shift in a vehicle's centre of gravity.

Important notice

The body retaining brackets delivered ex works are not suitable for crane bodies.

Supporting vehicles
Chapter IV, Section 1.6 must in addition be observed with regard to vehicles with outriggers.

Prepared loading crane tippers

At MAN, it is possible to order tippers with a preparation for subsequent loading crane installation ex-works.

The preparation includes:

- Vehicle equipment for tippers
- Relocation of exhaust silencer to rear (space for support legs)
- Continuous auxiliary frame for crane and tipper
- Clearance for loading crane behind cab

The dimensions for the crane installation space and the maximum permitted gross crane torque (see Chapter IV. 3.9.3 Requirements for the auxiliary frame for loading crane bodies) are therefore already predefined.
The body manufacturer must check whether the crane meets the specified conditions.
If the maximum permitted gross crane torque is exceeded, the body manufacturer must take suitable measures to reinforce the auxiliary frame.
The body manufacturer must also ensure that the permitted axle loads are observed with crane and uniform loading.

Table 09-IV:

Type	Vehicle	Code	Tipper body	Available clearance*	Maximum permitted gross crane torque
03S / 06S / 22S / 52S / 80S	18.XXX 4x2 / 4x4 / 4x4H BB / BL 3900 M-Fhs	485DE	4000 x 2420 x 600	1040 mm	175 kNm
03S / 06S / 22S / 52S / 80S	18.XXX 4x2 / 4x4 / 4x4H BB / BL 3900 M-Fhs	485DC	4200 x 2420 x 600	990 mm	175 kNm

*Area kept free for loading crane between cab and tipper body. Dimension applies only above the auxiliary frame.

3.9.2 Requirements to be met by the body

General
The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

The empty weight and total moment of a loading crane must be matched to the chassis on which it will be fitted.

Axle loads
The maximum permissible axle load during crane operation (with the vehicle stationary) must not be more than twice the technically permissible axle load. The impact coefficient provided by the crane manufacturer must be factored in.

The pivoting range of the crane must be limited if this is required to maintain the permissible axle loads or to ensure stability.

Asymmetric installation of a crane is not permissible if uneven wheel loads arise as a result (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.6). The bodybuilder must ensure adequate compensation.

Support and stability
Amongst other characteristics, the torsional stiffness of the entire frame connection is responsible for stability. Note here that high torsional stiffness of the frame structure reduces the driving comfort and offroad capability of the vehicle.

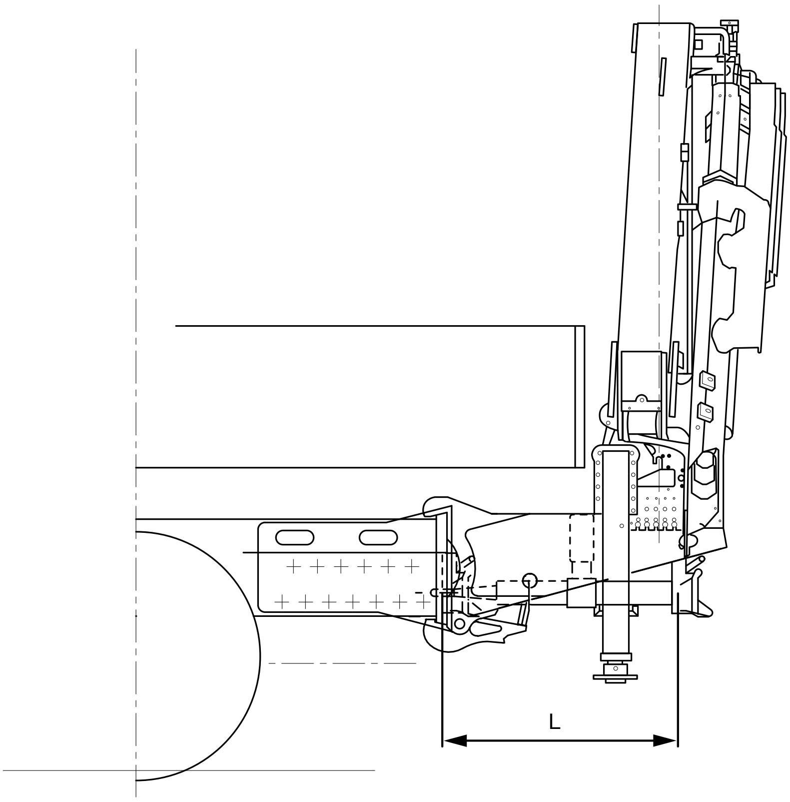
The number of outriggers and their positions and distance apart is to be determined by the crane manufacturer on the basis of the stability calculation and vehicle load. For technical reasons MAN may require four outriggers. During operation of the crane the outriggers must always be extended level with the ground. They must be repositioned appropriately for loading and unloading. The crane producer must also detail any ballast required to ensure stability.

Particularities concerning detachable rear loading cranes
With the crane coupled while working without a trailer, the coupling device must be fitted with underride protection and the statutorily required lighting equipment.

A second trailer coupling is to be installed on the retaining brackets for detachable rear loading cranes if the vehicle is to be operated with a trailer. This trailer coupling is connected to the one fitted on the vehicle by means of a towing eye. The instructions in the “Coupling devices TG” booklet are to be observed.
The coupling device and the body must be able to properly absorb the forces created when working with a trailer.

In trailer operation, the overall length is increased by the distance between the two trailer couplings (dimension L, see Fig. 40-IV).

Fig. 40-IV: Coupling device for rear loading crane



T_995_000008_0001_G

The extra overhang length caused by the coupling device must be considered.

The centre of gravity of the payload shifts depending on whether a crane is coupled or not. To achieve the largest possible payload without exceeding permissible axle loads, we recommend clearly marking the centre of gravity of the payload, with and without a crane, on the body.

3.9.3 Requirements to be met by auxiliary frames for loading cranes

General
The body or crane manufacturer must provide a sufficiently robust mounting for crane and auxiliary frame. Operating forces including safety coefficients must be supported reliably.

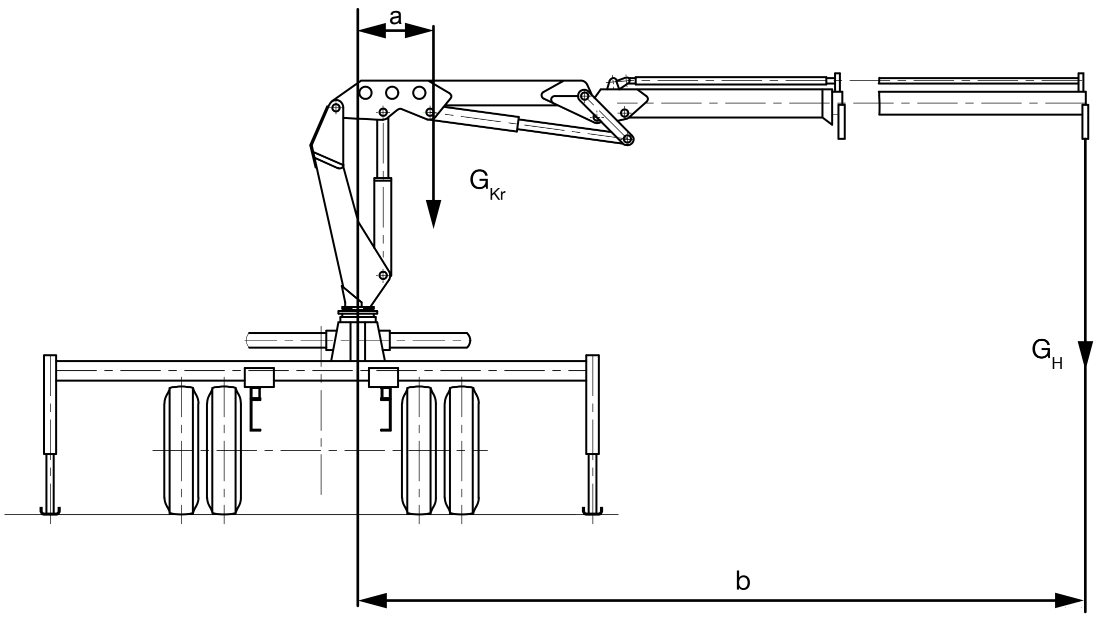
For crane bodies, an auxiliary frame side member with a second moment of area of at least 175 cm^4 must be used.

If a crane is fitted whose maximum total torque requires an additional front support, Chapter III section 5.7.2 specifies contrary to Chapter IV section 2.2.3 that the auxiliary frame of the body must begin directly behind the cab mount:

- with M cab approx. 330 mm from the centre of the front axle,
- with L, LX, XLX, XL, XXL cab approx. 550 mm behind the centre of the front axle

Crane total moment
Calculation is based on the maximum total moment and not the lifting moment. The total moment results from the empty weight and the lifting force of the loading crane with the crane arm extended. Calculation of the total crane moment, see Formula 02-IV below.

Fig. 41-IV: Moments on loading crane



Formula 02-IV: Total moment of loading crane

$$M_{Kr} = \frac{g \cdot s \cdot (G_{Kr} \cdot a + G_H \cdot b)}{1000}$$

Where:

a	=	distance of crane center of gravity from center of crane pillar [m], crane arm extended to maximum length
b	=	distance of maximum lifting load from center of crane pillar [m], crane arm extended to maximum length
G_H	=	lifting load of the loading crane in [kg]
G_{KR}	=	weight of the loading crane in [kg]
M_{Kr}	=	total moment in [kNm]
s	=	impact coefficient acc. to crane producer (dependent on crane control), always ≥ 1
g	=	acceleration due to gravity 9.81 [m/s^2]

Auxiliary frame installation
Loading crane bodies are only permitted with a continuous auxiliary frame.
When installing the loading crane behind the cab, the auxiliary frame must be closed at least in the crane area to the box.

If the loading crane is installed at the rear, a closed profile must be used from the end of the frame to at least a point forward of the front-most rear axle guide member. In addition, to increase the torsional stiffness of the auxiliary frame, a cross strut or an equivalent structure must be fitted (see also Chapter IV Section 2.2).

Loading cranes are frequently installed with various types of body, for which an auxiliary frame is also required (e.g. on tippers). In such cases, the auxiliary frame is usually divided into several auxiliary-frame regions. Variations in rigidity in the transitions from one region to another are to be avoided. If a continuous auxiliary-frame profile is to be used, the auxiliary frame with the greater strength and rigidity must be used for the entire body structure.

To ensure stability while a crane is operating the subframe in the region between the two outrigger members must exhibit adequate torsional stiffness. For strength reasons, lifting the vehicle on the outriggers is permissible only if the auxiliary-frame structure absorbs all the forces resulting from the operation of the crane and provided its connection to the chassis frame is not rigid (e.g. truck cranes).

To protect the auxiliary frame we recommend fitting an additional upper flange (anti-wear plate) to prevent the base of the crane from wearing into the auxiliary frame. This additional top flange should be 8-10 mm thick depending on the size of the crane.

Simplified auxiliary-frame design
The method and correlation between crane total moment and geometrical moment of inertia - dependent on the chassis frame - applies to crane structures behind the cab and to crane structures on the frame end with two outriggers. Safety coefficients have already been taken into account. The crane total moment M_{Kr} must be factored in along with the impact coefficient supplied by the crane manufacturer (see Formula 02-IV).

The necessary planar moments of inertia relate only to a subframe longitudinal member.

The freedom of movement of all moving parts is not taken into consideration here; it must therefore be re-checked when the dimensions have been selected

A diagram of total crane moment and geometrical moment of inertia for the frame profiles of TGS/TGX models is shown below (Fig. 42-IV).

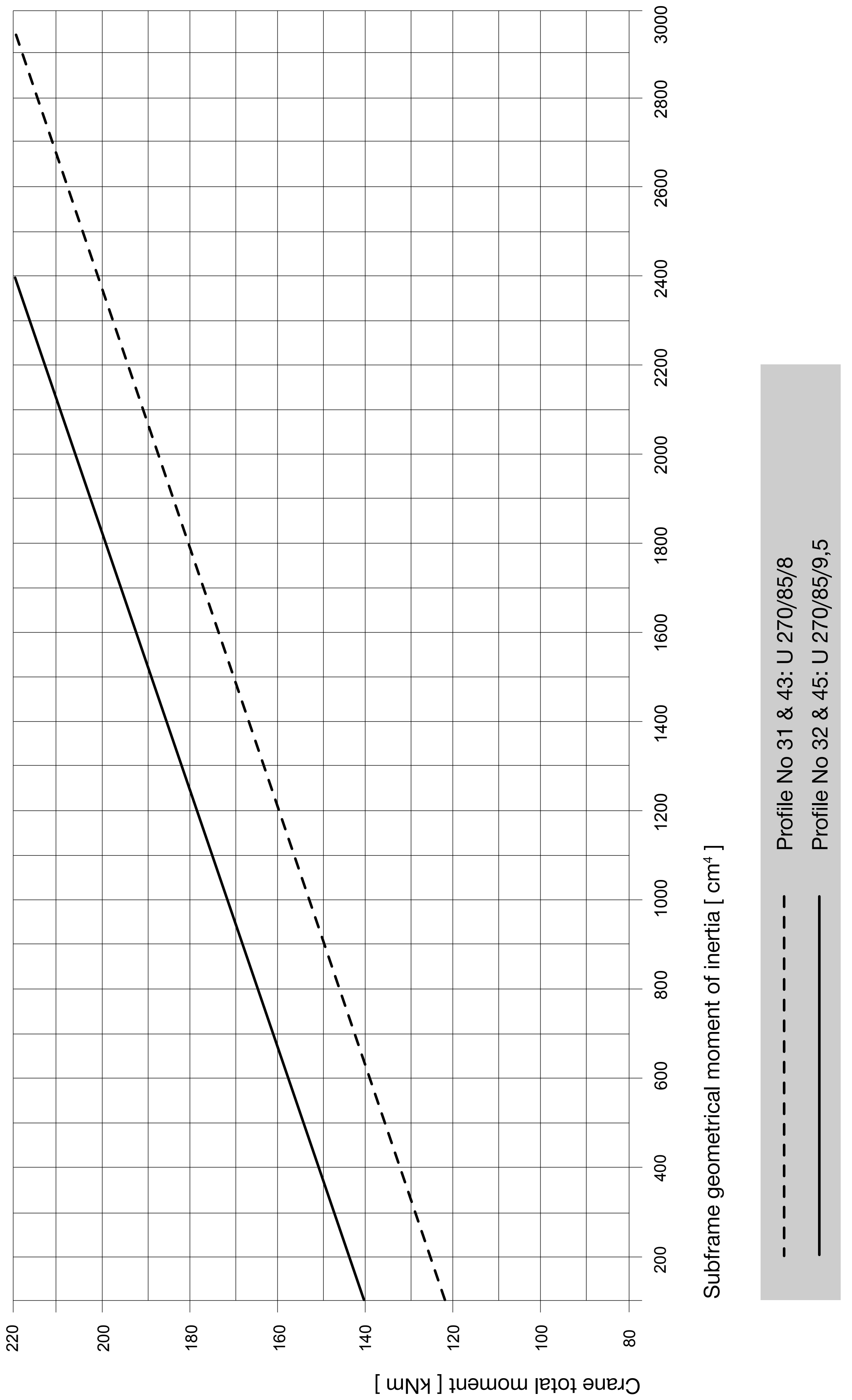
Example of how to use the graphs in Fig. 42-IV:
an auxiliary frame is to be specified for a TGS 18.xxx 4x2 BB, model 03S vehicle, frame-profile no. 31 (see Chapter III; Section 4.3). The vehicle is to be fitted with a crane with a total moment of 160 kNm.

Solution: A minimum geometrical moment of inertia of approx. 1.250 cm^4 is derived from Fig. 42-IV
If one U-profile with a width of 80 mm and a thickness of 8 mm is closed to form a box with an 8-mm thick profile, a profile height of at least 170 mm is required, see diagram in Fig. 44-IV.
If two U-profiles of width/thickness = 80/8 are nested to form a box, the minimum height is reduced to approx. 140 mm, see Fig. 45-IV.

If, when the values are read off, the profile size in question is not available, round up to the next available size. Rounding down is not permitted.

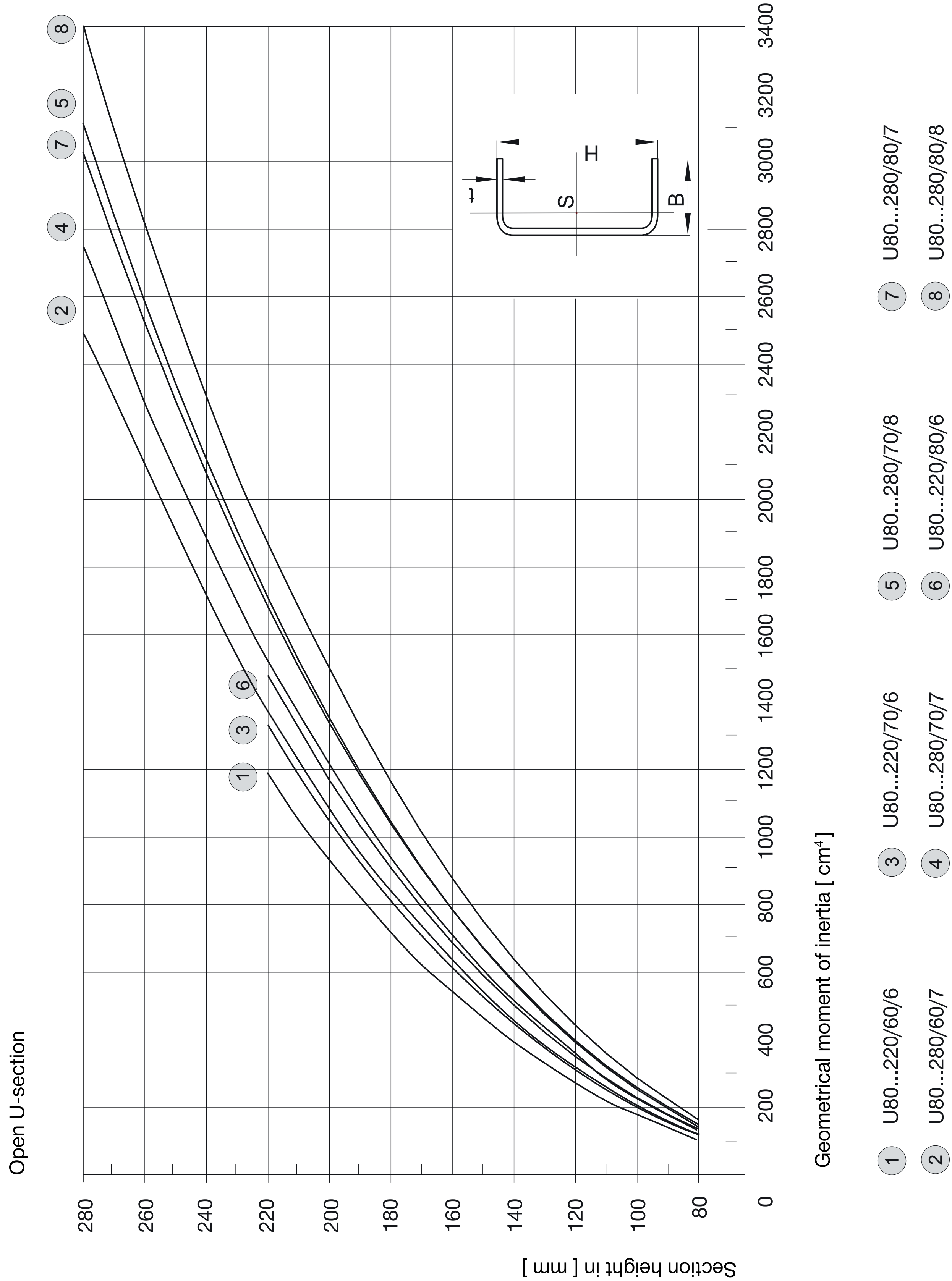
An open U-profile as in Fig. 43-IV must not be used in the vicinity of the crane.
It is only shown here because the diagram can also be used for other bodies.

Fig. 42-IV: Total crane moment and geometrical moment of inertia for TGS/TGX



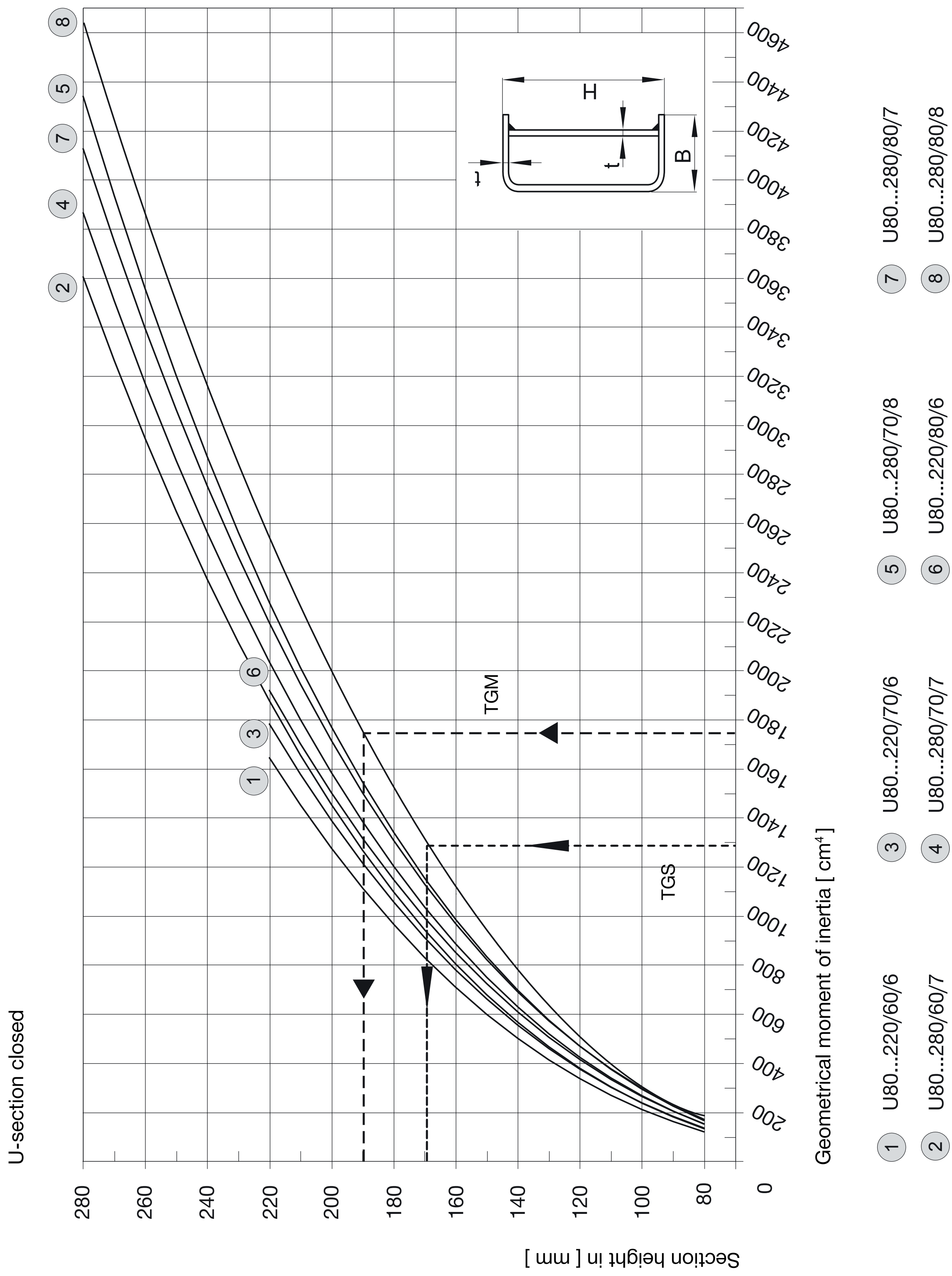
T_993_000017_0001_D

Fig. 43-IV: Planar moment of inertia of U-profiles



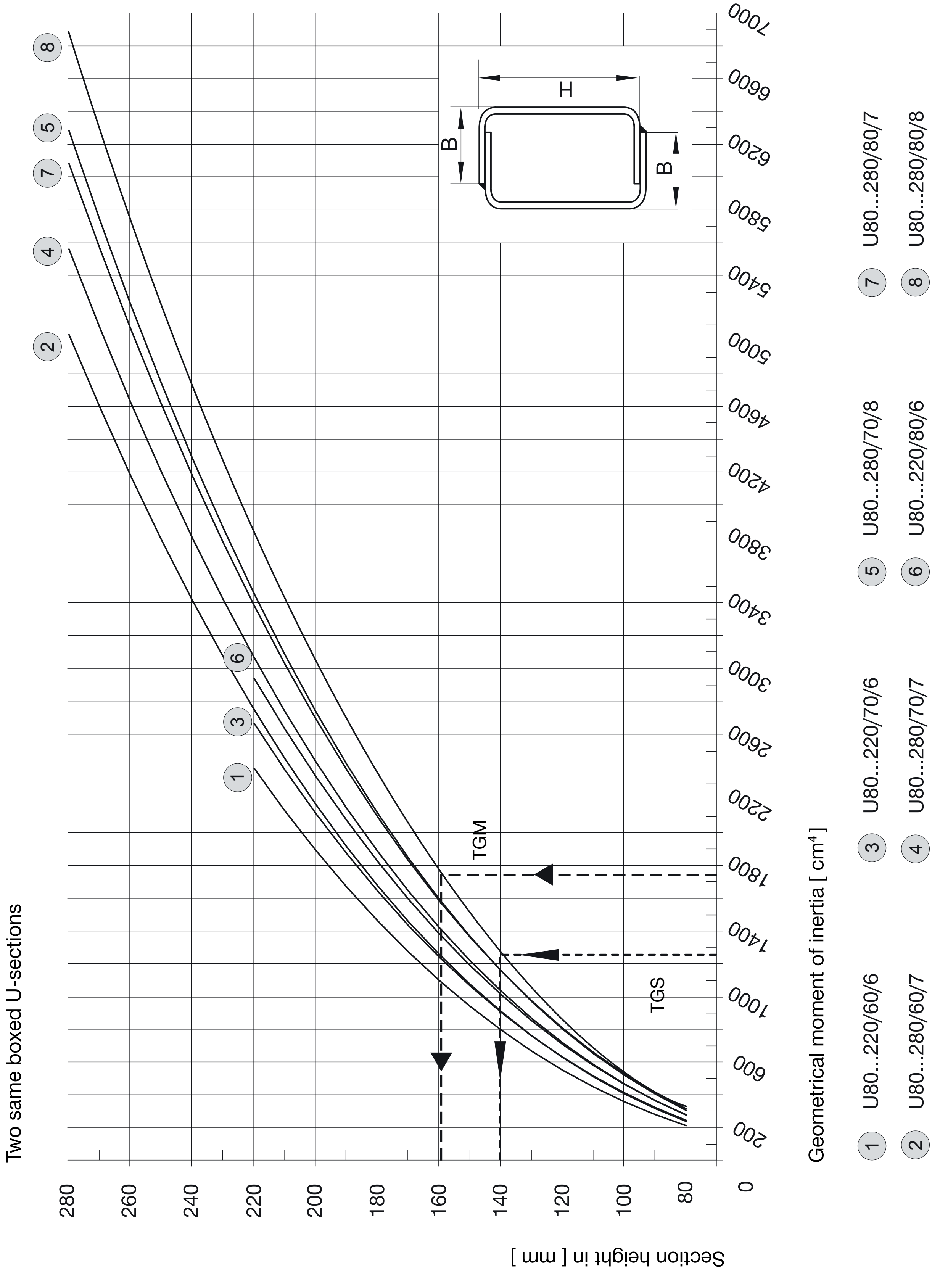
T_993_000018_0001_D

Fig. 44-IV: Geometrical moments of inertia of closed U-profiles



T_993_000019_0001_D

Fig. 45-IV: Geometrical moments of inertia of nested U-profiles



T_993_000020_0001_D

3.10 Transport mixers

3.10.1 Chassis and equipment

The MAN range includes chassis that are suitable for mounting a transport mixer body.
These chassis can be recognised by the suffix “**TM**” for “Transport Mixer” in the sales documentation.

The requirements with regard to running gear and the thrust plates are then included in the scope of delivery.
In order to reduce the tendency to roll, transport mixer chassis must be fitted with stabilisers on both rear axles and must be equipped with springs that are specifically tuned for the application.

Table 10-IV: Transport mixer chassis available ex works

Type number	Variant designation
26S	TGS 26.xxx 6X4 BB
26W	TGS TGS 33.xxx 6X4 BB-WW
49S	TGS 32.xxx 8X4 BB
37S	TGS 35.xxx 8X4 BB
39S	TGS 35.xxx 8X4 BB, TGS 41.xxx 8X4 BB
39W	TGS 41.xxx 8X4 BB-WW
79W	TGS 41.xxx 8X4 BB-WW-CKD

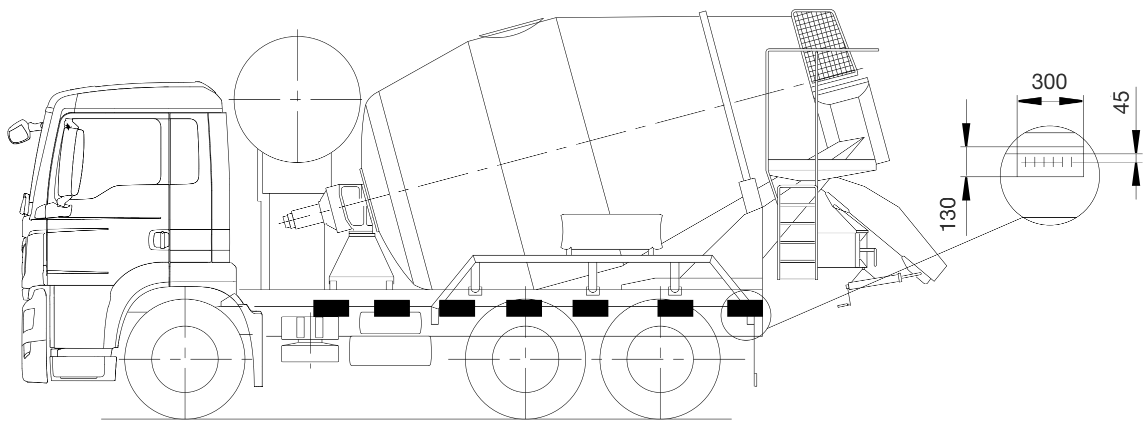
The concrete mixer is generally driven by the flywheel-side power take-off (SSNA) on the engine.
Further information on power take-offs can be found in the separate booklet entitled “Power take-offs”.

3.10.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

Fig. 46-IV shows an example of thrust-plate arrangement on a transport mixer chassis. The body is rigid along virtually its entire length, the only exception atng the front end of the auxiliary frame ahead of the drum mounting. The first two thrust plates must be positioned in the area of the front retaining brackets for the drum.
For more detailed explanations on auxiliary frame fastenings, see Chapter IV, Section 2.4 “Auxiliary frame and body fastenings”. The strength of the thrust plate should be 8 mm and at least match the material quality of S355J2G3 (St52-3).

Fig. 46-IV: Transport mixer body



T_995_000010_0001_G

If a different chassis (e.g. a tipper chassis) is to be used for fitting a transport mixer it is assumed that the spring and stabiliser equipment of the axles and the arrangement of the thrust plates are equivalent to those of a comparable transport mixer body.

Important notice
The thrust plate arrangement of tipper chassis and the retaining brackets for loading platforms are not suitable for mounting transport mixer bodies.

Concrete conveyor belts and concrete pumps cannot easily be fitted together with mixer bodies onto standard transport mixer chassis. In some circumstances, a different auxiliary frame structure from that of the normal mixer auxiliary frame or a cross connection on the frame end is required (similar to rear loading crane bodies, see Chapter IV, Section 3.9.3, sub-section “Auxiliary frame for loading cranes”).
Approval from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above) and from the transport mixer manufacturer is essential.

3.11 Cable winch

Requirements to be met by the body
The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

The following must be considered when installing a cable winch:

- Tractive force
- Installation position:
  - Front installation
  - Central installation
  - Rear installation
  - Side installation
- Type drive:
  - Mechanical
  - Hydraulic
  - Electrical
  - Electromechanical
  - Electrohydraulic.

Vehicle components such as axles, springs, frames, etc. must under no circumstances be overloaded by the operation of the cable winch. This is particularly important if the direction of the winch pulling force differs from the longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Automatic limiting of the pulling force may be necessary as a function of the direction of the pulling force.

In every case it is important to ensure clear and proper guidance and running of the cable. The cable should feed through as few guide pulleys as possible. At the same time no part of the vehicle may be degraded in its working.

When a winch is installed at the front, its maximum tractive force is limited by the technically permissible front-axle load. The technically permissible front-axle load is found on the factory plate of the vehicle and in the vehicle documentation. A winch design that has tractive forces above the technically permissible front-axle load is permissible only after prior consultation with MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

A hydraulic winch drive is preferable because of the better possibilities for control and installation.
The efficiency of the hydraulic pump and motor is to be taken into account (see also Chapter V “Calculations”).

Examine whether existing hydraulic pumps, e.g. of a loading crane or tipper, can be shared. This can sometimes avoid the need for installing several power take-offs.

Important notice
The hydraulic circuit of HydroDrive vehicles is a closed circuit. It may not be used to drive a cable winch.

For the worm gears of mechanical winches it is necessary to observe the permissible input speed (usually < 2,000 rpm). Select the ratio of the power take-off accordingly. Take the low efficiency of the worm gear into consideration when calculating the minimum torque at the power take-off.

Refer to Chapter III, Section 8.0 “Electrical and electronic systems” with regard to electrically, electromechanically or electrohydraulically driven winches. The capacities of the alternator and battery must be taken into consideration.

Information
Every time a winch is installed, the installation instructions of the winch manufacturer together with any applicable official safety regulations must be observed.

3.12 Single-pivot body

Requirements to be met by the body
The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

The single-pivot body, comparable to a fifth-wheel coupling, always requires a subframe.

Positioning of the pivot point for the single-pivot body behind the theoretical rear-axle centerline must be approved with regard to axle load distribution and handling. In this case approval must be granted by MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

3.13 Vehicle transporter

3.13.1 Chassis and equipment

Vehicle-transporter bodies are usually fitted to semitrailer-tractor or truck chassis.

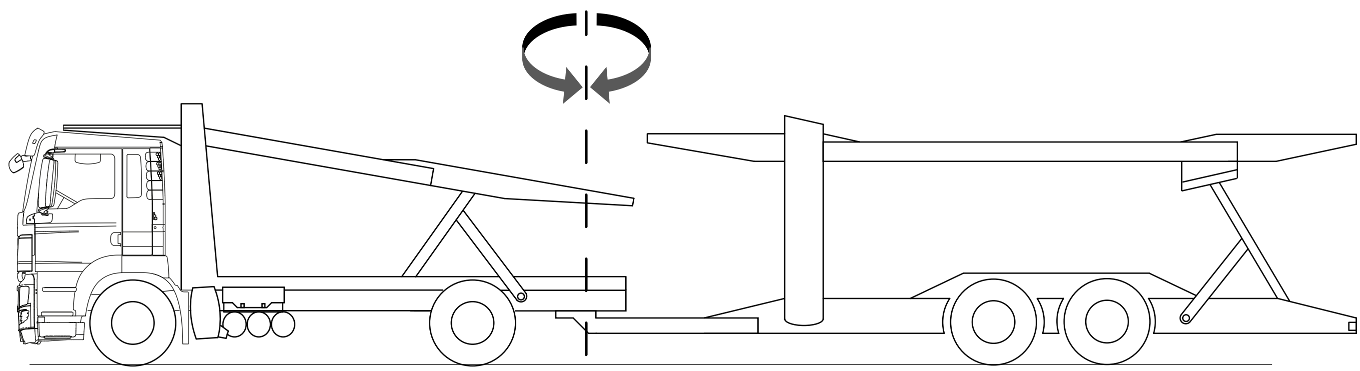
Base vehicle: truck chassis
This body variant is characterised by the following criteria.

- Base vehicle is a truck chassis.
- The body section is fitted onto the chassis and is not removable or detachable.

The trailer is usually fastened to the truck chassis by means of a low coupling system (see Fig. 47-IV).

Truck-type chassis always require a stabiliser and two level-adjustment systems.

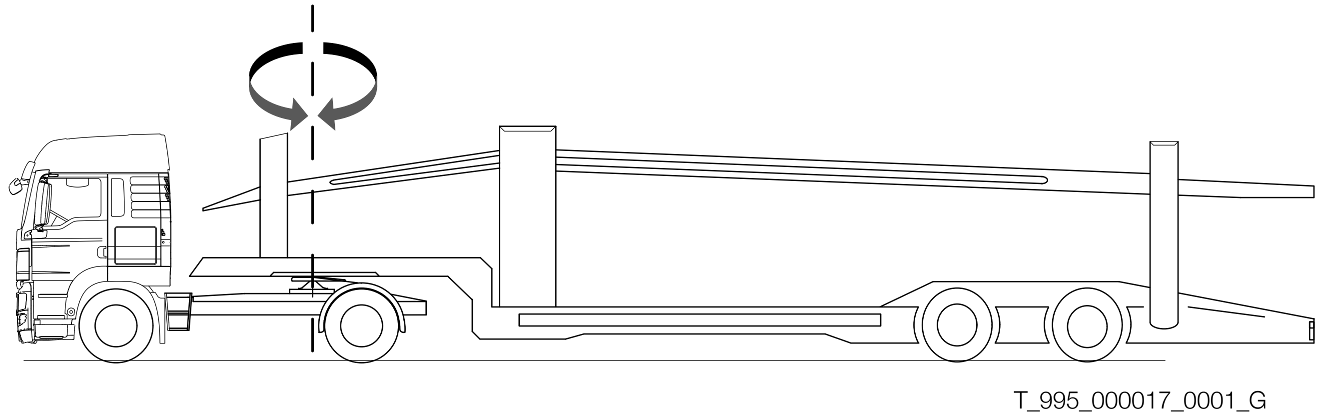
Fig. 47-IV: Vehicle transporter on truck chassis



T_995_000019_0001_G

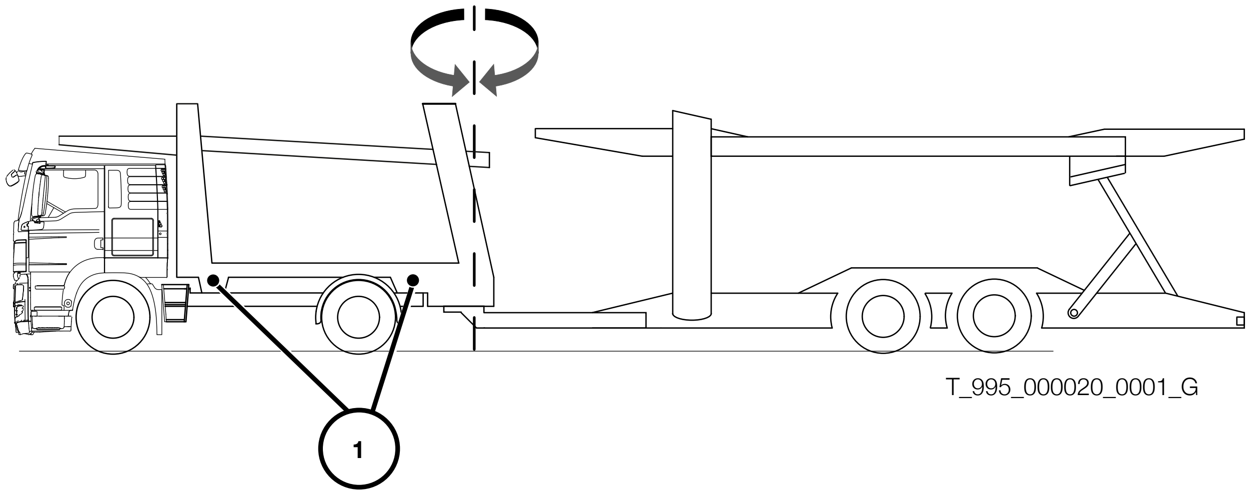
Base vehicle: semitrailer tractor
This is a classic train in which the semitrailer rests on the tractor's fifth-wheel coupling (see Fig. 48-IV). Chapter 5.3.1 must be observed with regard to this body variant.

Fig. 48-IV: Vehicle transporter on semitrailer tractor



Base vehicle: semitrailer tractor or truck chassis
A semitrailer tractor as well as a truck chassis can be used as the base vehicle for this variant. The body is divided into two sections. The section that rests on the chassis is usually attached to the chassis at two or three mounting points (see Fig. 49-IV – Pos. 1). The second section of the body is attached to the first by means of a coupling system. When the vehicle is cornering, this coupling point enables rotation between the two sections of the body. Both sections of the body can be detached from the chassis (seeFig. 49-IV).

Fig. 49-IV: Vehicle transporter on truck chassis



If a semitrailer tractor is used as the base vehicle, the following conditions must be fulfilled.

- Wheel configuration 4x2
- Maximum wheelbase 3900 mm
- It is imperative that a stabiliser is fitted to the front axle.
- The vehicle type entered in the official papers must be “Vehicle for interchangeable operation” or “ Optional use as tractor unit and truck for car transport”, otherwise supplementary modifications to the chassis are necessary.
- The tractor final cross member with hole pattern for trailer coupling must be fitted (no. 81.41250.0141). Because of its greater material thickness (9.5 mm) only this final cross member is suitable for supporting the forces exerted by the rear body connection. The tractor final cross member with a material thickness of 5 mm must not be used.
- Use of the rear-axle guide with four-point control arm (second generation cast version - only for TGS/TGX) without supplementary stabiliser is possible.
- The use of semitrailer tractors with only a single level-adjustment system on the rear axle is possible.
- We strongly recommend fitting ESP for vehicle transporters. This equipment can be obtained under Sales Code 307DT.

Semitrailer tractors available ex works for operation as tanker/silo vehicles (model number: 08S (TGS 18.xxx BLS-TS)) or as low semitrailer tractors (model number: 13S/13X (TGS/TGX 18.xxx LLS-U)) are not suitable and therefore not approved for this type of operation.

If the chassis is to be converted to a truck in its so-called “second life” (after use as a vehicle transporter) supplementary conversion measures are necessary.

If subsequent modifications to the chassis are necessary, for example changes to the cab or the wheel configuration, Chapter III must be observed.

3.13.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

NOTICE

V. Calculations

1.0 General

Unless stated otherwise, dimensions are in millimetres (mm) and weights in kilograms (kg). “Weight” or “load” means the mass of a vehicle or parts of a vehicle in a stationary (steady) state.

Further general explanations can be found at www.manted.de in the “Documentation/help” section. Registration is required.

1.1 Speed

The following generally applies for the calculation of the road speed on the basis of engine speed, tyre size and overall ratio:

Formula 01-V: Speed

$$v = \frac{0{,}06 \bullet n_{Mot} \bullet U}{i_G \bullet i_v \bullet i_A}$$

To determine theoretical top speed (or design top speed), the calculation uses an engine speed increased by 4% (constant factor of 0.0624).

The formula is therefore as follows:

Formula 02-V: Theoretical top speed

$$v = \frac{0{,}0624 \bullet n_{Mot} \bullet U}{i_G \bullet i_v \bullet i_A}$$

Where:

v	Road speed [km/h]
n_{Mot}	Engine speed [rpm]
U	Tyre rolling circumference [m]
i_G	Gearbox ratio
i_V	Transfer-case ratio
i_A	Ratio of drive axle(s)
0,06	Constant conversion factor m/min in km/h
0,0624	Constant conversion factor with 4% increase of engine speed m/min in km/h

Note:
On vehicles with a speed limiter in accordance with 92/24/EEC, the design top speed is generally 90 km/h.

Important:
This calculation serves only to determine the theoretical top speed reached as a result of engine speeds and transmission ratios. The formula does not take into account that the actual top speed will be lower when driving resistances act on the driving forces. An estimate of the actual achievable speeds using a driving performance calculation in which air, rolling and climbing resistance on the one side and propulsive force on the other offset each other, can be found in Section 1.8, “Driving resistances”.

Example: Calculation of speeds

Given:

Tyre size:	315/80R 22.5
Rolling circumference:	3.280 m
Gearbox:	ZF 16S2522TO
Transmission ratio in lowest gear:	13.80
Transmission ratio in highest gear:	0.84
Minimum engine speed at maximum engine torque:	1000 rpm
Maximum engine speed:	1900 rpm
Transfer case ratio G 172 on-road:	1.007
Transfer case ratio G 172 off-road:	1.652
Axle ratio:	4,00

Wanted:

1. Minimum speed off-road at maximum torque
2. Theoretical top speed without speed limiter

Answer 1:

$$v = \frac{0{,}06 \cdot 1000 \cdot 3{,}280}{13{,}8 \cdot 1{,}652 \cdot 4{,}00}$$

v = 2,16 km/h

Answer 2:

$$v = \frac{0{,}0624 \cdot 1900 \cdot 3{,}280}{0{,}84 \cdot 1{,}007 \cdot 4{,}00}$$

v = 115 km/h

115 km/h theoretically possible but restricted to 90 km/h by speed limiter (electronic speed limiter 89 km/h + 1 km/h tolerance).

1.2 Efficiency

Efficiency is the ratio of the power output to the power input.

The power output is always smaller than the power input, so the efficiency η is always < 1 or < 100 %.

Formula 03-V: Degree of efficiency

$$\eta = \frac{P_{ab}}{P_{zu}}$$

Where:

P_{zu} Power input [kW]
P_{ab} Power output [kW]
η Efficiency

Note:
The individual efficiencies multiply when several subassemblies are connected in series.

Example: Single efficiency

Given:
Efficiency of a hydraulic pump $\eta = 0{,}7$
Required power $P_{ab} = 20$ kW

Wanted:
How high is the input power P_{zu}?

Solution:

$$P_{zu} = \frac{P_{ab}}{\eta}$$

$$P_{zu} = \frac{20}{0{,}7}$$

$$P_{zu} = 28{,}6 \text{ kW}$$

Example: Several efficiencies

<u>Given:</u>
A pump drives a hydraulic motor via a jointed shaft system with two joints.
Output power P_{ab} is 20 kW.

Single efficiencies

Hydraulic pump:	η_1	=	0,7
Jointed shaft joint a:	η_2	=	0,95
Jointed shaft joint b:	η_3	=	0,95
Hydraulic motor:	η_4	=	0,8

<u>Wanted:</u>
How high is the input power P_{zu}?

<u>Solution:</u>

Total efficiency:

$$\eta_{ges} = \eta_1 \cdot \eta_2 \cdot \eta_3 \cdot \eta_4$$
$$\eta_{ges} = 0,7 \cdot 0,95 \cdot 0,95 \cdot 0,8$$
$$\eta_{ges} = 0,51$$

Input power:

$$P_{zu} = \frac{20}{0,51}$$
$$P_{zu} = 39,2 \text{ kW}$$

1.3 Tractive force

The tractive force is dependent on:

- engine torque
- Overall ratio (including wheels)
- Efficiency of power transmission

Formula 04-V: Tractive force

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot M_{Mot} \cdot \eta \cdot i_G \cdot i_V \cdot i_A}{U}$$

Where:

F_Z	Tractive force [N]
M_{Mot}	Engine torque [Nm]
η	Total efficiency in driveline (for guideline values, see Table 02-V, Chapter V, Section 1.4.3)
i_G	Gearbox ratio
i_V	Transfer-case ratio
i_A	Ratio of drive axle(s)
U	Tyre rolling circumference [m]

For an example of tractive force, see Chapter IV; Section 1.4.3 “Calculating gradeability”.

1.4 Gradeability

1.4.1 Distance travelled on uphill or downhill gradients

The gradeability of a vehicle is expressed in %. For example, the figure 25% means that for a horizontal length of l = 100 m, a height of h = 25 m can be overcome. The same applies correspondingly to downhill gradients.

The actual distance travelled c is calculated as follows:

Formula 05-V: Distance travelled on uphill or downhill gradient

$$c = \sqrt{l^2 + h^2} = l \cdot \sqrt{1 + \left[\frac{p}{100}\right]^2}$$

Where:

c	Distance [m]
l	Horizontal length of uphill or downhill gradient [m]
h	Vertical height of uphill or downhill gradient [m]
p	Uphill/downhill gradient [%]

Example:

<u>Given:</u>
Gradient p = 25 %.

<u>Wanted:</u>
What is the distance travelled for a length of 200 m?

<u>Solution:</u>

$$c = \sqrt{l^2 + h^2} = 200 \cdot \sqrt{1 + \left[\frac{25}{100}\right]^2}$$

$$c = 206 \text{ m}$$

1.4.2 Angle of uphill or downhill gradient

The angle of uphill or downhill gradient α is calculated by the following formula:

Formula 06-V: Angle of uphill or downhill gradient

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{p}{100}, \quad \alpha = \arctan\frac{p}{100}, \quad \sin\alpha = \frac{h}{c}, \quad \alpha = \arcsin\frac{h}{c}$$

Where:

α	Angle of uphill gradient [°]
p	Uphill/downhill gradient [%]
h	Vertical height of uphill or downhill gradient [m]
c	Distance [m]

Example: Calculating the angle of uphill gradient

Given:
Gradient p is 25%.

Wanted:
What is the angle of the gradient?

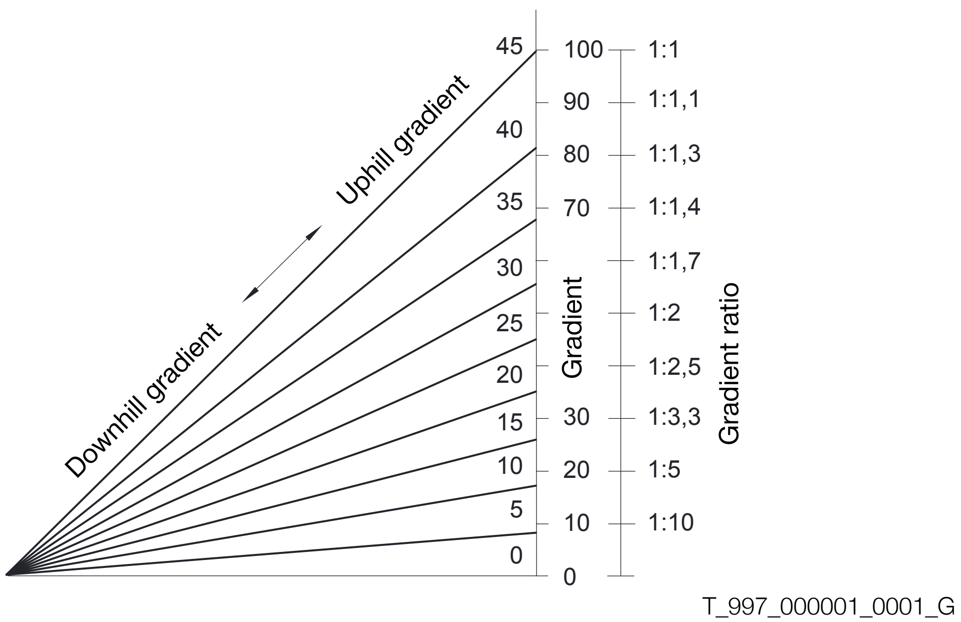
Solution:

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{p}{100} = \frac{25}{100}$$

$$\alpha = \arctan 0{,}25$$

$$\alpha = 14°$$

Fig. 01-V: Gradient ratio, gradient, angle of gradient



1.4.3 Calculating the gradeability

Gradeability is dependent on:

- Tractive force (see Formula 04-V, Chapter V, Section 1.3)
- Total combined mass including total mass of trailer or semi-trailer
- Rolling resistance
- Adhesion (friction)

Gradeability (without taking adhesion between the tyres and the road surface into account) is calculated by the following formula:

Formula 07-V: Gradeability without taking adhesion between the tyres and the road surface into account

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{F_z}{9{,}81 \cdot G_z} - f_R \right]$$

Where:

p	=	Gradeability [%]
F_z	=	Tractive force in [N]
G_z	=	Overall combined mass, in [kg]
f_R	=	Coeffi cient of rolling resistance, see Table 01-V

Formula 07-V calculates the vehicle's gradeability based on its characteristics of

- Engine torque
- Transmission, transfer case, axle drive and tyre ratio
- Total combined mass

All that is taken into account here is the ability of the vehicle, based on the above-mentioned characteristics, to deal with a certain gradient. This does not consider the actual adhesion between wheels and road which in poor conditions (e.g. wet roads) can reduce traction so that hill-climbing performance is far below the value calculated here.

Calculation of the actual conditions based on given adhesion is addressed in the formula below.

Formula 08-V: Gradeability in relation to road/tyre adhesion

$$p_R = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{\mu \cdot G_{an}}{G_z} - f_R \right]$$

Where:

p_R Gradeability allowing for friction [%]
μ Coefficient of adhesion between tyres/road surface, see Table 03-V
f_R Coefficient of rolling resistance, see Table 01-V
G_{an} Sum of the axle loads of the drive axles as mass [kg]
G_Z Gross train mass [kg]

Important:
The above formulae can be applied for resulting gradeability values of up to 30%. Results with values of more than 30% cannot be considered realistic.

Table 01-V: Coefficients of rolling resistance f_R

Road surface	Coefficient f_R
Good asphalt	0,007
Wet asphalt	0,015
Good concrete	0,008
Rough concrete	0,011
Block paving	0,017
poor-quality, rough road	0,032
Dirt track	0,15...0,94
Loose sand	0,15...0,30

Table 02-V: Total efficiency in driveline η

Number of driven axles	η
One driven axle	0,95
Two driven axles	0,9
Three driven axles	0,85
Four driven axles	0,8

Table 03-V: Coefficient of adhesion μ between tyres/road surface (guideline values)

Road surface	dry	wet
Concrete, granite paving	0,7	0,6
Tarmacadam	0,6	0,5
Asphalt	0,6	0,5
Blue basalt stone	0,55	0,3
Snow (compacted)	0,2	0,1
Sheet ice	0,1	0,01 ... 0,1

Example: Calculation of gradeability not taking into account adhesion between tyres/road surface

Given:

Vehicle	TGS 33.430 6x6 BB		
Maximum engine torque	M_{Mot}	=	2100 Nm
Efficiency with three driven axles	η_{ges}	=	0,85
Transmission ratio in lowest gear	i_G	=	13,80
Transfer-case ratio in on-road gear	i_V	=	1,007
Transfer-case ratio in off-road gear	i_V	=	1,652
Drive-axle ratio	i_A	=	4,00
Tyres 315/80 R 22.5 with rolling circumference	U	=	3,280 m
Gross train weight	G_Z	=	100000 kg
Coefficient of rolling resistance	f_R		
- smooth asphalt		=	0,007
- poor, rough road		=	0,032

Wanted:
Maximum gradeability p in on-road and off-road gear.

Solution:
1. Maximum tractive force (for definition see Formula 04-V, Chapter V, Section 1.3) in on-road gear:

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot M_{Mot} \cdot \eta \cdot i_G \cdot i_V \cdot i_A}{U}$$

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot 2100 \cdot 0{,}85 \cdot 13{,}8 \cdot 1{,}007 \cdot 4{,}00}{3{,}280}$$

$$F_z = 190070\ \text{N} = 190{,}07\ \text{kN}$$

2. Maximum tractive force (for definition see Formula 04-V, Chapter V, Section 1.3) in off-road gear:

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot M_{Mot} \cdot \eta \cdot i_G \cdot i_V \cdot i_A}{U}$$

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot 2100 \cdot 0,85 \cdot 13,8 \cdot 1,652 \cdot 4,00}{3,280}$$

$$F_z = 311812 \text{ N} = 311,8 \text{ kN}$$

3. Maximum gradeability in on-road gear on good asphalt road:

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{F_z}{9,81 \cdot G_z} - f_R\right]$$

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{190070}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,007\right]$$

$$p = 18,68\ \%$$

4. Maximum gradeability in on-road gear on poor-quality rough road:

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{190070}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,032\right]$$

$$p = 16,18\ \%$$

5. Maximum gradeability in off-road gear on good asphalt road:

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{311812}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,007\right]$$

$$p = 31,09\ \%$$

6. Maximum gradeability in off-road gear on poor-quality rough road:

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{311812}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,032\right]$$

$$p = 28,58\ \%$$

Please note that:
The examples do not consider whether adhesion between road and driven wheels (friction) will allow transmission of the tractive force required for climbing a gradient. The following example shows the calculation where adhesion between the tyres and the road surface is taken into consideration. Formula 08-V is applied.

Example: Calculation of gradeability taking into account grip between road and tyres (front axle not activated)

Given:

Coefficient of friction on wet asphalt road	μ	=	0,5
Coefficient of rolling resistance on wet asphalt road	f_R	=	0,015
Total combined mass	G_Z	=	100000 kg
Sum of axle loads of all driven axles	G_{an}	=	26000 kg

Wanted:
Gradeability allowing for friction [%]

$$p_R = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{0,5 \cdot 26000}{100000} - 0,015 \right]$$

Solution:

$$p_R = 11,5\%$$

1.5 Torque

Torque can be calculated using various different formulae, depending on the givens.

If force and effective distance are known:

Formula 09-V: Torque with force and effective distance

$$M = F \cdot l$$

If power and rotational speed are known:

Formula 10-V: Torque with power and rotational speed

$$M = \frac{9550 \cdot P}{n \cdot \eta}$$

If in hydraulics delivery rate (volumetric flow), pressure and rotational speed are known:

Formula 11-V: Torque with delivery rate, pressure and rotational speed

$$M = \frac{15,9 \cdot Q \cdot p}{n \cdot \eta}$$

Where:

M	Torque [Nm]
F	Force [N]
l	Effective distance of force from center of rotation [m]
P	Power [kW]
n	Rotational speed [rpm]
η	Efficiency
Q	Volumetric flow rate [l/minute]
p	Pressure [bar]

Example: Force and effective distance are known

Given:
A cable winch with a pulling force F = 50000 N has a drum diameter d = 0.3 m.

Wanted:
Without taking efficiency into account, what is the torque?

Solution:

$$M = F \cdot l = F \cdot 0{,}5d \text{ (the radius of the drum is the lever arm)}$$

$$M = 50000\ N \cdot 0{,}5 \cdot 0{,}3\ m$$

$$M = 7500\ Nm$$

Example: Power and rotational speed are known

Given:
A power take-off is to transmit a power P of 100 kW at n = 1,500 rpm.

Wanted:
What torque must the power take-off be able to transmit without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$M = \frac{9550 \cdot 100}{1500}$$

$$M = 637\ Nm$$

Example: Delivery rate (volumetric flow rate), pressure and rotational speed are known for a hydraulic pump

Given:
A hydraulic pump delivers a volumetric flow rate of Q = 80 l/minute at a pressure p = 170 bar and a pump rotational speed n = 1,000 rpm.

Wanted:
Without taking efficiency into account, what torque is necessary?

Solution:

$$M = \frac{15{,}9 \cdot 80 \cdot 170}{1000}$$

$$M = 216\ Nm$$

If efficiency is to be taken into account, the torques calculated in each case must be divided by the overall efficiency (see also Section 1.2, “Efficiency”).

1.6 Power output

Power can be calculated using various different formulae, depending on the givens.

For planar motion:

Formula 12-V: Power for planar motion

$$P = \frac{F \bullet v}{1000} = \frac{9{,}81 \bullet m \bullet v}{1000}$$

For rotating motion:

Formula 13-V: Power for rotating motion

$$P = \frac{M \bullet n}{9550\ \eta}$$

In hydraulics:

Formula 14-V: Power in hydraulics

$$P = \frac{Q \bullet p}{600 \bullet \eta}$$

Where:

P	Power [kW]
m	Mass [kg]
v	Velocity [m/s]
η	Efficiency
F	Force [N]
M	Torque [Nm]
n	Rotational speed [rpm]
Q	Delivery rate (volumetric flow rate) [l/minute]
p	Pressure [bar]
1000	Constant conversion factor of [W] to [kW]
9550	Constant conversion factor of [Nm] and [rpm] to [kW]
600	Constant conversion factor of [rpm] and [bar] to [kW]

Example: Lifting motion

Given:
Liftgate payload including own weight is m = 2600 kg
Lifting velocity v = 0.2 m/s

Wanted:
How high is the power without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{9{,}81 \cdot 2600 \cdot 0{,}2}{1000}$$

$$P = 5{,}1 \text{ kW}$$

Example: Planar motion

Given:
Cable winch $F = 100000$ N
Cable velocity $v = 0{,}15$ m/s

Wanted:
How much power is needed without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{100000 \cdot 0{,}15}{1000}$$

$$P = 15 \text{ kW}$$

Example: Rotational movement

Given:
PTO rotational speed $n = 1800$ rpm
Permissible torque $M = 600$ Nm

Wanted:
How high is the power without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{600 \cdot 1800}{9550}$$

$$P = 113 \text{ kW}$$

Example: Hydraulic system

Given:
Volumetric flow rate of pump Q = 60 l/min
Pressure p = 170 bar

Wanted:
How high is the power without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{60 \cdot 170}{600}$$

$$P = 17 \text{ kW}$$

1.7 Rotational speeds for power take-offs on the transfer case

If the PTO on the transfer case is operating and its operation is distance-dependent, its rotational speed n_N is given in revolutions per metre of distance covered.

It is calculated from the following:

Formula 15-V: Revolutions per meter, power take-off on transfer case

$$n_N = \frac{i_A \cdot i_V}{U}$$

The distance s in metres covered per revolution of the PTO (reciprocal value of n_N) is calculated by:

Formula 16-V: Distance per revolution, power take-off on transfer case

$$s = \frac{U}{i_A \cdot i_V}$$

Where:

n_N Rotational speed of PTO [1/m]
i_A Drive-axle ratio
i_V Transfer-case ratio
U Rolling circumference of tyres [m]
s Distance covered [m]

Example:

Given:

315/80R22.5 tyres with rolling circumference	U = 3,280 m
Drive axle ratio	i_A = 5,33
Transfer-case G 172 ratio in on-road gear	i_V = 1,007
Off-road	i_V = 1,652

Wanted:
The rotational speeds of the PTO in on-road and off-road gear and the associated distance per revolution.

Solution:
PTO rotational speed in on-road gear

$$n_N = \frac{5{,}33 \cdot 1{,}007}{3{,}280}$$

$$n_N = 1{,}636\ /\mathrm{m}$$

This corresponds to a distance of

$$s = \frac{3{,}280}{5{,}33 \cdot 1{,}007}$$

$$s = 0{,}611 \text{ m}$$

PTO rotational speed in off-road gear

$$n_N = \frac{5{,}33 \cdot 1{,}652}{3{,}280}$$

$$n_N = 2{,}684\ /\text{m}$$

This corresponds to a distance of

$$s = \frac{3{,}280}{5{,}33 \cdot 1{,}652}$$

$$s = 0{,}372 \text{ m}$$

1.8 Driving resistances

The major driving resistances are:

- Rolling resistance
- Climbing resistance
- Air resistance (drag)

A vehicle can only move if the sum of all resistances is overcome. Resistances are forces that either balance out the driving force (uniform movement) or are smaller than the driving force (accelerated movement).

Formula 17-V: Rolling resistance force

$$F_R = 9{,}81 \cdot f_R \cdot G_z \cdot \cos\alpha$$

Formula 18-V: Climbing resistance force

$$F_S = 9{,}81 \cdot G_z \cdot \sin\alpha$$

Angle of uphill gradient (for the formula, see Chapter V, Section 1.4.2)

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{p}{100}, \quad \alpha = \arctan\frac{p}{100}$$

Formula 19-V: Air resistance force

$$F_L = 0{,}6 \cdot c_W \cdot A \cdot v^2$$

Where:

F_R	Rolling resistance force [N]
f_R	Coefficient of rolling resistance, see Table 01-V
G_Z	Gross train mass [kg]
α	Angle of uphill gradient [°]
F_S	Climbing resistance force [N]
p	Uphill gradient [%]
F_L	Air resistance force [N]
c_W	Drag coefficient
A	Vehicle frontal area [m²]
v	Velocity [m/s]

Example:

Given:

Semi-trailer tractor	G_Z	40000 kg
Speed	v	80 km/h
Uphill gradient	p	3 %
Vehicle front	A	7 m²
Coefficient of rolling resistance for good asphalt road	f_R	0,007

The difference is to be determined:

- with spoiler, c_{W1} = 0,6
- without spoiler, c_{W2} = 1,0

Wanted:
The values: rolling resistance, climbing resistance, air resistance with/without spoiler and the power requirement in each case.

Solution:
Auxiliary calculation 1
Conversion of driving speed from km/h to m/s:

$$v = \frac{80}{3{,}6}$$

$$v = 22{,}22 \text{ m/s}$$

Auxiliary calculation 2
Conversion of gradeability from percent to degrees:

$$\alpha = \arctan \frac{3}{100} = \arctan 0{,}03$$

$$\alpha = 1{,}72°$$

1. Calculation of rolling resistance:

$$F_R = 9{,}81 \bullet 0{,}007 \bullet 40000 \bullet \cos 1{,}72°$$
$$F_R = 2746 \text{ N}$$

2. Calculation of climbing resistance:

$$F_S = 9{,}81 \bullet 40000 \bullet \sin 1{,}72°$$
$$F_S = 11778 \text{ N}$$

3. Calculation of air resistance F_{L1} with spoiler:

$$F_{L1} = 0{,}6 \bullet 0{,}6 \bullet 7 \bullet 22{,}22^2$$
$$F_{L1} = 1244 \text{ N}$$

4. Calculation of air resistance F_{L2} without spoiler:

$$F_{L2} = 0{,}6 \bullet 1 \bullet 7 \bullet 22{,}22^2$$
$$F_{L2} = 2074 \text{ N}$$

5. Total resistance F_{ges1} with spoiler:

$$F_{ges1} = F_R + F_s + F_{L1}$$
$$F_{ges1} = 2746 + 11778 + 1244$$
$$F_{ges1} = 15768 \text{ N}$$

6. Total resistance F_{ges2} without spoiler:

$$F_{ges2} = F_R + F_s + F_{L2}$$
$$F_{ges2} = 2746 + 11778 + 2074$$
$$F_{ges2} = 16598 \text{ N}$$

7. Power requirement P_1 with spoiler without considering efficiency:

(power after Formula 12-V: power for planar motion)

$$P_1 = \frac{F_{ges1} \bullet v}{1000}$$

$$P_1 = \frac{15768 \bullet 22{,}22}{1000}$$

$$P_1 = 350 \text{ kW (476 PS)}$$

8. Power requirement P_2 without spoiler without considering efficiency:

$$P_2 = \frac{F_{ges2} \cdot v}{1000}$$

$$P_2 = \frac{16598 \cdot 22{,}22}{1000}$$

$$P_2 = 369 \text{ kW (502 PS)}$$

9. Power requirement P_1 with spoiler with total driveline efficiency η = 0,95:

$$P_1 = \frac{P_{1'}}{\eta} = \frac{350}{0{,}95}$$

$$P_1 = 368 \text{ kW (501 PS)}$$

10. Power requirement P_2 without spoiler with total driveline efficiency η = 0,95:

$$P_2 = \frac{P_{2'}}{\eta} = \frac{369}{0{,}95}$$

$$P_2 = 388 \text{ kW (528 PS)}$$

1.9 Turning circle

When a vehicle circles each wheel describes a turning circle. The outer turning circle, or its radius, is the main subject of interest.
The calculation is only an approximation because when a vehicle is cornering the perpendiculars through the centers of all wheels do not intersect at the curve center point (Ackermann condition). Moreover, when a vehicle is in motion dynamic forces influencing cornering arise but are not taken into account in the formulae.

Nevertheless, the following formulae can be used for estimating purposes:

Formula 20-V: Distance between steering axes

$$j = s - 2r_0$$

Formula 21-V: Theoretical outer steering angle

$$\cot ß_{ao} = \cot ß_i + \frac{j}{l_{kt}}$$

Formula 22-V: Steering deviation

$$ß_F = ß_a - ß_{ao}$$

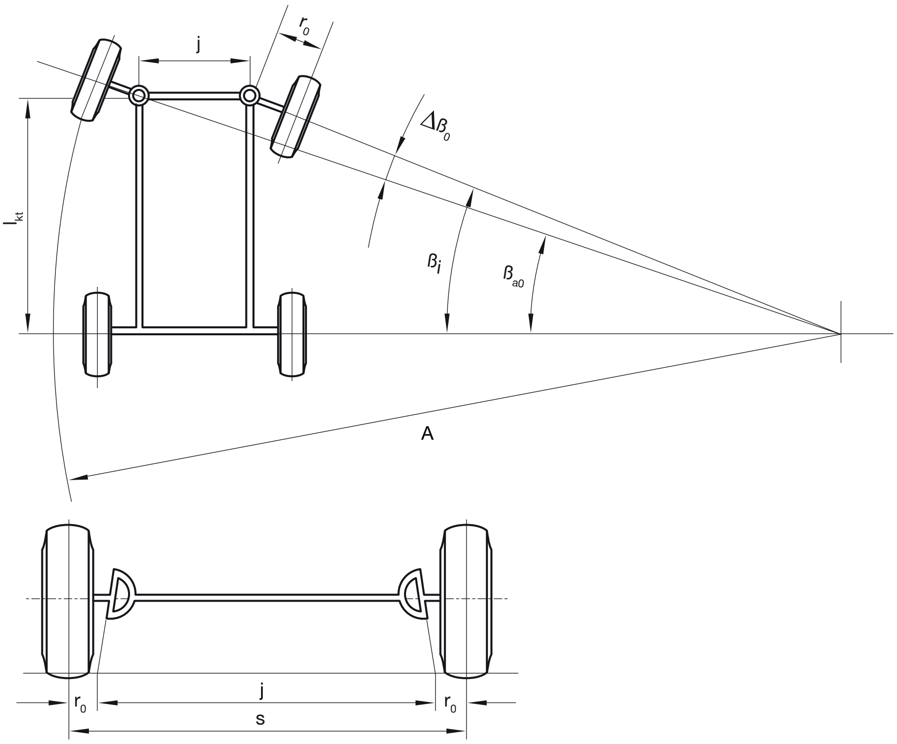
Formula 23-V: Turning circle radius

$$r_s = \frac{l_{kt}}{\sin ß_{ao}} + r_0 - 50 \cdot ß_F$$

Where:

j	Distance between steering axes [mm]
s	Track width [mm]
l_{kt}	Wheelbase [mm]
r_0	Scrub radius [mm]
β_{a0}	Outer steering angle [°]
β_i	Inner steering angle [°]
β_F	Steering deviation [°]
A	Outer track circle

Fig. 02-V: Kinematic relationships of calculating turning circle



T_460_000001_0002_G

Example:

Given:

Wheelbase	l_{kt}	3900 mm
Front axle		Typ VOK-09
Tyres		315/80 R 22.5
Rims		22.5 x 9.00
Track width	s	2048 mm
Scrub radius	r_0	49 mm
Inner steering angle	β_i	49,0°
Outer steering angle	β_{a0}	32°45‘ = 32,75°

Wanted:
The distance between steering axes, the theoretical outer steering angle, the steering deviation and the radius of the turning circle.

Solution:
1. Distance between steering axes

$$j = s - 2 \cdot r_0 = 2048 - 2 \cdot 49$$
$$j = 1950$$

2. Theoretical outer steering angle

$$\cot\beta_{ao} = \cot\beta_i + \frac{j}{l_{kt}} = 0{,}8693 + \frac{1950}{3900}$$
$$\cot\beta_{ao} = 1{,}369$$
$$\beta_{ao} = 36{,}14°$$

3. Steering deviation

$$\beta_F = \beta_a - \beta_{ao} = 32{,}75° - 36{,}14° = -3{,}39°$$

4. Turning circle radius

$$r_s = \frac{3900}{\sin 36{,}14°} + 49 - 50 \cdot (-3{,}39°)$$
$$r_s = 6831 \text{ mm}$$

1.10 Axle-load calculation

An axle load calculation is essential for optimizing a vehicle and correctly designing a body.
A body can be matched properly to a vehicle only if the vehicle is weighed before any bodymaking commences. The weights obtained in the weighing process are to be included in the axle-load calculation.

The following sub-sections explain axle-load calculation.

1.10.1 Performing an axle-load calculation

The moment theorem is used to distribute the weight of the equipment to the front and rear axles. All distances are referred to the theoretical front axle centre. For ease of understanding, „weight“ is not used in the sense of weight force (in N) in the following formulae but in the sense of mass (in kg).

The following formulae are required in order to calculate axle load:

Formula 24-V: Rear-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_H = \frac{\Delta G \cdot a}{l_t}$$

Formula 25-V: Front-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_V = \Delta G - \Delta G_H$$

Where:

ΔG_H	Rear-axle weight difference [kg]
ΔG_V	Front-axle weight difference [kg]
ΔG	Component weight difference [kg]
a	Distance between theoretical front-axle centerline and component‘s center of gravity [mm]
l_t	Theoretical wheelbase [mm]

Note:
Rounding up or down to whole kilograms is quite sufficient in practice. Ensure the correct mathematical symbol.

For this reason, the following rule applies:

- Dimensions:
  - all distances/clearances that are **IN FRONT OF** the theoretical front-axle centerline have a MINUS sign (-)
  - all distances that are **BEHIND** the theoretical front-axle centerline have a PLUS sign (+)
- Weights:
  - all weights that are **ADDED TO** the vehicle have a PLUS sign (+)
  - all equipment weights that are **REMOVED FROM** the vehicle have a MINUS sign (-)

Example:

Given:
Instead of a tank weighing 140 kg, a tank weighing 400 kg is installed. The vehicle has a theoretical wheelbase of l_t = 4,500 mm. The distance between the tank and the theoretical front-axle centerline is 1,600 mm (see Fig. 03-V).

Wanted:
A calculation of the weight distribution to the front and rear axle is required.

Solution:
Weight difference

$$\Delta G = 400 - 140 = 260 \text{ kg}$$

Rear-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_H = \frac{260 \bullet 1600}{4500}$$

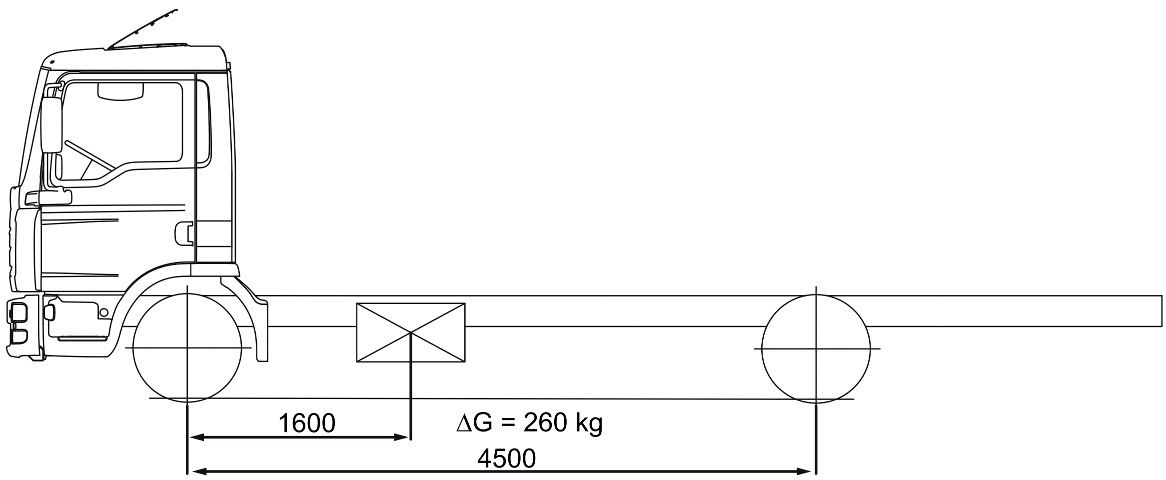
$$\Delta G_H = 92 \text{ kg}$$

Front-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_V = 260 - 92$$

$$\Delta G_V = 168 \text{ kg}$$

Fig. 03-V: Axle-load calculation: Tank layout



T_996_000002_0001_G

Example: Snowplough plate

<u>Given:</u>

Weight difference	ΔG	=	120 kg
Distance from first axle centerline	a	=	-1600 mm
Theoretical wheelbase	l_t	=	4500 mm

<u>Wanted:</u>
A calculation of the weight distribution to the front and rear axle is required.

<u>Solution:</u>
Rear axle

$$\Delta G_H = \frac{\Delta G \bullet a}{l_t} = \frac{120 \bullet (-1600)}{4500}$$

$$\Delta G_H = -43 \text{ kg, the load on the rear axle is decreased.}$$

Front axle

$$\Delta G_V = \Delta G - \Delta G_H = 120 - (-43)$$

$$\Delta G_V = 163 \text{ kg, the load on the front axle is increased.}$$

The following tables show a complete axle-load calculation. Two variants compared in order to illustrate the resulting difference in axle load (Variant 1 with loading crane arm folded, see Table 04-V; Variant 2 with loading crane arm extended, see Table 05-V).

Table 04-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant 1

AXLE LOAD CALCULATION			
Version name:	TGL 8.220 4x2 BB	Basic veh. no.:	LN03NC02
Wheelbase:	3600	VehType:	KL
Technical wheelbase:	3600	Cab:	C
Standard overhang:	1275		
Technical overhang:	1275		
Chassis drawing number:	81.99126.0186		

Designation	**Distance from technical centre point of front axle**	**Weight distribution on**		
		Front axle	**Rear axle**	**Total**
Vehicle weight, standard version, with driver, tools		2620	865	3485
Fuel, spare wheel, without trailer equipment				
Trailer coupling	4.875	-12	47	35
Upswept exhaust pipe, left	480	30	5	35
Fuel tank steel, 150 ltr. (standard 100 ltr.)	2.200	27	43	70
Ball-head coupling with attachment	4.925	-4	14	10
Plastic mudguards, rear axle	3.600	0	26	26
Air reservoir, trailer operation (tipper)	**2.905**	**4**	**16**	**20**
PTO and pump	1.500	9	6	15
Tyres, rear axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	3.600	0	10	10
Tyres, front axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	0	5	0	5
Final cross member for trailer coupling	4.875	-11	41	30
Oil reservoir	1,559	60	45	105
Crane in transport position (arm folded)	1,020	631	249	880
Reinforcement in crane area	1,100	31	14	45
Auxiliary frame and tipper body	3,250	90	840	930
Miscellaneous	1,280	29	16	45
Chassis – empty weight		**3545**	**2266**	**5811**
Permitted loads		3700	5600	7490

Table 04-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant - continuation

Designation		Weight distribution on		
		Front axle	Rear axle	Total
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, FA X1= offloaded	333	155	1524	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, RA X2= offloaded	-3548	-1655	3334	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, extended X3=	250	117	1562	1679
Axle overload		-39	-1771	
Payload loss caused by axle overloading				
If uniformly laden, this leaves		117	1562	1679
Payload		0	0	
Vehicle loaded		**3661**	**3829**	**7490**
Axle or vehicle loading		99,0 %	68,4 %	100,0 %
Axle load distribution		48,9 %	51,1 %	100,0 %
Vehicle empty		**3545**	**2266**	**5811**
Axle or vehicle loading		95,8 %	40,5 %	77,6 %
Axle load distribution		61,0 %	39,0 %	100,0 %
Observe weight tolerances of +/- 5% in accordance with DIN 70020! Errors and omissions excepted				

Table 05-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant 2

AXLE LOAD CALCULATION			
Version name:	TGL 8.220 4x2 BB	Basic veh. no.:	LN03NC02
Wheelbase:	3600	VehType:	KL
Technical wheelbase:	3600	Cab:	C
Standard overhang:	1275		
Technical overhang:	1275		
Chassis drawing number:	81.99126.0186		

Designation	Distance from technical centre point of front axle	Weight distribution on		
		Front axle	Rear axle	Total
Vehicle weight, standard version, with driver, tools		2620	865	3485
Fuel, spare wheel, without trailer equipment				0
Trailer coupling	4.875	-12	47	35
Upswept exhaust pipe, left	480	30	5	35
Comfort seat for driver	-300	16	-1	15
Fuel tank steel, 150 ltr. (standard 100 ltr.)	2.200	27	43	70
Ball-head coupling with attachment	4.925	-4	14	10
Plastic mudguards, rear axle	3.600	0	26	26
Air reservoir, trailer operation (tipper)	2.905	**4**	**16**	**20**
PTO and pump	1.500	9	6	15
Tyres, rear axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	3.600	0	10	10
Tyres, front axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	0	5	0	5
Final cross member for trailer coupling	4.875	-11	41	30
Miscellaneous	1.280	29	16	45
Oil reservoir	1.559	60	45	105
Crane in transport position (arm above tipper body)	1.770	447	433	880
Reinforcement in crane area	1.100	31	14	45
Auxiliary frame and tipper body	3.250	90	840	930
Chassis – empty weight		**3361**	**2450**	**5811**
Permitted loads		3700	5600	7490

Table 05-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant 2 - continuation

Chassis – empty weight		**3361**	**2450**	**5811**
Permitted loads		3700	5600	7490
Difference between unladen weight and permitted loads		339	3150	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, FA offloaded X1=	726	339	1340	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, RA offloaded X2=	-3155	-1471	3150	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, extended X3=	250	117	1562	1679
Axle overload		-222	-1588	
Payload loss caused by axle overloading		0	0	0
If uniformly laden, this leaves		117	1562	1679
Payload		0	0	0
Vehicle loaded		**3478**	**4012**	**7490**
Axle or vehicle loading		94,0 %	71,6 %	100,0 %
Axle load distribution		46,4 %	53,6 %	100,0 %
Vehicle empty		**3545**	**2266**	**5811**
Axle or vehicle loading		90,8 %	43,7 %	77,6 %
Axle load distribution		57,8 %	42,2 %	100,0 %
Observe weight tolerances of +/- 5% in accordance with DIN 70020! Errors and omissions excepted				

1.10.2 Calculation of weight with trailing axle lifted

The weights given for trailing-axle vehicles in the MANTED system www.manted.de) and other technical documents were calculated with the trailing axle lowered. Distribution of the axle loads to the front and drive axle after the trailing axle has been lifted can easily be determined with the following calculation.

Weight on the second axle (drive axle) when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

Formula 26-V: Weight on the second axle when the third axle is lifted

$$G_{2an} = \frac{G_{23} \bullet l_t}{l_{12}}$$

Weight on the front axle when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

Formula 27-V: Weight on the first axle when the third axle is lifted

$$G_{1an} = G - G_{2an}$$

Where:

G	Unladen weight of vehicle [kg]
G_{1an}	Unladen weight on the first axle when the trailing axle is lifted [kg]
G_{2an}	Unladen weight on the second axle when the third axle is lifted [kg]
G_{23}	Unladen weight on the second and third axle [kg]
l_{12}	Wheelbase from first to second axle [mm]
l_t	Theoretical wheelbase [mm]

Example:

Given:

Wheelbase	4800 + 1350
Frame overhang	2600
Cab	XXL-cabs

Unladen weights with the trailing axle lowered:

Front axle	G_{1ab}	=	5100 kg
Drive axle with trailing axle	G_{23ab}	=	3505 kg
Unladen weight	G	=	8605 kg

Permissible axle loads:

G_1	=	7500 kg
G_2	=	11500 kg
G_3	=	7500 kg

Wanted:
The theoretical wheelbase and the unladen weights on the axles.

<u>Solution:</u>

1. Determination of the theoretical wheelbase (see the chapter entitled “General”):

$$l_t = l_{12} + \frac{G_3 \bullet l_{23}}{G_2 + G_3}$$

$$l_t = 4800 + \frac{7500 \bullet 1350}{11500 + 7500}$$

$$l_t = 5333 \text{ mm}$$

2. Determination of the unladen weight on the second axle (=drive axle) when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

$$G_{2an} = \frac{G_{23} \bullet l_t}{l_{12}} = \frac{3505 \bullet 5333}{4800}$$

$$G_{2an} = 3894{,}2 \text{ kg}$$

3. Determination of the unladen weight on the first axle (=front axle) when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

$$G_{1an} = G - G_{2an}$$

$$G_{1an} = 8605 - 3894{,}2$$

$$G_{1an} = 4710{,}8 \text{ kg}$$

1.11 Support length for body without auxiliary frame

Calculation of the necessary support length in the following example does not consider all influencing factors. However, it does show one option and provides some good reference values for practical applications.
The support length is calculated by:

Formula 28-V: Support length without subframe

$$l = \frac{0{,}175 \bullet F \bullet E\,(r_R + r_A)}{\sigma_{0,2}^{\;2} \bullet r_R \bullet r_A}$$

If frame and support are of different materials, then:

Formula 29-V: Modulus of elasticity in the case of different materials

$$E = \frac{2E_R \bullet E_A}{E_R + E_A}$$

Where:

l	Support length for each support [mm]
F	Force per support [N]
E	Modulus of elasticity [N/mm²]
r_R	Outer radius of frame side member [mm]
r_A	Outer radius of support profile [mm]
$\sigma_{0,2}$	Yield point of lower quality material [N/mm²]
E_R	Modulus of elasticity of frame side member [N/mm²]
E^A	Modulus of elasticity of support profile [N/mm²]

Example:

Given:
Chassis for swap body
Wheelbase 4,500 + 1,350
large cab
Perm. gross vehicle weight 26,000 kg
Weight of unladen chassis 8,915 kg

Wanted:
Support length without auxiliary frame

Solution:

Payload		26000 kg – 8915 kg = 17085 kg
Weight distribution per support with six		17085: 6 = 2847 kg
Force	F	2847 kg • 9,81 kg • m/s² = 27933 N
Outer radius of frame profile	r_R	18 mm
Outer radius of support profile	r_A	16 mm
Modulus of elasticity for steel	E	210000 N/mm²
Yield point for both materials	$\sigma_{0,2}$	420 N/mm²

Formula 28-V can then be used to roughly determine the minimum length for each support:

$$l = \frac{0{,}175 \bullet 27.933 \bullet 210.000 \bullet (18+16)}{420^2 \bullet 18 \bullet 16}$$

$$l = 687\ \text{mm}$$

1.12 Coupling devices

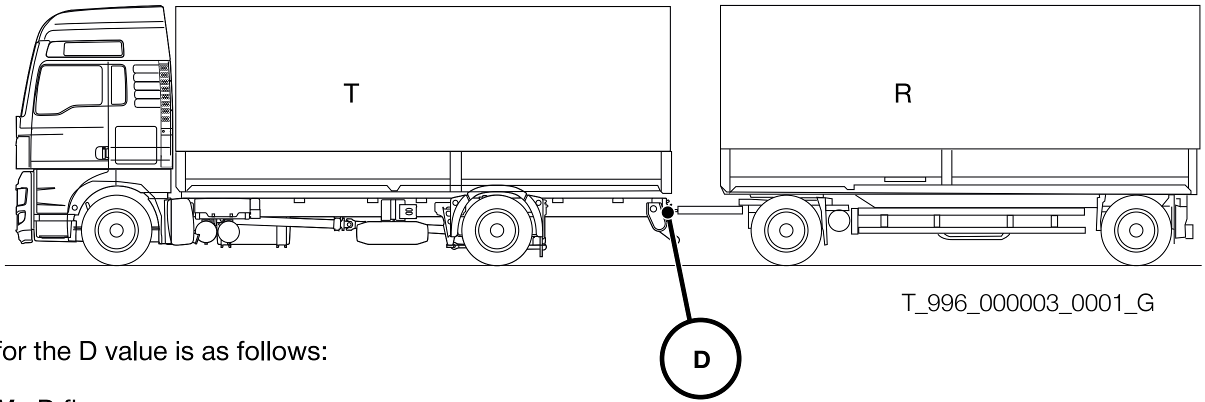
Coupling devices are designed to create a tractive and steering linkage between the tractor vehicle and the trailer.

1.12.1 Trailer coupling for steerable drawbar trailer (D value)

The so-called „D value“ was defined in order to determine the loading capacity of trailer couplings.
The D value is stamped on the trailer coupling‘s model plate.

It is possible to calculate the D value on the basis of the permissible gross weights of vehicle and trailer.
The formulae for the D value and formulae converted according to the variables can be found below.

Fig. 04-V: Articulated train with steerable drawbar trailer



The formula for the D value is as follows:

Formula 30-V: D figure

$$D = \frac{9{,}81 \cdot T \cdot R}{T + R}$$

$$T = \frac{R \cdot D}{(9{,}81 \cdot R) - D}$$

$$R = \frac{T \cdot D}{(9{,}81 \cdot T) - D}$$

Where:

D D value [kN]
T Permissible gross weight of tractor vehicle [t]
R Permissible gross weight of trailer / permissible trailer load [t]

Example:

Given:
Permissible gross weight of tractor 18000 kg = T = 18 t
Permissible trailer load 26000 kg = R = 26 t

Wanted:
D figure

Solution:

$$D = \frac{9{,}81 \cdot 18 \cdot 26}{18 + 26}$$

$$D = 104 \text{ kN}$$

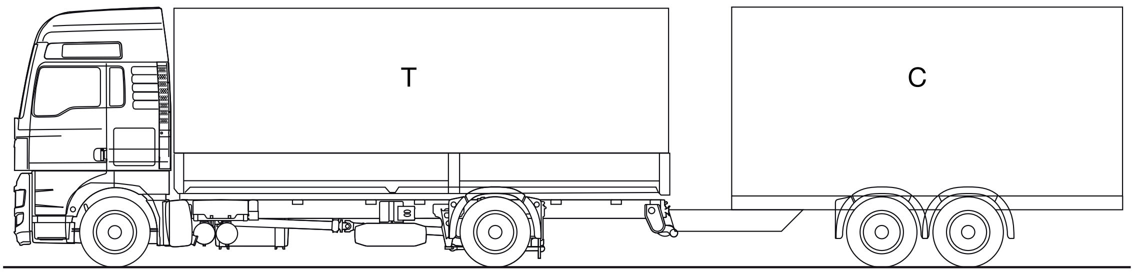
1.12.2 Trailer coupling for rigid drawbar trailer/ center-axle trailer (D_C value, V value)

Other conditions apply for the rigid drawbar and center-axle trailers in addition to the D value. Trailer couplings and final cross members have lower trailer loads because in this case the nose weight acting on the trailer coupling and the final cross member has to be taken into account.

In order to harmonise the regulations within the European Union, the terms D_c value and V value were introduced with Directive 94/20/EC.

The V value is a characteristic value for operation of these trailers. It restricts their operation in dependence on tractor-vehicle and trailer data and specifies the maximum vertical force permitted to act on the coupling.

Fig. 05-V: Articulated train with center-axle trailer



T_996_000004_0001_G

The following formulae apply:

Formula 31-V: D_C value formula for rigid drawbar and center-axle trailer

$$D_C = \frac{9{,}81 \cdot T \cdot C}{T + C}$$

Formula 32-V: V value formula for center-axle and rigid drawbar trailers with a permissible nose weight of < 10% of the trailer mass and not more than 1,000 kg

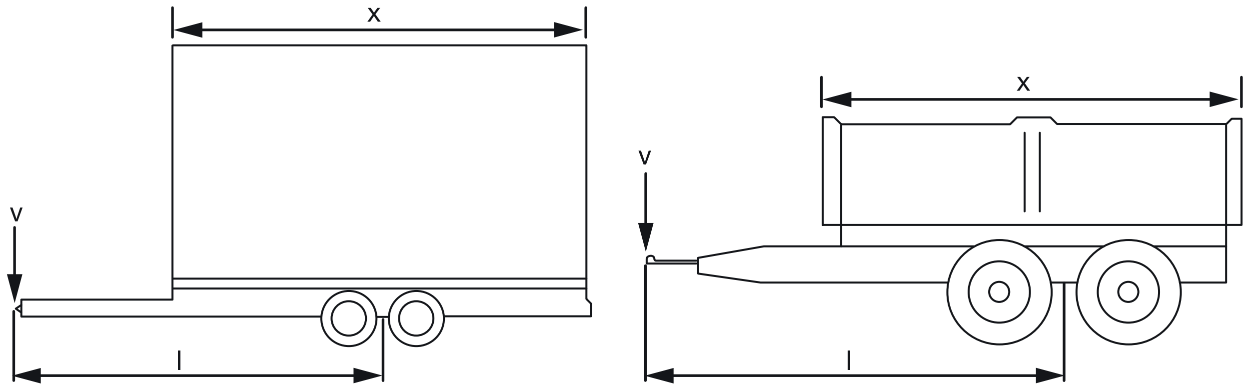
$$V = a \cdot \frac{X^2}{l_2} \cdot C$$

If the values for x^2/l^2 <have been calculated as < 1, a value of 1.0 is to be used.

Where:

D_C	Reduced D value when operating with center-axle trailer [kN]
T	Permissible gross weight of the tractor vehicle [t]
C	Sum of the permissible axle loads of center-axle trailer without nose weight S [t]
V	V value [kN]
a	Reference acceleration in coupling point [m/s²] 1.8 m/s² for air suspension on tractor vehicle or 2.4 m/s² for all other suspensions
x	Length of trailer body, see Fig. 06-V
l	Theoretical drawbar length, see Fig. 06-V
S	Nose weight of drawbar on coupling point [kg]

Fig. 06-V: Length of trailer body and theoretical drawbar length



T_510_000003_0001_G

Example:

Given:

Permissible gross weight of tractor vehicle	T	7490 kg	=	7,49 t
Sum of trailer axle loads	C	11000 kg	=	11 t
Nose weight	S	700 kg	=	0,7 t
Length of body	x	6,2 m		
Theoretical drawbar length	l	5,2 m		

Wanted:
Can both vehicles be used in combination as a road train if the reinforced final cross member and the Ringfeder 864 trailer coupling are fitted to the truck?

Solution:
D_C value

$$D_C = \frac{9{,}81 \bullet T \bullet C}{T + C} = \frac{9{,}81 \bullet 7{,}49 \bullet 11}{7{,}49 + 11}$$

$$D_C = 43{,}7 \text{ kN}$$

D_C value of final cross member: = 64 kN (see MAN guidelines to fitting bodies, supplementary booklet entitled „Coupling devices TG“).

V value

$$\frac{x^2}{l^2} = \frac{6{,}2^2}{5{,}2^2} = 1{,}42$$

$$V = a\,\frac{x^2}{l^2} \bullet C = 1{,}8 \bullet 1{,}42 \bullet 11$$

$$V = 28{,}12\ \text{kN}$$ (1.8 when the rear axle of the truck is equipped with air suspension)

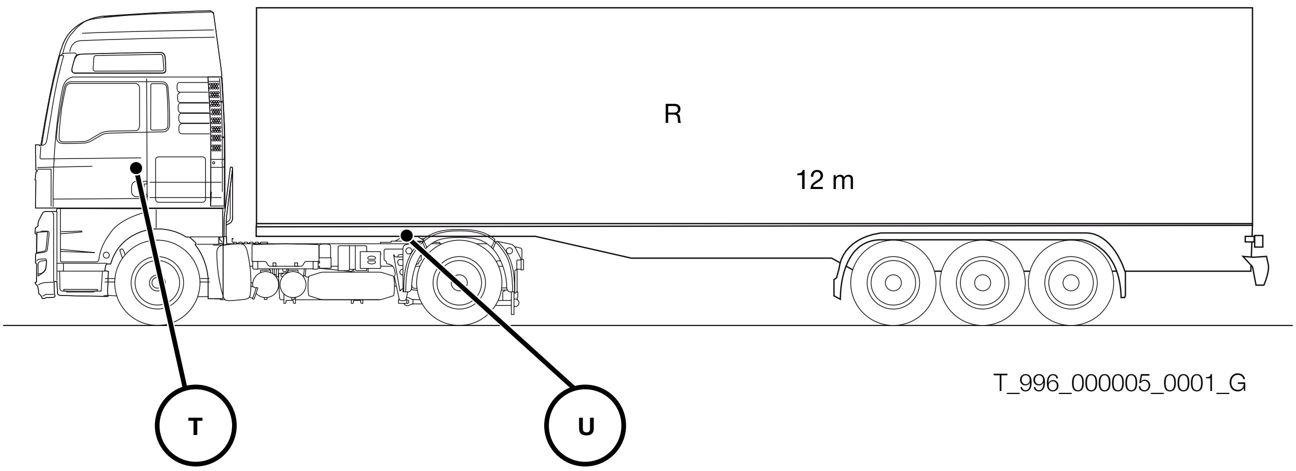
V value of final cross member = 35 kN (see MAN guidelines to fitting bodies, supplementary booklet entitled “Coupling devices TG“)

Both vehicles can form a road train. However, the minimum front-axle load (including nose weight) as per the respectively applicable guidelines to fitting bodies must be adhered to. An unladen truck may only tow an unladen centre axle trailer.

1.12.3 Trailer coupling for semi-trailer (D value)

The so-called “D value” was defined in order to determine the loading capacity of trailer couplings. The D value is stamped on the trailer coupling’s model plate. The required fifth-wheel coupling size is determined by the D value.

Fig. 07-V: Semitrailer tractor



The formula for the D value is as follows:

Formula 33-V: D figure for fifth-wheel coupling

$$D = \frac{0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot T \cdot R}{T + R - U}$$

$$R = \frac{D \cdot (T - U)}{(0,6 \cdot 9.81 \cdot T) - D}$$

$$T = \frac{D \cdot (R - U)}{(0,6 \cdot 9.81 \cdot R) - D}$$

$$U = T + R - \frac{0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot T \cdot R}{D}$$

Where:

D	D value [kN]
T	Permissible gross weight of semitrailer tractor including fifth-wheel load [t]
R	Permissible gross weight of semitrailer including fifth-wheel load [t]
U	Fifth-wheel load [t]

Example: Semitrailer tractor

<u>Given:</u>

Permissible gross weight of semitrailer tractor:	18000 kg = T = 18 t
Permissible gross weight of semitrailer:	32000 kg = R = 32 t
Fifth-wheel load acc. to trailer type plate:	10750 kg = U = 10,75 t

<u>Wanted:</u>
D value for the tractor and semitrailer combination described.

<u>Solution:</u>

$$D = \frac{0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot 18 \cdot 32}{18 + 32 - 10,75}$$

$$D = 86,38 \text{ kN}$$

Note:
The D value calculated must be lower than the D value stamped on the fifth-wheel coupling model plate (e.g. D value 152 kN).

1.13 Theoretical wheelbase and permissible overhang length

This section contains formulae and examples of calculations concerning the theoretical wheelbase and permissible overhang length.

Formula 34-V: Theoretical wheelbase, two axles

$$l_t = l_{12}$$

Formula 35-V: Theoretical wheelbase, three axles with two rear axles and same rear axle loads

$$l_t = l_{12} + 0{,}5 \bullet l_{23}$$

Formula 36-V: Theoretical wheelbase, three axles with two rear axles and different rear axle loads

$$l_t = l_{12} + \frac{G_{zul3} \bullet l_{23}}{G_{zul2} + G_{zul3}}$$

Formula 37-V: Theoretical wheelbase, four axles with two front and two rear axles (random axle load distribution)

$$l_t = l_{23} + \frac{G_{zul1} \bullet l_{12}}{G_{zul1} + G_{zul2}} + \frac{G_{zul4} \bullet l_{34}}{G_{zul3} + G_{zul4}}$$

Formula 38-V: Permissible overhang length for a two-axle vehicle

$$U_t \leq 0{,}65 \bullet l_t$$

Formula 39-V: Permissible overhang length for vehicles with three or more axles

$$U_t \leq 0{,}70 \bullet l_t$$

Where:

l_t	Theoretical wheelbase [mm]
l_{12}	Wheelbase between first and second axle [mm]
l_{23}	Wheelbase between second and third axle [mm]
l_{34}	Wheelbase between third and fourth axle [mm]
G_{zul1}	Permissible axle load, axle 1 [kg]
$G_{zul}2$	Permissible axle load, axle 2 [kg]
G_{zul3}	Permissible axle load, axle 3 [kg]
G_{zul4}	Permissible axle load, axle 4 [kg]
U_t	Permissible overhang length [mm]

Example 1: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a two-axle vehicle

Given:
Vehicle MAN TGL 12.250 4x2 BB
Wheelbase l_{12} = 3,900 mm

Wanted:
Theoretical wheelbase l_t, permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

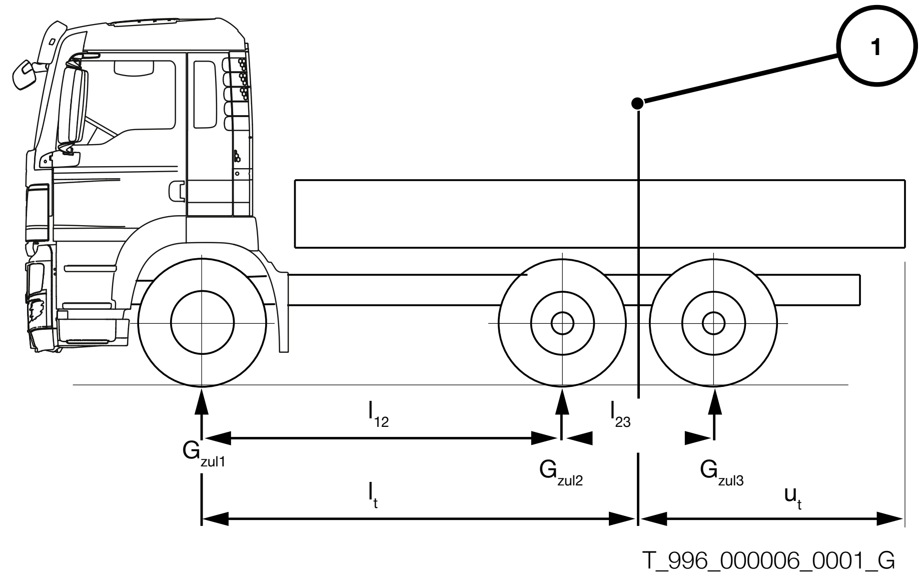
$$l_t = l_{12} = 3900 \text{ mm}$$
$$U_t \leq 0{,}65 \bullet 3900 \leq 2535 \text{ mm}$$

Example 2: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a three-axle vehicle with identical rear-axle loads

Given:

Vehicle		TGM 26.340 6x4 BB
Wheelbase l_{12}	=	3875 mm
Wheelbase l_{23}	=	1400 mm
Permissible axle load, axle 2	=	9500 kg
Permissible axle load, axle 3	=	9500 kg

Fig. 08-V: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang for a three-axle vehicle with two rear axles and identical rear-axle loads



1) theoretical rear centreline

Wanted:
Theoretical wheelbase l_t, permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

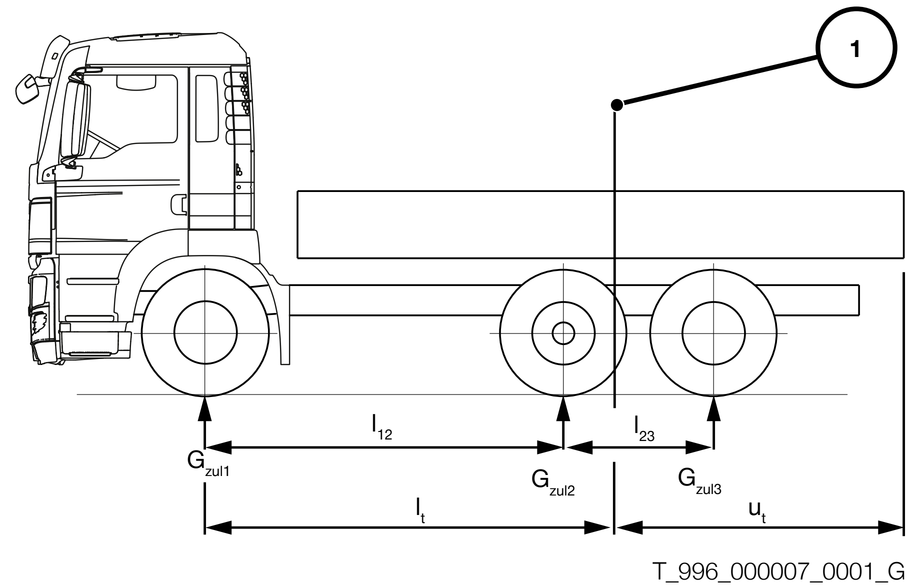
$l_t = l_{12} + 0{,}5 \bullet l23 = 3875 + 0{,}5 \bullet 1400 = 4575$ mm
$U_t \leq 0{,}70 \bullet l_t \leq 0{,}70 \bullet 4575 = 3202$ mm

Example 3: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a three-axle vehicle with different rear-axle loads

Given:

Vehicle		TGS 28.480 6x2-2 BL
Wheelbase l_{12}	=	5500 mm
Wheelbase l_{23}	=	1350 mm
Axle load, axle 2	=	13000 kg
Axle load, axle 3	=	10000 kg

Fig. 09-V: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang for a three-axle vehicle with two rear axles and different rear-axle loads



1) theoretical rear centreline

Wanted:
Theoretical wheelbase l_t, permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

$$l_t = l_{12} + \frac{G_{zul3} \bullet l_{23}}{G_{zul2} + G_{zul3}}$$

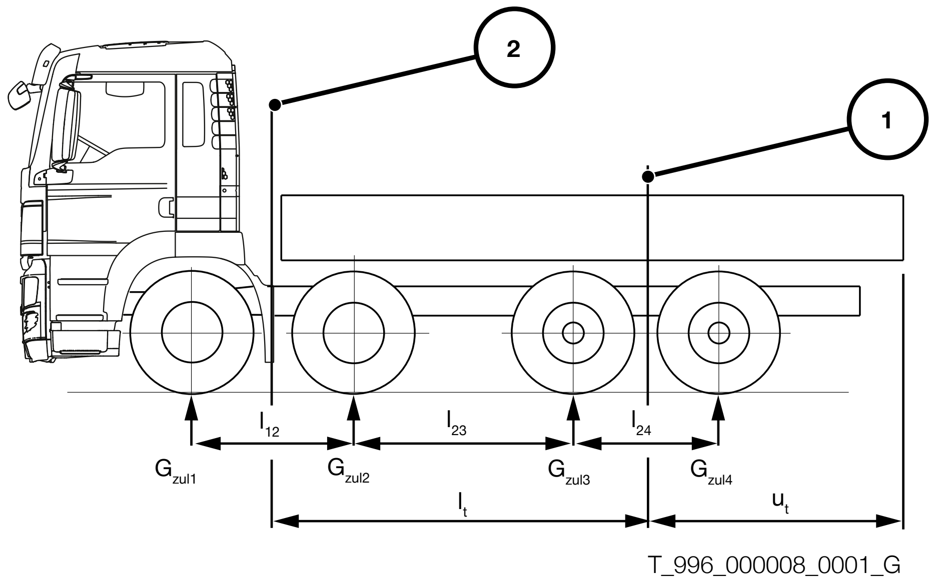
$$l_t = 5500 + \frac{10000 \bullet 1350}{13000 + 10000}$$

Example 4: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a four-axle vehicle

Given:

Vehicle		TGS 32.480 8x4 BB
Wheelbase l_{12}	=	1795 mm
Wheelbase l_{23}	=	3205 mm
Wheelbase l_{34}	=	1400 mm
Axle load, axle 1	=	7100 kg
Axle load, axle 2	=	7100 kg
Axle load, axle 3	=	9500 kg
Axle load, axle 4	=	9500 kg

Fig. 10-V: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang for a four-axle vehicle with two front and two rear axles (random axle-load distribution)



1) theoretical rear centreline
2) theoretical front centreline

Wanted:
Theoretical wheelbase l_t, permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

$$l_t = l_{23} + \frac{G_{zul1} \bullet l_{12}}{G_{zul1} + G_{zul2}} + \frac{G_{zul4} \bullet l_{34}}{G_{zul3} + G_{zul4}}$$

$$l_t = 3205 + \frac{7100 \bullet 1795}{7100 + 7100} + \frac{9500 \bullet 1400}{9500 + 9500}$$

$$l_t = 4802 \text{ mm}$$

$$U_t \le 0{,}70 \bullet l_t \le 0{,}70 \bullet 4802 = 3361 \text{ mm}$$

NOTICE

MAN Truck & Bus AG
Engineering Vehicle Truck
Application Engineering
Dachauer Straße 667
80995 Munich
E-Mail: info.manted@man.eu
www.manted.de www.man.eu

MAN Truck & Bus – a member of the MAN Group